



## **5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscopes**

### **MSO54, MSO56, MSO58**

**Printable Help**

Supports 5 Series MSO Product Firmware V1.0 and above.



076-0403-00

Copyright © Tektronix. All rights reserved. Licensed software products are owned by Tektronix or its subsidiaries or suppliers, and are protected by national copyright laws and international treaty provisions. Tektronix products are covered by U.S. and foreign patents, issued and pending. Information in this publication supersedes that in all previously published material. Specifications and price change privileges reserved.

TEKTRONIX and TEK are registered trademarks of Tektronix, Inc.

TekVPI, FastAcq, and e\*Scope are registered trademarks of Tektronix, Inc.

FlexChannel and TekSecure are trademarks of Tektronix, Inc.

## Contacting Tektronix

Tektronix, Inc.  
14150 SW Karl Braun Drive  
P.O. Box 500  
Beaverton, OR 97077  
USA

For product information, sales, service, and technical support:

- In North America, call 1-800-833-9200.
- Worldwide, visit [www.tek.com](http://www.tek.com) to find contacts in your area.

# Table of Contents

Welcome to the 5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscopes Help .....	xiii
---	------

## Product documents and support

Related documents .....	1
Product support and feedback .....	1

## Accessories

Standard accessories .....	3
Recommended accessories .....	3
Recommended probes .....	4

## Options

Arbitrary Function Generator (AFG) (option 5-AFG or upgrade SUP5-AFG) .....	5
Bandwidth options .....	6
Advanced Jitter Analysis (options 5-DJA, SUP5-DJA) .....	7
Power cord options .....	8
Record length (options 5-RL-125M, SUP5-RL-125M) .....	8
Serial bus and trigger options .....	9
Service options .....	10
How to install an option license .....	10
How to uninstall (return) an option license .....	11

## Install your instrument

Check shipped accessories .....	13
Safely rotate the handle .....	13
Operating requirements .....	14
Input signal requirements .....	15
Powering the oscilloscope .....	15
Check that oscilloscope passes power-on self tests .....	16
Secure (lock) the oscilloscope .....	16
Connecting Probes .....	17
Rackmount information .....	18

## Getting acquainted with your instrument

Front panel controls and connectors .....	19
Rear panel connections .....	26
The user interface screen .....	27
The user interface elements .....	28
Badges .....	31
Configuration menus .....	36
The Zoom user interface elements .....	38
Using the touch screen interface for common tasks .....	39
Accessing application help .....	40

## Configure the instrument

Set the time zone and clock readout format .....	41
Functional check .....	41
Download and install the latest firmware .....	42
Run Signal Path Compensation (SPC) .....	42
Compensate the TPP0500B or TPP1000 probes .....	43
Compensate passive probes .....	45
Connect to a network (LAN) .....	45
Connect the oscilloscope to a PC using a USB cable .....	45
Remote access from a Web browser .....	46
Deskew analog input channels - quick visual method .....	46
Deskew analog input channels - measurement method .....	47
Connect a keyboard or mouse .....	47
Connect an external monitor or projector .....	48
Prevent ESD Guidelines .....	48

## Analog channel operating basics

Acquiring a signal .....	49
Quickly display a waveform (Autoset) .....	49
Set Horizontal parameters .....	51
How to trigger on a signal .....	51
Set the acquisition mode .....	53
Start and stop an acquisition .....	54
Add a channel waveform to the display .....	54
Configure channel and waveform settings .....	55
Add a math, reference, or bus waveform .....	59

Add a measurement .....	61
Configure a measurement .....	63
Delete a Measurement or Search badge .....	64
Add a plot of a measurement .....	65
Display a Histogram plot .....	67
Display a Time Trend plot .....	67
Display a Spectrum plot .....	67
Display an XY or XYZ plot .....	68
Display an FFT math waveform .....	68
Add a Search .....	68
Change waveform view settings .....	70
Display and configure cursors .....	71
Using Default Setup .....	72
Using Fast Acq .....	73
Add a note to a view .....	74
Delete a Note .....	75

## Acquiring digital signals

Connect and set up digital signals .....	77
Add a serial bus to the Waveform view .....	78
Add a parallel bus to the Waveform view .....	80

## Advanced triggering

Triggering concepts .....	83
Trigger on a pulse width event .....	84
Set Trigger Holdoff .....	85
Trigger on sequential events (A and B triggers) .....	85
Set up trigger on a parallel bus .....	86
Set up trigger on a serial bus .....	86

## Setting waveform display parameters

Set waveform display mode (Stacked or Overlay) .....	87
Set the Waveform Interpolation mode .....	87
Set the waveform persistence, style, and intensity .....	88
Set the graticule style and intensity .....	88

## Zooming on waveforms

Turn on Zoom mode .....	89
Using Wave Inspector front-panel controls for zoom .....	90
Zoom mode and Searches .....	90

## Customizing measurements

Label a measurement .....	93
Set measurement reference levels .....	94
Set measurement gates .....	95
Set measurement filters .....	95
Set measurement limits .....	96

## Saving and recalling information

Save a screen image .....	97
Save a waveform to a file .....	98
Save instrument settings to a file .....	98
Save reports .....	99
Save sessions .....	100
Recall a Reference waveform .....	101
Recall a Setup file .....	101
Recall a Session file .....	102

## Menus and dialog boxes

The Acquisition configuration menu .....	103
Save On Trigger menu .....	104
Add Measurements configuration menu overview .....	105
The Standard measurements tab .....	106
Amplitude Measurements panel .....	106
Timing Measurements panel .....	108
Jitter Measurements panel .....	110
The Jitter tab (Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis Option DJA) .....	111
Add Plot configuration menu .....	115
Add Results Table configuration menu .....	115
Results Tables operations overview .....	116
Measurement Table configuration menu .....	116
Save As configuration menu (Measurement Results Table) .....	118

Bus Decode Table configuration menu .....	118
Save As configuration menu (Bus Decode Results table) .....	119
Search configuration menu overview .....	120
Bus Search configuration menus .....	120
Edge Search configuration menu .....	133
Logic search configuration menu .....	134
Logic Search - Define Inputs configuration menu .....	135
Pulse Width Search configuration menu .....	135
Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu .....	137
Runt Search configuration menu .....	139
Setup and Hold Search configuration menu .....	140
Setup and Hold Search - Define Inputs configuration menu .....	141
Timeout Search configuration menu .....	141
Window Search configuration menu .....	143
Measurement configuration menu overview .....	145
Measurement Name panel (Measurement configuration menu) .....	146
Configure panel (Measurement configuration menu) .....	147
Reference Levels panel (Measurement Settings menu) .....	148
Clock Recovery panel (Measurement configuration menu) .....	150
Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu .....	154
Gating panel (Measurement configuration menu) .....	155
Filter/Limit Results panel (Measurement Settings menu) .....	156
Analog Channel configuration menu .....	157
Probe Setup panel (Channel configuration menu) .....	158
Unsupported Probe dialog .....	158
Probe Compensation configuration menu (analog channels Probe Setup panel) .....	159
Other panel (Channel configuration menu) .....	159
Deskew configuration menu (Other panel, Channel configuration menu) .....	160
AFG configuration menu .....	162
Bus configuration menu .....	163
Audio serial bus configuration menu .....	164
CAN serial bus configuration menu .....	166
Ethernet serial bus menu .....	168
FlexRay serial bus configuration menu .....	169
I2C serial bus configuration menu .....	171
LIN serial bus configuration menu .....	172
Parallel Bus configuration menu .....	173
Parallel Bus - Define Inputs menu .....	175
RS232 serial bus menu .....	175

SPI serial bus configuration menu .....	177
USB serial bus configuration menu .....	179
Cursor configuration menu .....	181
Date and Time configuration menu .....	183
Digital channel configuration menu .....	183
DVM configuration menu .....	184
Menu bar overview .....	185
Recall configuration menu (File menu) .....	186
Save As configuration menu (File menu) .....	188
Browse Save As Location configuration menu .....	191
File Utilities configuration (File menu) .....	193
Undo, Redo (Edit menu) .....	195
User Preferences (Utility menu) .....	195
I/O (Utility menu) .....	197
LAN Reset configuration menu (Utility > I/O menu) .....	200
Self Test configuration menu (Utility menu) .....	201
Calibration configuration menu (Utility menu) .....	202
Security configuration menu (Utility menu) .....	202
TekSecure Erase Memory .....	203
Demo (Utility menu) .....	203
Help... (Help menu) .....	204
User Interface Tutorial (Help menu) .....	204
About (Help menu) .....	204
Location to Save Exit Key configuration menu .....	205
Browse License Files menu (Help > About) .....	207
Horizontal configuration menu .....	209
Math configuration menu overview .....	211
Math configuration menu .....	211
Equation Editor (Math configuration menu) .....	213
Add Filter menu (math Equation Editor) .....	214
Add Variable menu (math Equation Editor) .....	215
Font Color menu (Text Settings configuration) .....	216
Text Settings configuration menu (Note and Waveform labels text) .....	216
Plot configuration menus .....	216
Eye Diagram plot configuration menu .....	217
Math FFT plot configuration menu (Math waveform) .....	218
Histogram plot configuration menu .....	220
Bathtub plot configuration menu .....	222
Spectrum plot configuration menu .....	223

Trend Plot configuration menu .....	224
Plot XY configuration menu .....	225
XYZ plot configuration menu .....	225
Save As configuration menu (plot Save panel, Save Plot Image button) .....	226
Save As configuration menu (plot Save panel, Save Plot Data button) .....	227
Reference waveform configuration menu .....	228
Recall configuration menu (Ref waveform configuration menu) .....	229
Search configuration menu .....	231
Trigger configuration menu overview .....	231
Bus Trigger configuration .....	232
Edge Trigger configuration menu .....	245
Logic Trigger configuration menu .....	247
Logic Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu .....	250
Pulse Width Trigger configuration menu .....	250
Rise/Fall Time Trigger configuration menu .....	253
Runt Trigger configuration menu .....	255
Sequence Trigger configuration menu .....	258
A Trigger Event configuration menu .....	261
B Trigger Event configuration menu .....	261
Setup and Hold Trigger configuration menu .....	262
Setup & Hold Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu .....	264
Timeout Trigger configuration menu .....	264
Logic Qualification - Define Inputs configuration menu .....	267
Window Trigger configuration menu .....	268
Virtual Keyboard .....	271
Virtual Keypad .....	271
Waveform View configuration menu .....	272

## Waveform acquisition concepts

Acquisition concepts .....	275
Acquisition hardware .....	275
Sampling process .....	275
Real-Time sampling .....	275
Interpolated Real-Time sampling .....	275
Equivalent-Time sampling .....	276
Waveform record .....	276
Interpolation .....	276
Acquisition modes .....	277
How the acquisition modes work .....	277

---

Waveform sample interpolation .....	278
Coupling .....	278
Scaling and positioning .....	278
Vertical acquisition considerations .....	279
Horizontal acquisition considerations .....	280

## Trigger concepts

Triggering concepts .....	281
Trigger sources .....	282
Trigger types .....	282
Trigger modes .....	283
Trigger holdoff .....	283
Trigger coupling .....	284
Trigger slope and level .....	284
Trigger position in waveform record .....	284
Trigger delay .....	285
Advanced triggering .....	285
Bus triggering concepts .....	285
Pulse width trigger concepts .....	286
Timeout trigger .....	286
Runt trigger .....	286
Window trigger .....	286
Logic trigger concepts .....	286
Setup and Hold trigger concepts .....	286
Rise/Fall time trigger concepts .....	287
Sequential (A B) trigger concepts .....	287

## Waveform display concepts

Waveform display overview .....	289
Waveform preview mode .....	289
Horizontal position and the horizontal reference point .....	289

## Measurement concepts

Measurement variables .....	291
Missing or out-of-range samples .....	294
Math waveforms .....	294
Math waveform elements .....	296
Math waveform sources .....	296

Guidelines for working with math waveforms .....	297
Math waveform editor syntax .....	297
Math waveform differentiation .....	298
Math waveform offset, position, and scale .....	298
Waveform integration .....	299
FFT process .....	300
FFT and aliasing .....	300
Blackman-Harris FFT window concepts .....	301
Hanning FFT window .....	302
Hamming window .....	302
Rectangular window .....	303

## Measurement algorithms

Amplitude measurement algorithms .....	305
AC RMS measurement algorithm .....	305
Area measurement algorithm .....	305
Amplitude measurement algorithm .....	305
Base measurement algorithm .....	305
Integration algorithm .....	305
Maximum measurement algorithm .....	306
Mean measurement algorithm .....	306
Minimum measurement algorithm .....	307
Negative Overshoot measurement algorithm .....	307
Positive Overshoot measurement algorithm .....	307
Peak-To-Peak measurement algorithm .....	307
RMS measurement algorithm .....	307
Top measurement algorithm .....	307
Timing measurement algorithms .....	308
Burst Width measurement algorithm .....	308
Data Rate measurement algorithm .....	308
Delay measurement algorithm .....	308
Falling slew rate .....	308
Fall Time measurement algorithm .....	308
Frequency measurement algorithm .....	309
High Time measurement algorithm .....	309
Hold Time measurement algorithm .....	310
Low Time measurement algorithm .....	310
N-Periods Duration measurement algorithm .....	310
Negative Duty Cycle measurement algorithm .....	311

Negative Pulse Width measurement algorithm .....	311
Period measurement algorithm .....	311
Phase measurement algorithm .....	311
Positive Duty Cycle measurement algorithm .....	312
Positive Pulse Width measurement algorithm .....	312
Rising Slew Rate measurement algorithm .....	312
Rise Time measurement algorithm .....	312
Setup .....	313
Skew .....	313
Time Outside Level measurement algorithm .....	314
Unit Interval measurement algorithm .....	314
Jitter measurement algorithms .....	314
AC Common Mode .....	314
Bit Amplitude measurement algorithm .....	315
Bit High measurement algorithm .....	315
Bit Low measurement algorithm .....	315
DC Common Mode measurement algorithm .....	315
Differential Crossover measurement algorithm .....	315
SSC Freq Dev measurement algorithm .....	315
SSC Modulation Rate measurement algorithm .....	315
TIE .....	315
T/nT Ratio measurement algorithm .....	316
DCD .....	316
DDJ .....	316
DJ .....	316
Dual Dirac deterministic jitter .....	316
F/2 measurement algorithm .....	317
F/4 measurement algorithm .....	317
F/8 measurement algorithm .....	317
J2 .....	317
J9 .....	317
Jitter Summary measurement .....	317
NPJ .....	317
Phase noise .....	317
PJ .....	318
RJ .....	318
RJ 66 measurement algorithm .....	318
SRJ .....	318
TJ@BER .....	318

Eye measurement algorithms .....	318
Eye Height measurement algorithm .....	318
Eye high .....	318
Eye low .....	319
Eye Width measurement algorithm .....	320
Height@BER .....	320
Q-factor .....	320
Width@BER .....	320



# Welcome to the 5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscopes Help

The 5 Series MSO oscilloscopes (MSO54, MSO56, and MSO58) are 4-, 6-, and 8-channel oscilloscopes with FlexChannel™ technology, enabling you to efficiently and cost-effectively perform mixed signal debugging on virtually any design.

## Key features and benefits

- Bandwidths from 350 MHz to 2 GHz
- 4-, 6-, and 8-channel models with FlexChannel™ inputs
- Each FlexChannel input is dual-purpose, letting you connect either an analog probe (TekVPI® or BNC) or an eight-channel digital probe (the TLP058 FlexChannel Logic Probe)
- Large 15.6" HD (1920 x 1080 pixel) capacitive touch-screen display
- User interface designed to optimize touch screen use
- Maximum 6.25 GS/s sample rate
- 62.5 M points record length on all channels (optional 125 M record length available)
- 500,000 waveforms/second maximum waveform capture rate
- No set limit on the number of math, reference, and bus waveforms you can display
- Integrated options include 50 MHz arbitrary/function generator (AFG), Digital Voltmeter (DVM), and a trigger frequency counter
- Optional advanced triggering and analysis functions let you trigger on and take measurements on I<sup>2</sup>C, SPI, USB 2.0, CAN, LIN, FlexRay, RS-232/422/485/UART, I<sup>2</sup>S, Left Justified (LJ), Right Justified (RJ), TDM, and Ethernet buses

5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope Help Version 1.0.2

Actual number of waveforms depends on available system memory.



# Product documents and support

## Related documents

Use the related documents to access information on how to remotely program or operate the instrument, understand theory of operation, replace suspected modules, and do other tasks.

To learn about	Use this document
How to use instrument functions	<i>5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope MSO54, MSO56, MSO58 Help</i> (Tektronix part number 077-1303-xx; Printable version of the instrument Help; available at <a href="http://www.tektronix.com/downloads">www.tektronix.com/downloads</a> )
How to remotely control the instrument	<i>5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope MSO54, MSO56, MSO58 Programmer Manual</i> (Tektronix part number 077-1305-xx; available at <a href="http://www.tektronix.com/downloads">www.tektronix.com/downloads</a> )
Instrument specifications and procedures to verify the instrument meets specifications	<i>5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope MSO54, MSO56, MSO58 Specifications and Performance Verification Technical Reference</i> (Tektronix part number 077-1306-xx; available at <a href="http://www.tektronix.com/downloads">www.tektronix.com/downloads</a> )
Instrument theory of operation, troubleshooting, disassembly, and replaceable parts	<i>5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope MSO54, MSO56, MSO58 Service Manual</i> (Tektronix part number 077-1307-xx; available at <a href="http://www.tektronix.com/downloads">www.tektronix.com/downloads</a> )
Installing the instrument in a rack	<i>RM5MSO Rack Mount Kit Instructions</i> (Tektronix part number 071-3523-xx; available at <a href="http://www.tektronix.com/downloads">www.tektronix.com/downloads</a> )
Using the TLP058 Logic Probe	<i>TLP058 FlexChannel Logic Probe Instructions</i> (Tektronix part number 071-3515-xx; available at <a href="http://www.tektronix.com/downloads">www.tektronix.com/downloads</a> )

## Product support and feedback

Tektronix values your feedback on our products. To help us serve you better, please send us your suggestions, ideas, or comments on your instrument, application, or product documentation.

Contact through mail, telephone, or the Web site. See [Contacting Tektronix](#) on page 0 for more information or assistance with your product.

When you contact Tektronix Technical Support, please include the following information (be as specific as possible):

### General information

- All instrument model numbers
- Hardware options, if any
- Probes used
- Your name, company, mailing address, phone number, FAX number
- Please indicate if you would like to be contacted by Tektronix about your suggestion or comments.

## Application specific information

- Software version number
- Description of the problem such that technical support can duplicate the problem
- If possible, save and send the setup files for all the instruments used and the application
- If possible, save and send status messages text files
- If possible, save and send the waveform on which you are performing the measurement as a .wfm file

# Accessories

## Standard accessories

The following standard accessories ship with all products.

Item	Quantity	Tektronix part number
5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope (MSO54, MSO56, MSO58) Installation and Safety Manual	1	071-3514-xx
TPP0500B Passive Voltage Probe (500 MHz bandwidth). Shipped with 350 MHz and 500 MHz models.	One per channel	TPP0500B
TPP1000 Passive Voltage Probe (1 GHz bandwidth). Shipped with 1 GHz and 2 GHz models.	One per channel	TPP1000
Front cover	1	200-5406-xx
Accessory pouch (attached to front cover)	1	016-2106-xx
Mouse (wired with USB connector)	1	119-7054-xx
Power cord	1	Depends on region
Calibration certificate	1	N/A

## Recommended accessories

See the Tektronix Web site ([www.tek.com](http://www.tek.com)) for the latest information on recommended accessories for this product.

Accessory	Tektronix part number
Hard transit case	HC5
Rackmount kit	RM5
Mini keyboard	119-7275-xx
GPIB-to-USB adapter	TEK-USB-488
TekVPI-to-TekProbe BNC adapter	TPA-BNC
Deskew pulse generator	067-1686-xx
5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope (MSO54, MSO56, MSO58) Service Manual as a PDF file, download from the Tektronix Web site	077-1307-xx
5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope (MSO54, MSO56, MSO58) Programmer Interface Manual as a PDF file, download from the Tektronix Web site	077-1305-xx
5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope (MSO54, MSO56, MSO58) Specifications and Performance Verification Technical Reference as a PDF file, download from the Tektronix Web site	077-1306-xx

## Recommended probes

See the Tektronix Web site ([www.tek.com](http://www.tek.com)) for the latest information on supported probes for this product.

Probe model	Description
TAP1500	1.5 GHz TekVPI Single-ended Active FET probe
TAP2500	2.5 GHz TekVPI Single-ended Active FET probe
TAP3500	3.5 GHz TekVPI Single-ended Active FET probe
TCP0020	50 MHz TekVPI 20 Ampere AC/DC current probe
TCP0030A	120 MHz TekVPI 30 Ampere AC/DC current probe
TDP0500	500 MHz TekVPI differential voltage probe with $\pm 42$ V differential input voltage
TDP1000	1 GHz TekVPI differential voltage probe with $\pm 42$ V differential input voltage
TDP1500	1.5 GHz TekVPI differential voltage probe with $\pm 8.5$ V differential input voltage
TDP3500	3.5 GHz TekVPI differential voltage probe with $\pm 2$ V differential input voltage
TCP0150	DC to 20 MHz, TekVPI 150 A AC/DC current probe
THDP0100	$\pm 6$ kV, 100 MHz TekVPI high-voltage differential probe
THDP0200	$\pm 1.5$ kV, 200 MHz TekVPI high-voltage differential probe
TMDP0200	$\pm 750$ V, 200 MHz TekVPI high-voltage differential probe
P5100A	2.5 kV, 500 MHz, 100X high-voltage passive probe

# Options

## Arbitrary Function Generator (AFG) (option 5-AFG or upgrade SUP5-AFG)

These options add a 50 MHz AFG function to your oscilloscope. You can order the option preinstalled at the factory, or purchase and install an option license at a later date.

### AFG features

- Function types: Arbitrary, Sine, Square, Pulse, Ramp, Triangle, DC Level, Gaussian, Lorentz, Exponential Rise/Fall, Sin(x)/x, Random Noise, Haversine, Cardiac
- Maximum frequency: 50 MHz (Sine)
- Maximum output amplitude: 5 Vp-p
- Maximum sample rate: 250 MS/s
- Arbitrary function record length: 128K samples

### AFG preinstalled option

This option preinstalls this feature when purchasing the oscilloscope.

Install option name	Description
5-AFG	AFG feature preinstalled on your oscilloscope at the factory. Adds arbitrary and function generation capability to your instrument.

### AFG upgrade option

This option is ordered after purchasing the oscilloscope to enable the AFG feature.

Upgrade option name	Description
SUP5-AFG	License upgrade file placed in your Tektronix AMS account (notification sent by e-mail). Install the license file to enable the AFG feature. The option license can only be installed on the oscilloscope for which it was purchased.

## Bandwidth options

These options let you order the oscilloscope with a specified bandwidth, or upgrade a purchased oscilloscope to a higher bandwidth.

### Installed bandwidth options

These options are ordered when purchasing the oscilloscope. You must order one of these options when purchasing the oscilloscope.

Option name	Description
<b>5-BW-350 (default)</b>	350 MHz bandwidth
<b>5-BW-500</b>	Upgrade from 350 MHz to 500 MHz bandwidth
<b>5-BW-1000</b>	Upgrade from 350 MHz to 1 GHz bandwidth
<b>5-BW-2000</b>	Upgrade from 350 MHz to 2 GHz bandwidth

### Bandwidth upgrade options

These options can be ordered for already-purchased oscilloscopes. Some upgrades require sending the oscilloscope to a service center to replace hardware and recalibrate the instrument.

Option name	Description	Notes
<b>SUP5-BW3T54</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 500 MHz on 4-channel models	License upgrade file placed in your Tektronix AMS account (notification sent by e-mail) and includes shipment of calibration data and new front panel bandwidth label.
<b>SUP5-BW3T56</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 500 MHz on 6-channel models	The option license can only be installed on the oscilloscope for which it was purchased.
<b>SUP5-BW3T58</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 500 MHz on 8-channel models	The option license can only be installed on the oscilloscope for which it was purchased.
<b>SUP5-BW3T104</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 1 GHz on 4-channel models, plus 4 TPP1000 probes.	License upgrade file placed in your Tektronix AMS account (notification sent by e-mail) and includes shipment of calibration data and new front panel bandwidth label.
<b>SUP5-BW3T106</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 1 GHz on 6-channel models, plus 6 TPP1000 probes.	The option license can only be installed on the oscilloscope for which it was purchased.
<b>SUP5-BW3T108</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 1 GHz on 8-channel models, plus 8 TPP1000 probes.	The option license can only be installed on the oscilloscope for which it was purchased.
<b>SUP5-BW3T204</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 2 GHz on 4-channel models, plus 4 TPP1000 probes.	Hardware upgrade; send instrument to Tektronix Service Center. Includes shipment of calibration data and new front panel bandwidth label.
<b>SUP5-BW3T206</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 2 GHz on 6-channel models, plus 6 TPP1000 probes.	
<b>SUP5-BW3T208</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 350 MHz to 2 GHz on 8-channel models, plus 8 TPP1000 probes.	
<b>SUP5-BW5T104</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 500 MHz to 1 GHz on 4-channel models, plus 4 TPP1000 probes.	Hardware upgrade; send instrument to Tektronix Service Center. Includes shipment of calibration data and new front panel bandwidth label.
<b>SUP5-BW5T106</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 500 MHz to 1 GHz on 6-channel models, plus 6 TPP1000 probes.	
<b>SUP5-BW5T108</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 500 MHz to 1 GHz on 8-channel models, plus 8 TPP1000 probes.	

Option name	Description	Notes
<b>SUP5-BW5T204</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 500 MHz to 2 GHz on 4-channel models, plus 4 TPP1000 probes.	Hardware upgrade; send instrument to Tektronix Service Center. Includes shipment of calibration data and new front panel bandwidth label.
<b>SUP5-BW5T206</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 500 MHz to 2 GHz on 6-channel models, plus 6 TPP1000 probes.	
<b>SUP5-BW5T208</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 500 MHz to 2 GHz on 8-channel models, plus 8 TPP1000 probes.	
<b>SUP5-BW10T204</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 1 GHz to 2 GHz on 4-channel models, plus 4 TPP1000 probes.	Hardware upgrade; send instrument to Tektronix Service Center. Includes shipment of calibration data and new front panel bandwidth label.
<b>SUP5-BW10T206</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 1 GHz to 2 GHz on 6-channel models, plus 6 TPP1000 probes.	
<b>SUP5-BW10T208</b>	Bandwidth upgrade from 1 GHz to 2 GHz on 8-channel models, plus 8 TPP1000 probes.	

## Advanced Jitter Analysis (options 5-DJA, SUP5-DJA)

These options add over 30 industry standard automatic jitter and eye diagram measurements, as well as a jitter summary table with the most common measurements. You can order the option preinstalled at the factory, or purchase and install an option license at a later date.

### Advanced Jitter Analysis preinstalled option

This option preinstalls this feature when ordering the oscilloscope.

Install option name	Description
<b>5-DJA</b>	Advanced jitter and eye analysis preinstalled on your oscilloscope at the factory. Adds over 30 Jitter and Eye measurements, including TIE, TJ@BER, DDJ, DCD, SRJ, Eye Height, Eye Width, Eye High and Low, Q-Factor, Differential Crossover, T/nT Ratio, SSC Frequency deviation, SSC Modulation Rate, and more.

### Advanced Jitter Analysis upgrade option

This option can be ordered after purchasing the oscilloscope.

Upgrade option name	Description
<b>SUP5-DJA</b>	License upgrade file placed in your Tektronix AMS account (notification sent by e-mail). Install the license file to add over 30 Jitter and Eye measurements, including TIE, TJ@BER, DDJ, DCD, SRJ, Eye Height, Eye Width, Eye High and Low, Q-Factor, Differential Crossover, T/nT Ratio, SSC Frequency deviation, SSC Modulation Rate, and more.

## Power cord options

These options let you order the oscilloscope with a country- or region-specific power cord.

### Power cord options

These options are ordered when ordering the oscilloscope.

Option name	Description
A0	North America Power Cord
A1	Universal EURO Power Cord
A2	United Kingdom Power Cord
A3	Australia Power Cord
A5	Switzerland Power Cord
A6	Japan Power Cord
A10	China Power Cord
A11	India Power Cord
A12	Brazil Power Cord
A99	No Power Cord or AC Adapter
E1	Standard user manual with UK, Universal EURO, and Swiss power cords

## Record length (options 5-RL-125M, SUP5-RL-125M)

These options let you order the oscilloscope with a larger record length memory, or upgrade a purchased oscilloscope to increase the record length memory. Increased record length memory lets you capture and troubleshoot more waveform data points.

Option name	Description
5-RL-125M	Enable 125 million record points per channel maximum. Order when ordering the oscilloscope.
SUP5-RL-125M	Upgrade from 62.5 million record points per channel to 125 million record points per channel maximum  License upgrade file placed in your Tektronix AMS account (notification sent by e-mail). Install the license file to enable the option.  The option license can only be installed on the oscilloscope for which it was purchased.

## Serial bus and trigger options

Serial bus and trigger options provide bus display and triggering for testing and analysis of industry standard serial buses. You can order the oscilloscope with options preinstalled, or upgrade a purchased oscilloscope to add options.

### Factory-installed serial trigger options

These options preinstall the feature when purchasing the oscilloscope.

Option	Description
<b>5-SRAUDIO</b>	Audio serial triggering and analysis (I <sup>2</sup> S, LJ, RJ, TDM)
<b>5-SRAUTO</b>	Automotive serial triggering and analysis (CAN, LIN, FlexRay)
<b>5-SRCOMP</b>	Computer serial triggering and analysis (RS-232/422/485/UART)
<b>5-SRENET</b>	Ethernet serial triggering and analysis (10BASE-T, 100BASE-T)
<b>5-SREMBD</b>	Embedded serial triggering and analysis (I <sup>2</sup> C, SPI)
<b>5-SRUSB2</b>	USB serial triggering and analysis (USB 2.0 LS, FS, HS)

### Serial trigger upgrade options

These options can be ordered for already-purchased oscilloscopes.

Option name	Description	Notes
<b>SUP5-SRAUDIO</b>	Audio serial triggering and analysis (I <sup>2</sup> S, LJ, RJ, TDM)	License upgrade file placed in your Tektronix AMS account (notification sent by e-mail). Install the file to enable the option.
<b>SUP5-SRAUTO</b>	Automotive serial triggering and analysis (CAN, LIN, FlexRay)	The option license can only be installed on the oscilloscope for which it was purchased.
<b>SUP5-SRCOMP</b>	Computer serial triggering and analysis (RS-232/422/485/UART)	
<b>SUP5-SRENET</b>	Ethernet serial triggering and analysis (10BASE-T, 100BASE-T)	
<b>SUP5-SREMBD</b>	Embedded serial triggering and analysis (I <sup>2</sup> C, SPI)	
<b>SUP5-SRUSB2</b>	USB serial triggering and analysis (USB 2.0 LS, FS, HS)	

## Service options

Service options improve the level of service response, extend the warranty period, or provide calibration reports. You can order service options when you purchase an oscilloscope, or purchase a service option at a later date.

### Service options

Option name	Description
T3	Three year Total Protection Plan. Includes preventative maintenance, and repair or replacement coverage from wear and tear, accidental damage, and ESD or EOS damage. Includes a five-day turnaround time and priority access to customer support.
T5	Five year Total Protection Plan. Includes preventative maintenance, and repair or replacement coverage from wear and tear, accidental damage, and ESD or EOS damage. Includes a five-day turnaround time and priority access to customer support.
R5	Standard warranty is extended to five years. Covers parts, labor, and 2-day shipping within country. Guarantees faster repair time than without coverage. All repairs include calibration and updates. Hassle free - a single call starts the process.
C3	Three-year calibration service. Includes traceable or functional verification where applicable, for recommended calibrations. Coverage includes the initial calibration plus two years calibration coverage.
C5	Five-year calibration service. Includes traceable or functional verification where applicable, for recommended calibrations. Coverage includes the initial calibration plus four years calibration coverage.
D1	Factory calibration data report for the instrument.
D3	Three years of calibration data reports (with Option C3)
D5	Five years of calibration data reports (with Option C5)
R5DW	Repair service coverage for five years (includes the standard product warranty period). The five year period starts at time of instrument purchase.

## How to install an option license

Use this process to install an option license to enable specific instrument features. Options provide advanced functions for specific standards or testing requirements.

Prerequisite: A license file for each option. Contact Tektronix Customer Service to purchase and obtain option license file(s). Option licenses are specific to the oscilloscope serial number, and cannot be used on other oscilloscopes.

License (.lic) files are downloaded from the Tektronix AMS tool at [www.tek.com/products/product-license](http://www.tek.com/products/product-license). There is a how-to video on this site to help you with your license file.

---

**NOTE.** You can only install an option license one time. If you need to reinstall an uninstalled license, contact Tektronix Customer Support.

---

1. Copy the option license file (<filename>.lic) onto a USB memory device.
2. Insert the USB memory device into the oscilloscope.
3. Select **Help > About**.
4. Tap **Install License**.

5. Navigate to and select the license file (<filename>.lic) on the USB memory device. See the table at the end of this procedure.
  6. Tap **Open**. The oscilloscope enables the option license and returns to the About screen. Verify that the installed option license is in the list.
  7. Power cycle the oscilloscope before taking any measurements.
- To uninstall (return) a license, see [How to uninstall \(return\) an option license](#) on page 11.

#### Drive names for USB memory devices.

Drive name	USB port location
C	User-accessible memory on the oscilloscope.
<b>Front panel</b>	
E	USB 3.0 (left)
F	USB 2.0 (center)
G	USB 2.0 (right)
<b>Rear panel</b>	
H	USB 2.0 (top)
I	USB 2.0 (bottom)
J	USB 3.0 (top)
K	USB 3.0 (bottom)

## How to uninstall (return) an option license

Use this process to uninstall an option license.

**NOTE.** You cannot reinstall an option license once you have uninstalled it. If you need to reinstall an uninstalled license, contact Tektronix Customer Support to obtain a new license file.

1. Select **Help > About**.
2. Tap the option license in the list that you want to uninstall.
3. Tap the **Return License** button. The oscilloscope opens the **Location to Save the Exit Key** menu.
4. Navigate to and select the location to save the option license key uninstall file. See the table at the end of this procedure.

5. Tap **Create**. The oscilloscope saves the license key to the specified location and removes the license from the Installed Options list.
6. Power cycle the oscilloscope before taking any measurements.

To install an option license, see [How to install an option license](#) on page 10.

**Drive names for system and USB memory devices.**

Drive name	USB port location
C	User-accessible memory on the oscilloscope.
<b>Front panel</b>	
E	USB 3.0 (left)
F	USB 2.0 (center)
G	USB 2.0 (right)
<b>Rear panel</b>	
H	USB 2.0 (top)
I	USB 2.0 (bottom)
J	USB 3.0 (top)
K	USB 3.0 (bottom)

# Install your instrument

## Check shipped accessories

Make sure that you received everything you ordered. If anything is missing, contact Tektronix Customer Support. In North America, call 1-800-833-9200. Worldwide, visit [www.tek.com](http://www.tek.com) to find contacts in your area.

Check the packing list that came with your instrument to verify that you have received all ordered items. Check that you received all standard accessories.

Item	Quantity	Tektronix part number
5 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope (MSO54, MSO56, MSO58) Installation and Safety Manual	1	071-3514-xx
TPP0500B Passive Voltage Probe (500 MHz bandwidth). Shipped with 350 MHz and 500 MHz models.	One per channel	TPP0500B
TPP1000 Passive Voltage Probe (1 GHz bandwidth). Shipped with 1 GHz and 2 GHz models.	One per channel	TPP1000
Front cover	1	200-5406-xx
Accessory pouch (attached to front cover)	1	016-2106-xx
Mouse (wired with USB connector)	1	119-7054-xx
Power cord	1	Depends on region
Calibration certificate	1	N/A

If you purchased factory installed options such as Advanced Serial Triggering, tap **Help > About** to confirm that the option(s) are listed in the **Installed Options** table.

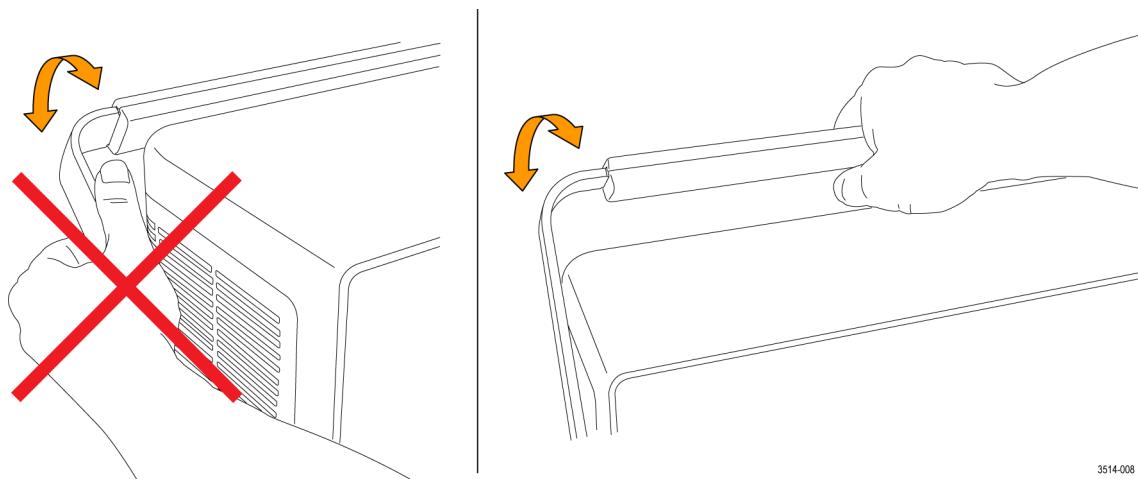
## Safely rotate the handle

Use the correct process to eliminate the chance of pinching your thumb or rear-panel-connected cables while rotating the handle.



**CAUTION.** Hold the top of the handle to rotate the handle on the instrument. Do not hold the handle from the sides and rotate, as this can pinch the base of your thumb between the handle and the case.

If you have routed any cables between the handle and the case, be careful when rotating the handle so that you do not pinch the cables.



## Operating requirements

Use the oscilloscope within the required operating temperature, power, altitude, and signal input voltage ranges to provide the most-accurate measurements and safe instrument operation.

### Environment requirements

Characteristic	Description
Operating temperature	0 °C to +50 °C (+32 °F to +122 °F)  For proper cooling, keep the sides and rear of the instrument clear of obstructions for 2 inches (51 mm).
Operating humidity	5% to 90% relative humidity (% RH) up to +40 °C (+104 °F)  5% to 55% RH above +40 °C up to +50 °C (+104 °F to +122 °F), Noncondensing.
Operating altitude	Up to 3000 meters (9842 feet)

### Power requirements

Characteristic	Description
Power source voltage	100 V - 240 V <sub>AC RMS</sub> , ±10%, single phase
Power source frequency	50/60 Hz, 100-240 V (90-264 V)  400 Hz, 115 V (103-127 V)
Power consumption	All models: 400 W maximum

## Input signal requirements

Keep the input signals within allowed limits to ensure the most accurate measurements and prevent damage to the analog and digital probes or instrument.

Make sure that input signals are within the following requirements.

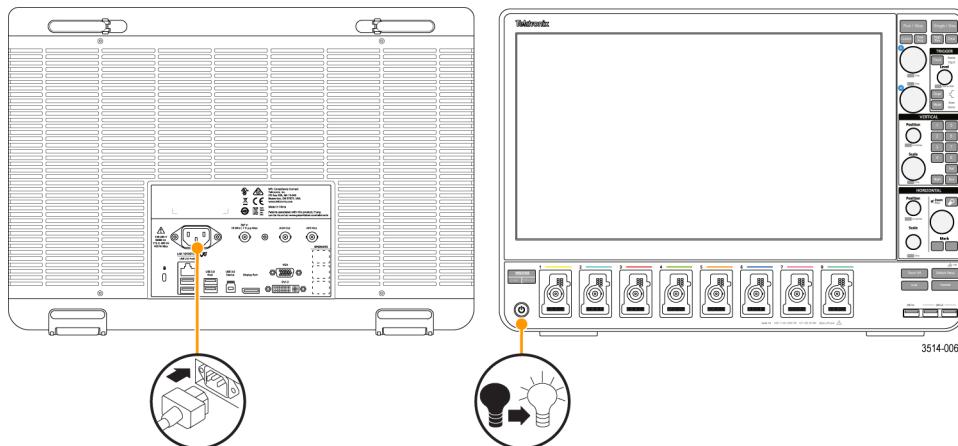
Input	Description
Analog input channels, 1 M $\Omega$ setting, maximum input voltage at BNC	300 V <sub>RMS</sub> Measurement Category II
Analog input channels, 50 $\Omega$ setting, maximum input voltage at BNC	5 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Digital input channels, maximum input voltage range at digital inputs	Observe probe ratings TLP058; $\pm 42$ V <sub>P</sub>
Ref In maximum input voltage at BNC (rear panel)	7 V <sub>PP</sub>

## Powering the oscilloscope

Use this procedure to connect the oscilloscope to line power and power on and off the oscilloscope. Always connect the oscilloscope to AC power using the power cord that shipped with the instrument.

Prerequisite: Use the AC power cord that shipped with your oscilloscope.

1. Connect the supplied power cord to the oscilloscope power connector.



2. Connect the power cord to an appropriate AC mains source.

Power is supplied to the power supply and some other boards whenever the AC power cord is connected to a live mains circuit, putting the instrument in standby mode.

3. Push the front panel power button to power the instrument on and off.

The power button indicates instrument power states:

**No light** – no AC power applied

**Yellow** – standby mode

**Blue** – powered on

4. To completely remove power from the instrument, disconnect the power cord.
5. To transport the instrument with its power cord, flip out the power cord supports on the upper edge of the rear panel and wrap the power cord around the supports.

## Check that oscilloscope passes power-on self tests

Power-on self tests verify that all oscilloscope modules are working correctly after power up.

1. Power on the oscilloscope and wait until the oscilloscope screen appears.
2. Select **Utility > Self Test** from the top-edge Menu bar to open the **Self Test** configuration menu.
3. Check that the power-on self tests are **Passed**.

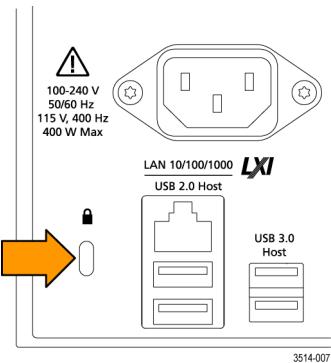
If the power-on self test shows **Failed**:

- a. Power cycle the oscilloscope.
- b. Tap **Utility > Self Test**. If the power-on self test still shows **Failed**, contact Tektronix Customer Support.

## Secure (lock) the oscilloscope

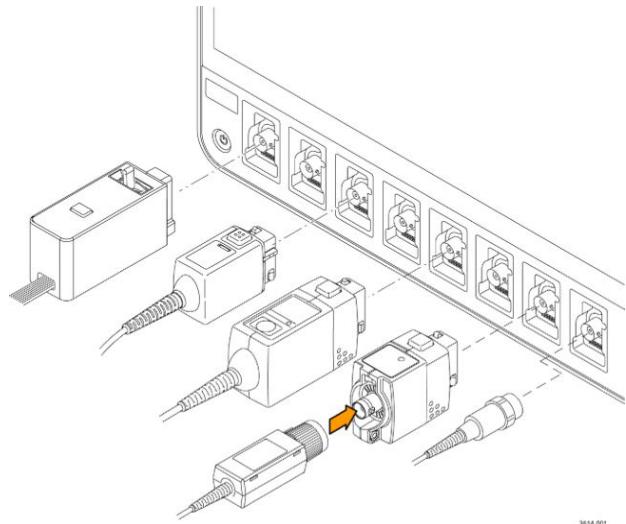
Lock an oscilloscope to a test bench or equipment rack to prevent property loss.

Attach a standard laptop security lock to the rear panel of the oscilloscope, to secure the oscilloscope to a workbench, rack, or other location.



## Connecting Probes

Probes and cables connect the oscilloscope to your device under test (DUT). Use a probe that best matches your signal measurement needs.



3514-001

Connect TPP0500, TPP1000, TekVPI<sup>®</sup>, TekVPI<sup>®</sup>, or other supported Tektronix analog probes by pushing them into a FlexChannel connector. The probe base latch locks with a 'click' when the probe is fully seated.

TekVPI probes automatically set the channel input parameters for that probe (bandwidth, attenuation, termination, and so on). If a probe has a **Menu** button, push that button to open an on-screen configuration menu. Follow instructions provided with active probes to set their parameters (auto zero, degauss, and so on).

To connect a TLP058 FlexChannel Logic Probe:

1. Move the locking lever to the unlocked position, then let go to reset locking lever to the center position.
2. Insert the probe into a FlexChannel channel until fully seated and the lock mechanism clicks.
3. Move the locking lever to the locked position. The status light should be a solid green.
4. To disconnect the TLP058 probe, move and hold the locking lever at the unlocked position and pull out the probe. Do not pull on the ribbon cable while removing the probe.

Connect a BNC probe or cable by pushing it onto a channel BNC bayonet connector and turn the lock mechanism clockwise until it locks.

Connecting a probe does not automatically display or enable that channel. Tap an Inactive Channel button to turn on that channel. Double-tap the Channel badge to open its configuration menu to verify or change probe or cable settings (bandwidth, attenuation, termination and so on).

## Rackmount information

The optional RM5 Rackmount Kit lets you install the oscilloscope in standard equipment racks. The rackmount requires seven rack units (7U) of space to install.

RM5 Rackmount Kit (Option RM5).

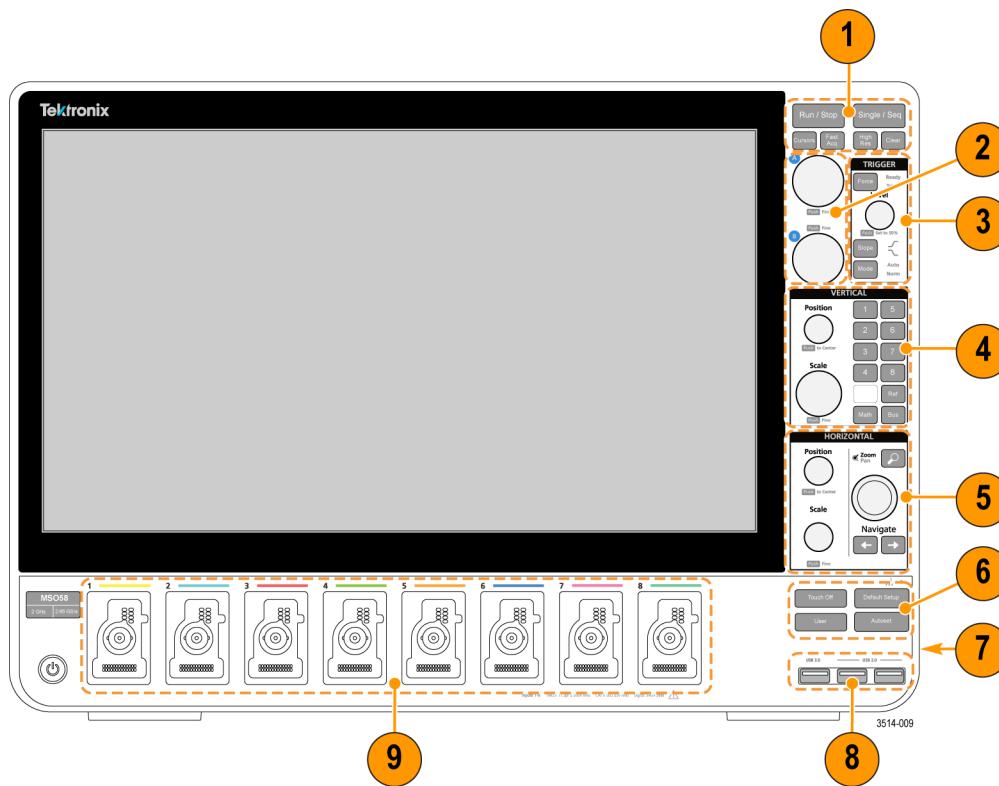
1. Purchase or obtain the rackmount kit.
2. Follow the instructions that came with the rackmount kit (*RM5 Rackmount Kit Instructions*, Tektronix part number 071-3523-xx).
3. Make sure to allow adequate clearance on the sides and rear for air ventilation, and on the back for any cables you attach to the rear panel.

# Getting acquainted with your instrument

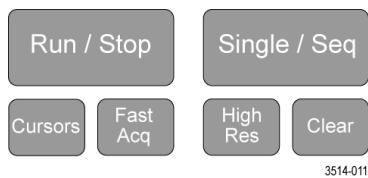
The following content provides a high-level description of the instrument controls and user interface.

## Front panel controls and connectors

The front panel controls provide direct access to key instrument settings such as vertical, horizontal, trigger, cursors, and zoom. The connectors are where you input signals with probes or cables, or insert USB devices.



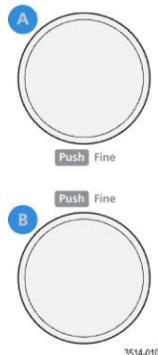
### 1. Acquisition and Cursors controls:



- **Run/Stop** starts and stops waveform acquisition. The button color indicates the acquisition status (green = running and acquiring; red = stopped). When stopped, the oscilloscope shows waveforms from the last completed acquisition. The Run/Stop button on the screen also shows the acquisition status.
- **Cursors** button turns screen cursors on or off. Use the Multipurpose knobs to move the cursors. Double-tap the cursor readouts, or on a cursor bar (line), to open the configuration menu to set cursor types and functionality. See [Display and configure cursors](#) on page 71.

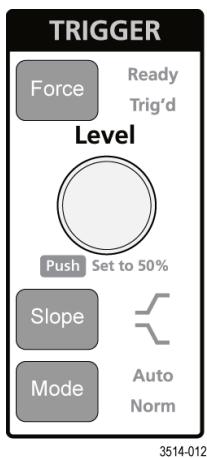
- **Fast Acq™** enables or disables the fast acquisition mode. FastAcq provides high-speed waveform capture that reduces the dead time between waveform acquisitions, enabling the capture and display of transient events such as glitches and runt pulses. It is helpful in finding elusive signal anomalies. Fast acquisition mode can also display waveform phenomena at an intensity that reflects their rate of occurrence.
- **Single/Seq** enables making a single waveform acquisition, or a specified number of acquisitions (as set in the **Acquisition** configuration menu). Pushing **Single/Seq** turns off **Run/Stop** mode and takes a single acquisition. The button color indicates the acquisition status (quick green flash = single acquisition acquired; solid green = waiting for trigger event). Pushing **Single/Seq** again takes another single acquisition.
- **High Res** applies unique finite impulse response (FIR) filters based on the current sample rate. This FIR filter maintains the maximum bandwidth possible for that sample rate while rejecting aliasing. The filter removes noise from the oscilloscope amplifiers and ADC above the usable bandwidth for the selected sample rate. Implementation of the filter in hardware, ahead of the trigger and storage, reduces trigger jitter and enables using **Fast Acq** mode while in **High Res** mode.
- **Clear** deletes the current acquisitions and measurement values from memory.

## 2. Multipurpose knobs:



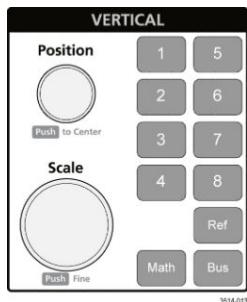
- **Multipurpose knobs (A, B)** The Multipurpose knobs A and B move cursors and set parameter values in configuration menu input boxes. Selecting an input box that can use a Multipurpose knob assigns the indicated knob to change the value in that input box. The ring around each knob lights when you can use that knob to do an action.
- Push a Multipurpose knob to enable the **Fine** mode for making smaller increment changes. Push the knob again to exit **Fine** mode.

### 3. Trigger controls:



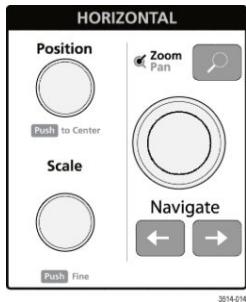
- **Force** forces a trigger event at a random point in the waveform and captures the acquisition.
  - **Level** sets the amplitude level that the signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition. The color of the **Level** knob indicates the trigger source except for dual-level triggers. The **Level** knob is disabled when the trigger type requires two level settings or other trigger qualifiers (set from the **Trigger** configuration menu). Push the knob to set the threshold level to 50% of the peak-to-peak amplitude range of the signal.
  - **Slope** sets the signal transition direction to detect (low to high, high to low, or either direction). Push the button to cycle through the selections. The **Slope** button is disabled when the trigger type requires other slope qualifiers (set from the **Trigger** configuration menu).
  - **Mode** sets how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event.
  - **Auto** trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform whether or not a trigger event occurs. If a trigger event occurs, the instrument displays a stable waveform. If a trigger event does not occur, the instrument forces a trigger event and acquisition and displays an unstable waveform.
- Normal** trigger mode sets the instrument to acquire and display a waveform only when there is a valid trigger event. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.

#### 4. Vertical controls:



- **Position** moves the selected waveform (Channel, Math, Reference, Bus) and its graticule up or down on the screen. The color of the **Position** knob indicates which waveform the knob is controlling. Push the knob to set the threshold level to 50% of the peak-to-peak amplitude range of the signal.
- **Scale** sets the amplitude units per vertical graticule division of the selected waveform. The scale values are shown on the right edge of the horizontal graticule lines, and are specific to the selected waveform in both **Stacked** or **Overlay** modes (in other words, each waveform has its own unique vertical graticule settings regardless of display mode). The color of the **Scale** knob indicates which waveform the knob is controlling.
- **Channel** buttons (1-4 for MSO54, 1-6 for MSO56, 1-8 for MSO58) turns on (displays), selects, or turns off a channel, as follows:
  - If the channel is not displayed, pushing a Channel button turns on that channel to the Waveform view.
  - If the channel is on the screen and is not selected, pushing that channel's button selects that channel.
  - If the channel is on the screen and is also selected, pushing that channel's button turns that channel off (removes it from Waveform view).
- The **Math** button adds or selects a Math waveform on the Waveform view, as follows:
  - If no Math waveform exists, pushing the **Math** button adds a Math waveform to the Waveform view and opens the Math configuration menu.
  - If only one Math waveform is displayed, pushing the button turns off the Math waveform (removes it from Waveform view). Push the button again to display the waveform.
  - If two or more Math waveforms are displayed, pushing the button cycles through selecting each math waveform.
- The **Ref** button adds or selects a Reference (saved) waveform on the Waveform view, as follows:
  - If no Reference waveform exists, pushing the **Ref** button opens the **Browse Waveform Files** configuration menu. Navigate to and select a waveform file (\*.wfm) and tap **Recall** to load and display the reference waveform.
  - If only one Reference waveform is displayed, pushing the button turns off the Reference waveform (removes it from the Waveform View). Push the button again to display the waveform.
  - If two or more Reference waveforms are displayed, pushing the button cycles through selecting each Reference waveform.
- The **Bus** button adds or selects a bus waveform on the Waveform view, as follows:
  - If no Bus waveform exists, pushing the **Bus** button adds a Bus waveform to the Waveform view and opens the Bus configuration menu.
  - If only one Bus waveform is displayed, pushing the button turns off the Bus waveform (removes it from Waveform view).
  - If two or more Bus waveforms are displayed, pushing the button cycles through selecting each Bus waveform.

## 5. Horizontal controls:



- **Position** moves the waveform and graticule side to side on the screen (changing the trigger point position in the waveform record). Push the knob to center the trigger event to the center graticule on the Waveform view.
- **Scale** sets the time per major horizontal graticule division and samples/second parameters for the oscilloscope. Scale applies to all waveforms. Push the knob to enable the Fine mode for making smaller increment changes. Push the knob again to exit Fine mode.
- **Zoom** opens the Zoom mode. Push **Zoom** again to exit zoom mode. See [The Zoom user interface elements](#) on page 38.
- **Zoom** knob (center knob) increases or decreases the area of the zoom box in the Zoom Waveform Overview, which in turn controls the zoom amount of the waveforms shown in the main Zoom view.
- **Pan** knob (outer knob) moves the Zoom box left or right in the **Zoom Waveform Overview**, which in turn controls the part of the waveform shown in the main Zoom view.
- **Navigate** (left and right arrow) buttons puts the oscilloscope in Zoom mode and positions the previous or next search point in the waveform record to the center graticule of the Waveform view. There must be a **Search** badge present in the Results bar before the **Navigate** function will operate. See [Badges](#) on page 31.

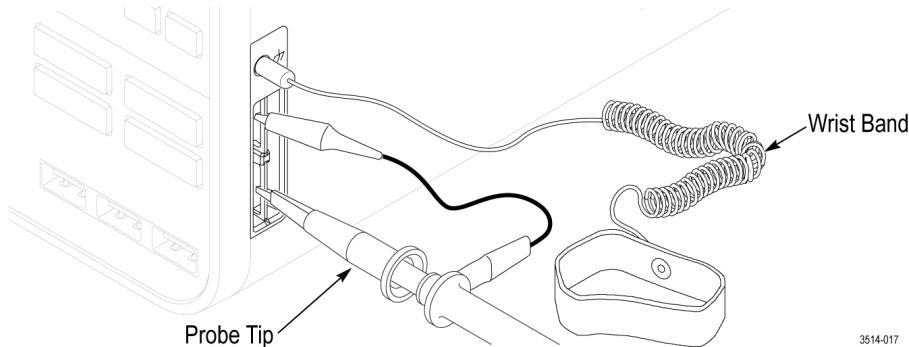
The front panel **Navigate** buttons can also be used for the **Previous** and **Next** button functions on measurement badges.

## 6. Miscellaneous controls:

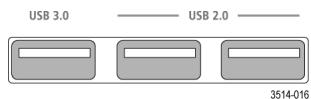


- **Touch Off** turns touch screen capability off. The **Touch Off** button is lighted when the touch screen is turned off.
- **User** is a one-push save operation that uses the current menu bar **File > Save As** settings to save screen shots (including open menus and dialog boxes), waveform files, instrument settings, and so on, as follows:
  - If a **File > Save** or **File > Save As** operation has occurred since the last instrument startup, pushing **User** saves the file types to the location last set in the **Save As** configuration menu.
  - If no file save operation has occurred since the last instrument startup, pushing **User** opens the **Save As** configuration menu. Select a tab to select what type of file to save (Screen Capture, Waveform, and so on), set any associated parameters, and where to save it, and select **OK**. The specified file or files are saved. The next time you push **User**, the specified files are saved.
  - Screen Captures capture the entire screen, including most displayed configuration menus and dialog boxes.
- **Default Setup** restores the oscilloscope settings (horizontal, vertical, scale, position, and so on) to the factory default settings.
- **Autoset** automatically displays a stable waveform. See [Quickly display a waveform \(Autoset\)](#) on page 49.

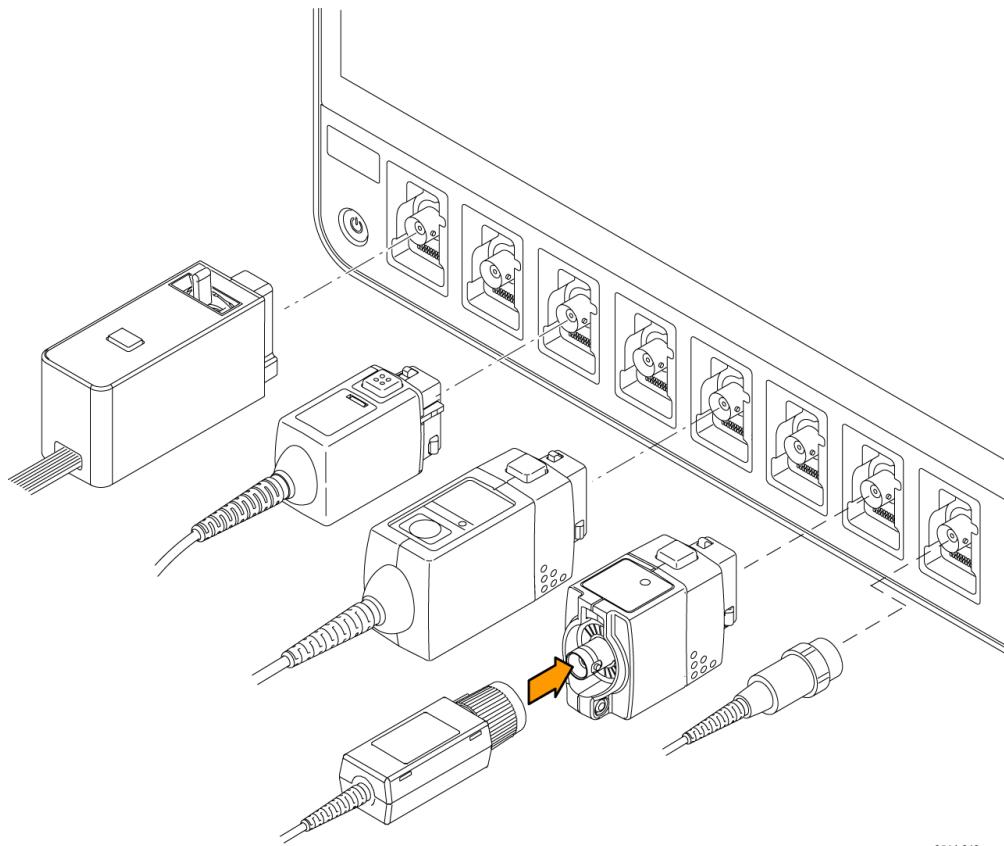
## 7. Ground and Probe Compensation connectors:



- The Ground and Probe Compensation connectors are located at the lower right side of the instrument, near the front panel. The Ground connector (the small hole in the case) provides an electrically grounded (through a resistor) connection point to attach an anti-static wrist strap, to reduce electrostatic damage (ESD) while you handle or probe the DUT.
- The Probe Compensation connections provide a ground connector (upper tab) and 1 kHz square wave source (lower tab) for adjusting the high-frequency response of a passive probe (probe compensation). The oscilloscope uses this signal to automatically compensate supported probes, including the ones that ship with the product. See [Compensate the TPP0500B or TPP1000 probes](#) on page 43.

**8. USB Host ports (USB 3.0 and 2.0):**

- USB ports are located at the lower right corner of the front panel, and on the rear panel. Connect USB flash drives to which you can save or recall data (such as instrument software updates, waveforms, settings, and screen captures), or connect peripheral devices such as a mouse or keyboard.

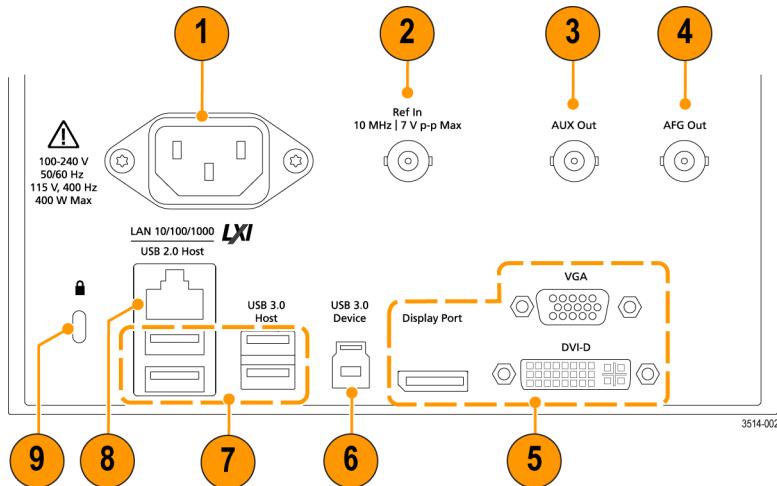
**9. FlexChannel probe connectors:**

3514-019

- FlexChannel connectors support all TekVPI+ and TekVPI measurement probes, BNC passive probes, the TPL058 FlexChannel Logic Probe, and BNC cables. You connect most probes simply by pushing them into the connector until the probe seats with a click. See [Connecting Probes](#) on page 17.

## Rear panel connections

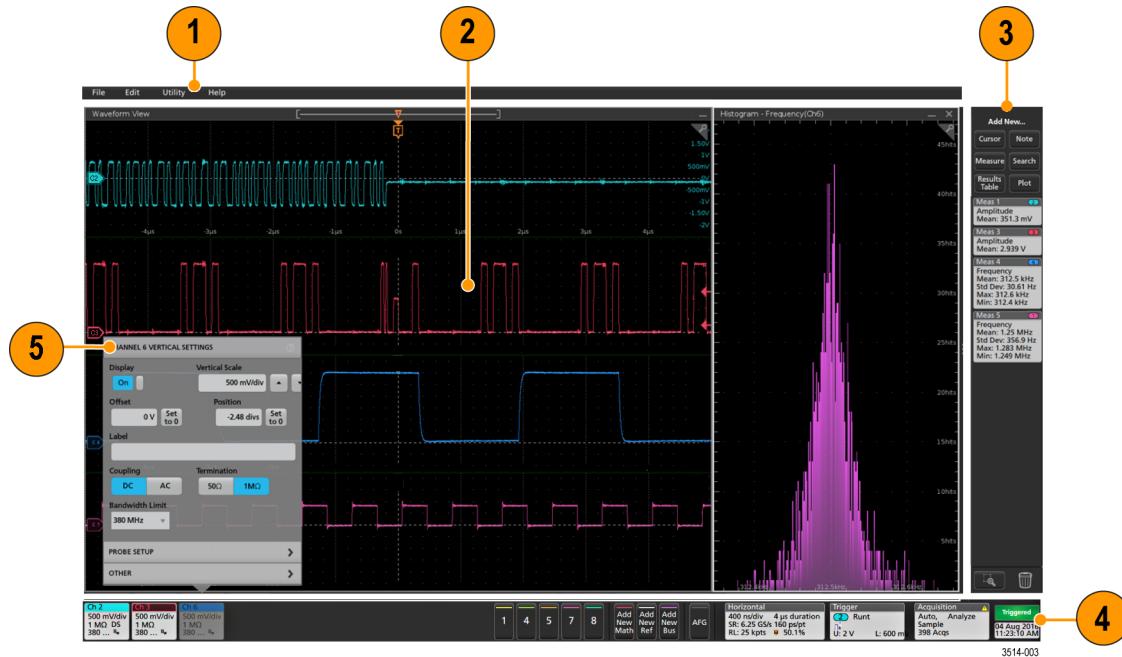
The rear panel connections supply power to the oscilloscope and provide connectors for network, USB devices, video, reference signals, and the AFG output.



1. **Power cord** connector. Use only the power cord specified for this product and certified for the country of use.
2. **Ref In** lets you connect a high-precision 10 MHz reference signal to the oscilloscope for more accurate measurements.
3. **AUX Out** generates a signal transition on a trigger event, outputs a 10 MHz reference signal, or outputs a synchronization signal from the AFG.
4. **AFG Out** is the signal output for the Arbitrary Function Generator (AFG).
5. **Video outputs** (Display Port, VGA, and DVI-D) let you connect an external monitor or projector to show the oscilloscope screen.
6. **USB Device** port lets you connect to a PC to remotely control the oscilloscope using USBTMC protocol.
7. **USB Host** ports let you connect a USB memory device, keyboard, or mouse.
8. **LAN** connector (RJ-45) connects the oscilloscope to a 10/100/1000 Base-T local area network.
9. **Security** lock connector lets you use a standard PC/laptop lock cable to secure the oscilloscope to a work bench or other location.

## The user interface screen

The touch screen user interface contains waveforms and plots, measurement readouts, and touch-based controls to access all oscilloscope functions.

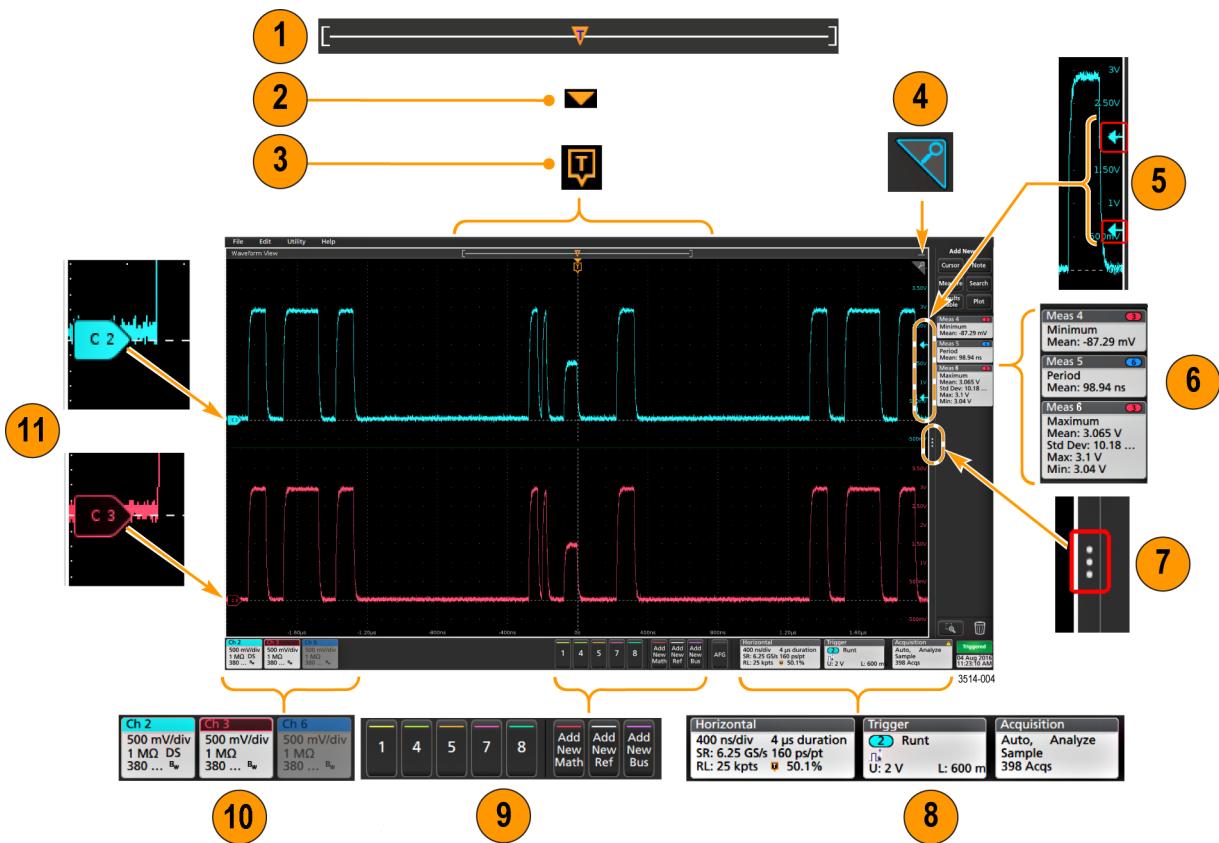


1. The **Menu bar** provides menus for typical operations including:
    - Saving, loading, and accessing files
    - Undoing or redoing an action
    - Setting oscilloscope display and measurement preferences
    - Configuring network access
    - Running self tests
    - Erasing measurement and settings memory (TekSecure™)
    - Loading option licenses
    - Opening a Help viewer.
  2. The **Waveform View** area displays analog, digital, math, reference, bus, and trend waveforms. The waveforms include waveform handles (identifiers), individual vertical graticule scale labels, and trigger position and level(s) indicators. You can set the Waveform View to stack each waveform vertically in separate graticules, called 'slices' (the default mode, as shown in the previous image), or overlay all the waveforms on the screen (traditional waveform view). See [The user interface elements](#) on page 28.
- You can also add Histogram, Spectral, Eye, and Measurement Results views (plots) for individual measurements. These plot views are separate view windows that you can move on the screen by dragging their title bar to a new position.

3. The **Results Bar** contains controls for displaying cursors, adding notes, plots, and result tables to the screen, and add measurements to the Results bar. The controls are:
  - The **Cursors** button displays on-screen cursors in the selected view. Touch and drag, or use the Multipurpose knobs, to move the cursors. Double-tap on a cursor, or on the cursor readouts, to open a configuration menu to set cursor types and related functions.
  - The **Measure** button opens a configuration menu from which to select and add measurements to the Results bar. Each measurement you add has a separate badge. Double-tap a measurement badge to open its configuration menu.
  - The **Results Table** button adds a Measurement or Bus Results table to the screen. The Measurement Results table displays all measurements present in the Results bar. The Bus Results table displays bus decode information for displayed bus waveforms. Each table is contained within its own view window, which can be moved within the display area.
  - The **Note** button adds a note object to the selected view. Double-tap the note text to open a configuration menu to change the text and font characteristics. Drag the note to any location on the view. Notes cannot be added to a **Results Table** view.
  - The **Search** button lets you detect and mark a waveform where specified events occur. Tap **Search** to open a Search configuration menu and set the search conditions for analog and digital channels. You can add any number of searches to the same waveform or to different waveforms. Search badges are added to the **Results** bar.
  - The **Plot** button adds an XY, XYZ, or Eye Diagram plot to the display. These plots are contained within their own window and can be moved within the overall display area.
  - The **Measurement** and **Search** badges show measurement and search results, and are displayed in the middle area of the **Results** bar. See [Badges](#) on page 31. See [Add a measurement](#) on page 61. See [Add a Search](#) on page 68.
  - The **Draw-a-Box** button at the bottom of the Results Bar lets you draw a box on the screen to zoom in on an area of interest.
  - The **Trash Can** icon lets you drag Channel, Waveform, Measurement, and Search badges to the **Trash Can** to delete them.
4. The **Settings Bar** displays System badges for setting Horizontal, Trigger, Acquisition, and Date/Time parameters; **Inactive Channel** buttons to turn on channels; **Add New Waveform** buttons to add math, reference, and bus waveforms to the display; and Channel and Waveform badges that let you configure the individual waveform parameters. Tap a channel or waveform button to add it to the screen and display a badge. Double-tap any type badge to open its configuration menu. See [Badges](#) on page 31.
5. **Configuration Menus** let you quickly change the parameters of the selected user interface item. You can open configuration menus by double-tapping on badges, screen objects, or screen areas. See [Configuration menus](#) on page 36.

## The user interface elements

Each area of the user interface has a specific function that helps manage information or controls. This topic shows and describes the key user interface elements.



1. The **Waveform Record View** is a graphical high-level view of the overall waveform record length, how much of the record is on the screen (shown in brackets), the location of key time events including the trigger event, and the current position of waveforms cursors.



If you are displaying a reference waveform that is shorter than the current acquisition record length, or you are changing the horizontal time scale while the oscilloscope acquisition is stopped, the brackets change position to show the part of the waveform record that is being viewed relative to the current acquisition record length.



If cursors are active on a waveform, the Waveform record view shows the relative cursor positions as small vertical dashed lines.



When in Zoom mode, the Waveform Record View is replaced with the Zoom Overview. See [The Zoom user interface elements](#) on page 38.

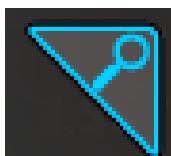
2. The **Expansion Point** icon on the waveform view shows the center point around which the waveform expands and compresses when changing horizontal settings.



3. The **Trigger Position Indicator** shows where the trigger event occurred in the waveform record. The trigger icon is displayed in the waveform slice that is the trigger source.



4. The **Zoom** icon (in upper right corner of Waveform and Plot views) toggles zoom on and off. The front panel **Zoom** button and knobs also turn on zoom mode and change the position and horizontal size of the Zoom Box.



5. The **Trigger Level Indicator** icon(s) shows the trigger level on the trigger source waveform. Some trigger types require two trigger levels.
6. **Measurement** and **Search** badges show measurement and search results. See [Badges](#) on page 31. See [Add a measurement](#) on page 61.
7. The **Results Bar Handle** opens or closes the Results Bar, to maximize waveform screen viewing when needed. To reopen the Results bar, either tap the handle icon or swipe left from the right side of the display.
8. The **System** badges show global instrument settings (Horizontal, Trigger, Acquisition, Run/Stop status, and Date/Time). See [Badges](#) on page 31.
9. The **Inactive Channel** buttons add channel waveforms to the Waveform view and add an associated Channel badge to the Settings bar.

The **Add New** buttons add Math, Reference, and Bus waveforms to the Waveform view, and add an associated Waveform badge to the Settings bar. You can add any number of Math, Reference, and Bus waveforms, limited only by system memory.

The optional **AFG** button opens the AFG configuration menu to set and enable the AFG output. This button is only present if the AFG option is installed.

The optional **DVM** button lets you use an analog probe to take DC, AC RMS, or DC+AC RMS voltage measurements on your DUT. Tap the button to add a **DVM** badge to the Results Bar and open a configuration menu. The DVM option also enables a trigger frequency counter, accessible from the **Mode & Holdoff** panel in the **Trigger** badge menu. This button is only present if the DVM option is installed.

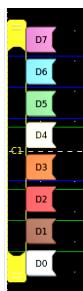
10. **Channel** and **Waveform** badges (Math, Reference, Bus) show active channel and waveform settings and their status (selected, unselected, inactive). Double-tap a badge to open its associated configuration menu. See [Badges](#) on page 31. See [Configuration menus](#) on page 36.

If you add more Channel or Waveform badges than can fit in the waveform badge area, use the scroll buttons at each end of the waveform badge area to let you scroll through all badges.

- The **Waveform Handles** identify the channel or source waveform (C1-C8 for channels, Mx for Math waveforms, Rx for Reference waveforms, Bx for bus waveforms). The waveform handles are at the zero-volt level of the waveform. The currently selected waveform handle is a solid color; unselected waveform handles are outlined.

Double-tapping a waveform handle opens the configuration menu for that waveform.

For digital channels, the waveform handle shows the channel number, with the individual digital signal handles marked D0-D7. The colors follow a color code similar to that used on resistors. The D0 indicator is white, the D1 indicator is brown, the D2 indicator is red, and so on.



Double-tapping a digital waveform handle opens the digital channel configuration menu.

Dragging a digital signal handle over another handle swaps those two signals on the waveform.

## Badges

Badges are rectangular icons that show waveform, measurement, and instrument settings or readouts. Badges also provide fast access to configuration menus. The badge types are Channel, Waveform, Measurement, Search, and System.

### Channel and Waveform badges

**Channel and Waveform** badges are located in the Settings Bar, located along the bottom left of the screen. These badges show settings for each displayed channel or waveform. Each waveform (channel, math, reference, bus, and trend) has its own badge. Double-tap a badge to open its configuration menu.

Ch 2	Ch 3	Ch 4	Math 1	Trend 1
1 V/div 1 GHz Bw	1 V/div 1 GHz Bw	1 V/div 1 MΩ 500 MHz Bw	860 mV/div Ch2 + Ch3	Meas 9 731.3963... Frequency

Most Channel and Waveform badges also have Scale buttons, shown by single-tapping the badge. Use the Scale buttons to increase or decrease the vertical scale setting for that waveform.

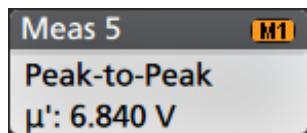


**Channel** badges are listed in the channel order. You cannot move **Channel** badges other than to drag them into the **Trash Can** icon to turn them off.

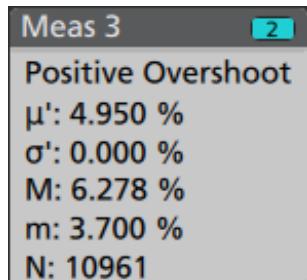
**Waveform** badges (Math, Ref, Bus, Trend) are listed in the order created, and are grouped together by type. Deleting a **Waveform** badge does not change the order or names of the remaining badges. You cannot move **Waveform** badges other than to drag them to the **Trash Can** icon to delete them.

### Measurement badges

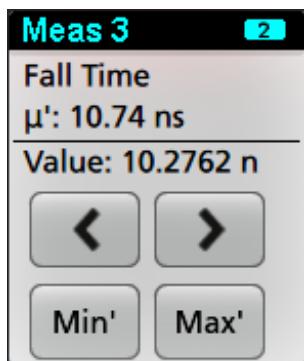
**Measurement** badges are located in the Results Bar. They show measurements or search results. The badge title also shows the measurement source or sources. To add a Measurement badge, tap the **Add New Measurement** button and select a measurement. Double-tap a Measurement badge to open its configuration menu to change or refine settings. The default measurement badge readout shows the measurement's mean ( $\mu$ ) value.



To add statistical readouts to individual measurement badges, double-tap a measurement badge to open its configuration menu and select **Show Statistics in Badge**.



Some Measurement badges also have Navigation buttons, shown by single-tapping the badge.



The < (Previous) and > (Next) buttons center the waveform in the display at the position of the previous or next measurement point in the record (for measurements that take more than one measurement per acquisition).

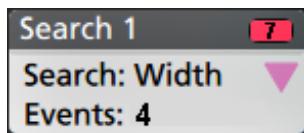
The **Min'** and **Max'** navigation buttons center the waveform in the display at the minimum or maximum value for that measurement in the current acquisition.

The prime symbol (') shown on measurement readings and Min/Max buttons indicates that the value shown (or moved to in the case of **Min/Max** and waveforms) is from the current acquisition. Lack of a prime symbol means the value is from all acquisitions.

**Measurement** badges are listed in the order created, starting at the top of the Results bar. Deleting a **Measurement** badge does not change the order or names of the remaining badges. You cannot move **Measurement** badges other than to drag them into the **Trash Can** icon to delete them.

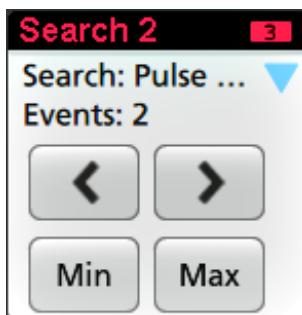
### Search badges

**Search** badges are also located in the Results Bar, below the Measurement badges. A search badge defines the search source, type, and the number of search criteria events (occurrences) in the current acquisition, and marks the waveform where those events occur with small down-pointing triangles along the top of the waveform graticule. Double-tap a search badge to open its configuration menu to change or refine search settings.



Search badges are created by tapping the **Add New... Search** button. Use the displayed configuration menu to set the search criteria.

Search badges have < (Previous) and > (Next) Navigation buttons that open the Zoom mode and center the waveform in the display at the position of the previous or next search mark in the waveform record. Search badge Navigation buttons are only usable when the oscilloscope is in single acquisition mode. Single-tap a badge to close the Navigation buttons.



Some searches also provide **Min** and **Max** navigation buttons that open the Zoom mode and center the waveform in the display at the minimum or maximum value for that search event in the current acquisition.

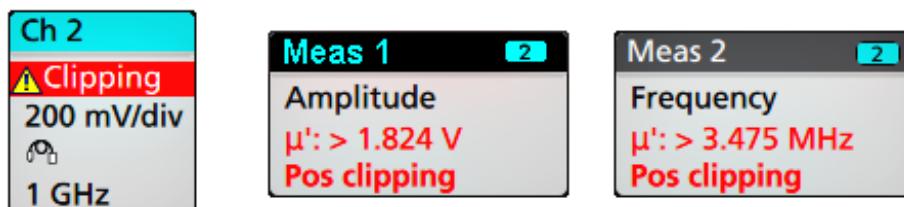
**Search** badges are listed in the order created. Deleting a **Search** badge does not change the order or names of the remaining badges. You cannot move **Search** badges other than to drag them into the **Trash Can** icon to delete them.

## Signal Clipping and Badges



**WARNING.** Clipping is caused by excessive or dangerous voltage at the probe tip, and/or a vertical scale setting that is not adequate to display the entire vertical range of the waveform. Excessive voltage at the probe tip can injure the operator and cause damage to the probe and/or instrument.

This instrument shows a warning triangle symbol and the words *Clipping* in a Channel badge when a vertical clipping condition exists. Any measurement badges associated with that channel also indicate a clipping condition by turning the measurement text red and listing the type of clipping (positive or negative).



To close the clipping message, change the vertical scale to show the entire waveform, disconnect the probe tip from the excessive voltage source, and check that you are probing the correct signal using the correct probe.

Clipping causes inaccurate amplitude-related measurement results. Clipping also causes inaccurate amplitude values in saved waveform files. If a math waveform is clipped, it will not affect amplitude measurements on that math waveform.

## System badges

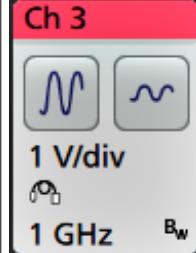
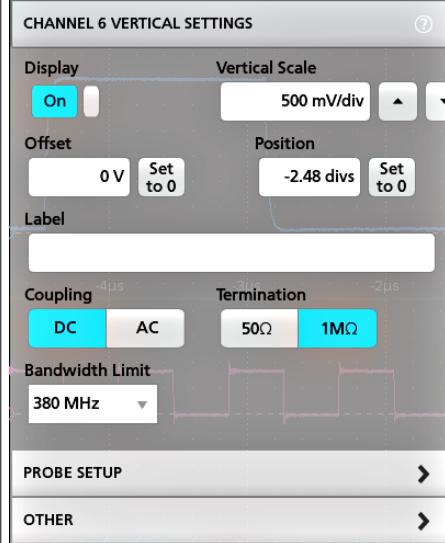
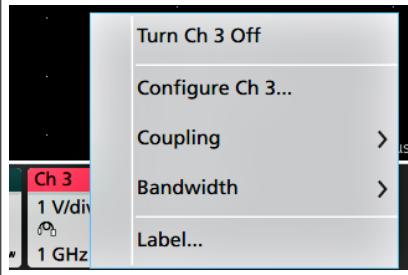
**System** badges (in the Settings bar) display the main Horizontal, Trigger, and Acquisition settings. You cannot delete System badges.

Horizontal	Trigger	Acquisition
1 $\mu$ s/div      10 $\mu$ s SR: 3.125 GS/s    320 ps/pt RL: 31.25 kpts    50%	2 Runt  U: 2.28 L: 800 m	Auto, Analyze High Res: 12 bits 10.379 kAcqs

Double-tap a System badge to open its configuration menu.

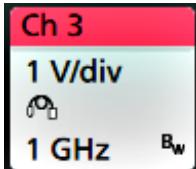
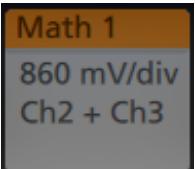
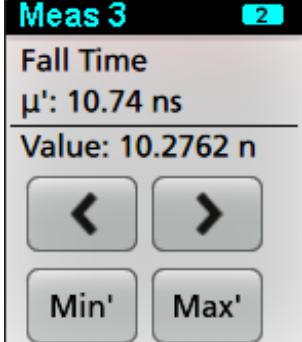
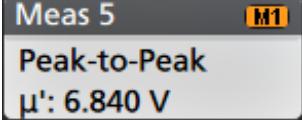
The Horizontal badge also has Scale buttons, shown by single-tapping the badge. Use the Horizontal Scale buttons to increase or decrease the horizontal time setting.

## Common badge actions

Action	Result	Example
Single tap	Immediate access controls (Scale, Navigation).	
Double tap	Configuration menu with access to all settings for the badge.	
Touch and hold	Right-click menu with single tap access to common actions. Typical actions include turning off a channel and deleting a measurement or search badge.	

### Badge selection status

The appearance of a badge indicates its selection status (selected or unselected), or if a measurement needs to be deleted to close a channel or waveform badge.

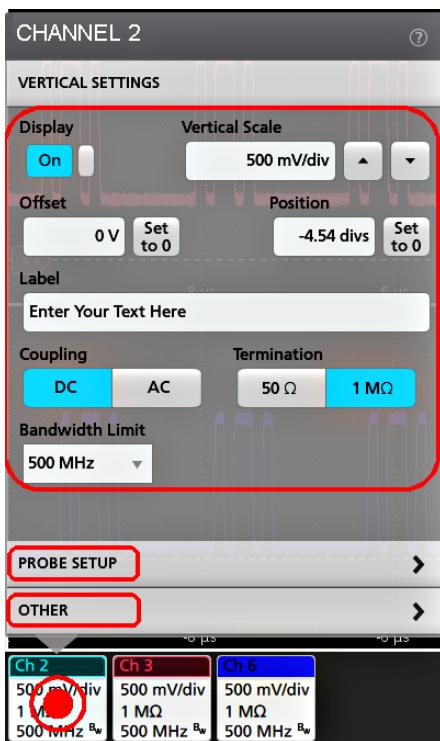
Badge type	Selected	Unselected	Turned off or in use <sup>1</sup>
Channel or Waveform			
Measurement			N/A

## Configuration menus

Configuration menus let you quickly set the parameters for channels, system settings (Horizontal, Trigger, Acquisition), measurements, cursor readouts, Waveform and Plot views, note text, and so on.

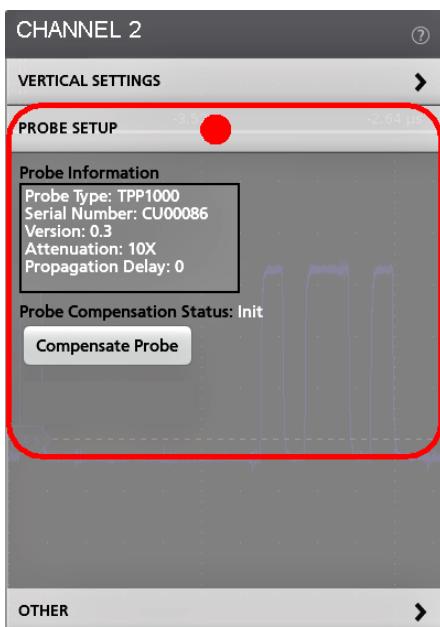
Double-tap an item (badge, Waveform or Plot view, cursor readouts, note text, and so on) to open its configuration menu. For example, double-tap a Channel badge in the Settings bar to open its configuration menu.

<sup>1</sup> A dimmed Channel badge means the screen waveform is turned off (but not deleted). A dimmed Waveform badge means that the waveform display is turned off, or it is being used as a source by a measurement and cannot be deleted until the measurement is deleted.



Selections or values that you enter take effect immediately. Menu contents are dynamic, and can change depending on your selections.

Related settings are grouped into 'panels.' Tap the panel name to show those settings. Changes to panel settings can change the values and/or fields shown in that panel and other panels.

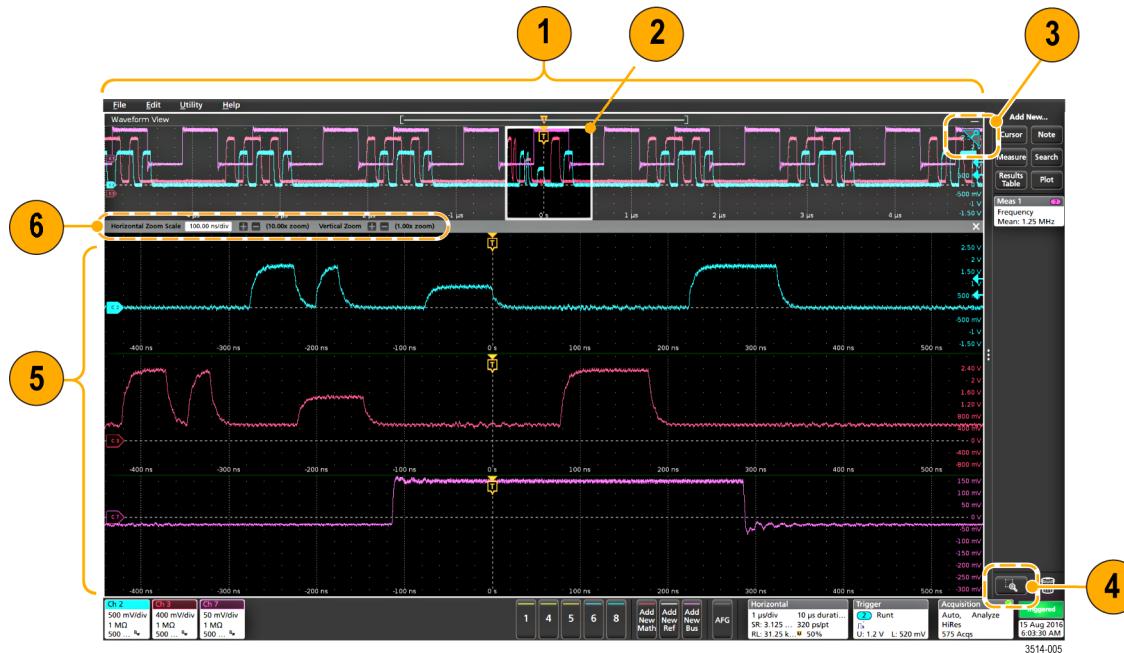


Tap anywhere outside a configuration menu to close it.

To open Help content for a configuration menu, tap the question mark Help icon in the upper right corner of the menu.

## The Zoom user interface elements

Use the zoom tools to magnify waveforms to view signal details.



1. The **Zoom Overview** shows the entire waveform record. All waveforms are shown in Overlay mode in the Zoom Overview area.

**NOTE.** Using pinch and expand gestures on the Zoom Overview waveforms changes the horizontal time base settings.

2. The **Zoom Box** shows the area of the Zoom Overview to display in the Zoom View. You can touch and drag the box to move the area to view. You can also use the zoom Pan knob to move the Zoom Box left or right.

**NOTE.** Moving the Zoom Box, or changing its position, does not change the horizontal time base settings.

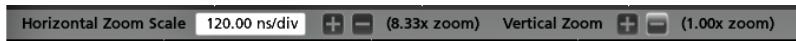
3. The **Zoom** icon (in the upper right corner of the Waveform View) switches zoom mode on and off.
4. The **Draw-a-Box** button lets you quickly draw a box around an area of interest in the Waveform or Zoom Overview on which to zoom. Drawing a box immediately puts the oscilloscope into zoom mode. The button is located at the bottom of the Results bar. Tap the button, then touch and drag on the waveform to draw a box on the area of interest.

To keep the Draw-a-Box button enabled, double-tap the Draw-a-Box button. Keeping the Draw-a-Box function enabled lets you update your Zoom display by drawing new boxes in either the Waveform Slice or Zoom Overview window.

5. The **Zoom View** shows the zoomed waveforms as marked by the Zoom Box in the Zoom Waveform Record View. Use pinch and/or drag options in the zoom view to change the zoomed area of interest.

**NOTE.** Pinch, expand, and drag gestures in the Zoom View only change zoom magnification settings and Zoom Box position.

6. Use the **Zoom Title Bar** controls to adjust the vertical and horizontal size of the zoom area. Click or tap the + or - buttons.



## Using the touch screen interface for common tasks

Use standard touch screen actions, similar to those found on smart phones and tablets, to interact with most screen objects. You can also use a mouse to interact with the UI. The equivalent mouse operation is shown for each touch operation.

The oscilloscope has a user interface tutorial. Tap Help > User Interface Tutorial to quickly learn the fundamental touch operations.

**Table 1: Common touchscreen UI tasks (with mouse equivalents)**

Task	Touchscreen UI action	Mouse action
Add a channel, math, reference, or bus waveform to the screen.	Tap an inactive channel button, Add New Math, Add New Reference, or Add New Bus button.	Click an inactive channel button, Add New Math, Add New Reference, or Add New Bus button.
Select a channel, math, reference, or bus waveform to make it active	Stacked or Overlay mode: Tap the Channel or Waveform badge. Stacked mode: Tap the channel, math, reference, or bus waveform slice or handle. Overlay mode: Tap the channel or waveform handle.	Stacked or Overlay mode: Left-click the Channel or Waveform badge. Stacked mode: Left-click the channel, math, reference, or bus waveform slice or handle. Overlay mode: Left-click the channel or waveform handle.
Display scale or navigation buttons on a badge (waveform, measurement <sup>2</sup> , search, horizontal).	Tap the badge.	Click the badge.
Open a configuration menu on any item (all badges, views, cursor readouts, labels, and so on).	Double-tap the badge, view, or other object.	Double-click the badge, view, or other object.
Open a right-click menu (badges, views).	Touch and hold on the badge, Waveform View, Plot view, or other screen item until a menu opens.	Right-click the object.
Close a configuration menu <sup>3</sup> .	Tap anywhere outside the menu or dialog.	Click anywhere outside the menu or dialog.
Move a menu.	Touch and hold the menu title bar or a blank area in the menu, then drag the menu to new position.	Click and hold the right mouse button on title or blank area, drag to new position.
Move a note <sup>4</sup> .	Touch and hold on a note and quickly <sup>5</sup> start to drag, then move to new position.	Click and hold the right mouse button on the note and quickly start to drag, then move to the new position.

<sup>2</sup> Not all measurement or search badges display navigation buttons.

<sup>3</sup> Some dialog boxes will not close until you click an OK, Close, or other button in the dialog.

<sup>4</sup> Notes are screen objects and are not associated with any particular waveform channel or slice.

<sup>5</sup> Start to move the note as soon as selected (highlighted), otherwise the UI opens the right-click menu.

Task	Touchscreen UI action	Mouse action
Change horizontal or vertical settings directly on a waveform. Vertical changes only apply to the selected channel or waveform; horizontal changes apply to all channels and waveforms.	Tap a badge and use the Scale buttons. Pinch or expand two fingertips on the waveform view, move them together or apart vertically or horizontally, lift from screen; repeat.	Left-click a channel, waveform, or Horizontal badge and click on the Scale buttons.
Increase or decrease the zoom area (while in Zoom mode)	Pinch or expand two fingertips on the waveform view, move them together or apart vertically or horizontally, lift from screen; repeat.	Click the + or - buttons on the Zoom Title bar. Click the Draw-a-Box button, draw a box around the waveform area of interest.
Quickly scroll or pan a waveform or list.	Touch and drag in the waveform or list.	Click and drag in the waveform or list.
Close or open the Results Bar to increase the Waveform view area.	Tap on the Results Bar Handle (three vertical dots) or anywhere in the divider between the Waveform View and the Results Bar.	Click the Results Bar Handle (three vertical dots) or anywhere in the divider between the Waveform View and the Results Bar. Click and drag the Results Bar divider.

## Accessing application help

Use the instrument online help to quickly get information about a function or assistance in performing a task.

### Using context-sensitive help

To open help on a particular menu or item, tap the Help button (question mark symbol) in the title bar. The browser opens with content relevant to the menu or item.

### Navigating the online help

Select **Help > Help**. The Help Browser is similar in look and feel to PC-based Help tools. From the help browser, select one of the following tabs:

- **Contents Tab.** Click any entry to display information on the subject.
- **Index Tab.** Double-click an entry to display information on the subject. Or, enter a keyword you are looking for (the list scrolls to that topic). Click Display to open the topic.
- **Search Tab.** Type in the keyword you are looking for; then click List Topics. Every topic that contains the keyword will be displayed. Select a topic, and then click Display to open the topic.
- **Bookmarks Tab.** To save the current topic to a list, click the Bookmarks tab; then right-click and select Add. Double-click to return to a topic at any time.

### Other help features

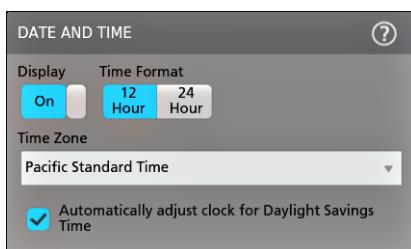
- Zoom on help text. Use the magnifying glass icons to zoom in or out of the help text.

# Configure the instrument

## Set the time zone and clock readout format

Set the time zone to your region so that saved files are marked with the correct date and time information. You can also set the time format (12 or 24 hour clock).

1. Double-tap the Date/Time badge (bottom-right of screen) to open the configuration menu.



2. Select your local time zone and the time format (12 or 24 hour). Settings take place immediately.
3. To turn off showing the date and time on the screen, tap the **Display** button to **Off**.  
To turn on date/time display again, double-tap in the blank area where the date/time badge was displayed to open the configuration menu, and set the **Display** button to **On**.
4. Tap anywhere outside of the menu to close it.

## Functional check

Use this procedure to quickly verify that the oscilloscope can display a waveform and take a measurement.

1. Power on the oscilloscope.
2. Tap **Utility > Self test**. Check that all tests listed show **Pass**.
3. Connect an analog probe to the Channel 1 connector.
4. Connect the oscilloscope tip and ground lead to the probe compensation connectors.
5. Push the **Autoset** button. You should see a square wave in the display (approximately 5 V P.P.).
6. Tap the **Add New...Measure** button.
7. Tap the **Timing Measurements** panel in the Add Measurements configuration menu.
8. Double-tap the **Frequency** button to add the frequency measurement to the Results bar.
9. Check that the **Frequency** measurement reads 1 kHz
10. Repeat these steps to check the other channels on the oscilloscope. Make sure that you set the source in the Add Measurement configuration menu to use the correct channel before adding the Frequency measurement.

## Download and install the latest firmware

Loading the latest firmware helps ensure that your oscilloscope is taking the most accurate measurements. You can check for the latest updates from network-connected oscilloscopes, or download the update file to a USB drive and install from there.

Prerequisite: Save any important on-instrument files (waveforms, screen captures, oscilloscope setups, and so on) to a USB drive or network.

### Update oscilloscope firmware from USB drive

Prerequisite: Determine the current version of firmware installed on the oscilloscope (**Help > About**)

1. Open up a Web browser on a PC and go to [www.tektronix.com/software](http://www.tektronix.com/software).
2. Enter **MSO5** in the search field and click **Search**.
3. Select **Software** in the **Filter by type** list.
4. If the listed available firmware version is newer than what is on your oscilloscope, select and download that file to your PC.
5. Follow the installation instructions that came with the downloaded firmware to create a firmware install file.
6. Copy the firmware install file to a USB drive.
7. Insert the USB drive into any oscilloscope USB Host port. The oscilloscope detects the USB drive with the firmware file and starts the installation process.
8. Follow instructions to install the firmware.

---

**NOTE.** Do not power off the oscilloscope or remove the USB flash drive until the oscilloscope finishes installing the firmware. The oscilloscope displays a message when it is OK to turn off the oscilloscope.

---

9. When the firmware install is finished, remove the USB drive and restart the oscilloscope.

To confirm the firmware installation:

1. Tap **Help > About** in the Menu bar.
2. Verify that the firmware version number listed on the screen is the same version that you downloaded.

## Run Signal Path Compensation (SPC)

Run SPC at regular intervals for best measurement accuracy. You should run SPC whenever the ambient (room) temperature has changed by more than 5 °C (41 °F), or once a week if you use vertical scale settings of 5 mV per division or less.

Signal Path Compensation (SPC) corrects for DC level inaccuracies in the internal signal path, caused by temperature variations and/or long-term signal path drift. Failure to run SPC on a regular basis may result in the oscilloscope not meeting warranted performance levels at low volts per division settings.

Prerequisite: Disconnect all probes and cables from the front-panel channel inputs and rear-panel signal connectors.

1. Power on and warm up the oscilloscope for at least 20 minutes.
2. Tap **Utility > Calibration**.

3. Tap **Run SPC**. The **SPC Status** readout shows **Running** while SPC is running. SPC can take several minutes per channel to run, so wait until the SPC Status message changes to **Pass** before reconnecting probes and using the oscilloscope.



**CAUTION.** You can abort the SPC calibration by tapping **Abort SPC**. This may leave some channels uncompensated, resulting in possible inaccurate measurements. If you do abort the SPC, make sure to run the SPC procedure completely before using the instrument to take measurements.

4. Close the Calibration configuration dialog when SPC has completed.
5. If the SPC fails, write down any error message text. Make sure that all probes and cables are disconnected and run the SPC again. If the SPC still fails, contact Tektronix Customer Support.

## Compensate the TPP0500B or TPP1000 probes

Probe compensation adjusts the high frequency response of a probe for best waveform capture and measurement accuracy. The oscilloscope can automatically test and store compensation values for an unlimited number of probe/channel combinations.

The oscilloscope stores the compensation values for each probe/channel combination, and automatically recalls the compensation values when you plug in the probe. Probe compensation status is shown in the Probe Setup panel of the Channel configuration menu.

- If the Probe Compensation Status field displays **Pass**, the probe is compensated and ready for use.
- If the Probe Compensation Status field displays **Default**, the attached probe has not been compensated and needs to have this probe compensation procedure run.
- If the Probe Compensation Status field displays **Fail**, the attached probe has failed the probe compensation procedure. Reconnect the probe and run probe compensation again.
- If there is no probe compensation status field shown in the panel, the oscilloscope cannot store compensation values for that probe. See the oscilloscope Help for how to manually compensate passive probes not supported by the probe compensation function.

Use this procedure to compensate a TPP0500B, TPP1000, or other supported TPP-family probe that shows a Default status when connected to the oscilloscope.

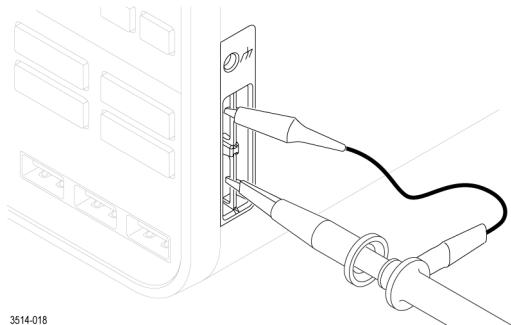
---

**NOTE.** A **Default Setup** does not delete probe compensation values. A factory calibration deletes all stored probe compensation values.

---

**Prerequisite:** The oscilloscope must be powered on for at least 20 minutes before compensating a probe.

1. Connect a supported probe to an input channel. The probes shipped with the oscilloscope support this probe compensation process.
2. Connect the probe tip and ground lead of the probe to the PROBE COMP terminals on the lower right side of the oscilloscope (near the Default Setup and Autoset front panel buttons).



Connect the probe tip to the 1 kHz source (lower connector), and the ground clip to the ground (upper connector). For best results, remove any probe tip accessories and hold the probe tip directly onto the 1 kHz connector.

**NOTE.** Connect only one probe at a time to the PROBE COMP terminals.

3. Turn off all channels.
4. Turn on the channel to which the probe is connected.
5. Push the front-panel **Autoset** button. The screen displays a square wave.
6. Double-tap the badge of the channel you want to compensate.
7. Tap the **Probe Setup** panel.

If the Probe Compensation Status says **Pass**, the probe is already compensated for this channel. You can move the probe to another channel and start again from step 1, or connect a different probe to this channel and start from step 1.

If the Probe Compensation Status says **Default**, continue with this procedure.

8. Tap **Compensate Probe** to open the **Probe Compensation** dialog.
9. Tap **Compensate Probe** to run the probe compensation.
10. The probe compensation is finished when the Probe Compensation Status displays **Pass**. Disconnect the probe tip and ground from the PROBE COMP terminals.
11. Repeat these steps for each supported passive probe that you want to compensate for this channel.
12. Repeat these steps to compensate supported probes on other channels of the oscilloscope.

**NOTE.** For most accurate measurements, open the **Probe Setup** panel and verify the Probe Compensation Status is **Pass** whenever you attach a probe to a channel.

## Compensate passive probes

Probe compensation adjusts the high frequency response of a probe for best waveform capture and measurement accuracy. Use this procedure to adjust probe compensation for probes with a manual adjustment.

A passive probe is only adjusted for one channel at a time. If you move a passive probe to another channel, you must compensate that probe to that channel.

1. Connect the probe to the channel where you want to use it to take measurements. Remove all other probes.
2. Turn on the channel to which the probe is connected. Turn off all other channels.
3. Attach the probe tip and reference lead to the probe compensation connectors.
4. Push the **Autoset** button to display a square wave.
5. Adjust the vertical **Scale** and **Position** knobs to display as large a waveform as possible.
6. Use the adjustment tool provided with the probe to adjust the probe until the square wave has as flat a top as possible. See your probe manual for adjustment location and instructions.



## Connect to a network (LAN)

Connecting to a network allows you to remotely access the instrument.

Work with your network administrator to obtain the required information to connect to your network (IP address, Gateway IP address, Subnet Mask, DNS IP address, and so on).

1. Connect a CAT5 cable from the oscilloscope LAN connector to your network.
2. Select **Utility > I/O** on the menu bar to open the I/O configuration menu.
3. Obtain or enter the network address information:
  - If your network is DHCP-enabled, tap **Auto** to obtain the IP address information from the network. DHCP mode is the default mode.
  - If your network is not DHCP-enabled, or you need a permanent (non-changing) IP address for this instrument, tap **Manual** and enter the IP address and other values provided by your IT or system administrator resource.
4. Tap **Test Connection** to verify that the connections is working. The LAN Status icon turns green when the instrument successfully connects to your network. If you have problems connecting to your network, contact your system administration resource for help.

## Connect the oscilloscope to a PC using a USB cable

Use a USB cable to connect the oscilloscope directly to a PC for remote instrument control.

1. On the oscilloscope, select **Utility > I/O** from the menu bar.
2. Tap **USB Device Port Settings**.
3. Confirm that the USB Device Port control is **On** (default setting).
4. Connect a USB cable from the PC to the **USB Device** port on the rear of the instrument.
5. If using the USB connection to remotely control the oscilloscope using GPIB commands, set the **GPIB Talk/Listen Address** for your configuration (0 - 30).

## Remote access from a Web browser

You can remotely control your oscilloscope from a browser. Enter the IP address into your Web browser to display the oscilloscope screen and use a mouse to access all screen-based controls and items on the oscilloscope.

Prerequisites:

- The IP address of the oscilloscope that you want to access. To determine an oscilloscope's IP address, select **Utility > IO** in the oscilloscope menu bar and view the network settings in the **LAN** panel.
  - The oscilloscope must be connected to, and accessible from, the network to which the PC is connected. See [Connect to a network \(LAN\)](#) on page 45
1. Open a Web browser on a PC connected to the same network as the oscilloscope.
  2. Enter just the oscilloscope IP address on the URL line of the browser and press **Enter**. For example: 135.62.88.157.  
The browser searches for and opens the Web page for the oscilloscope.
  3. Select **Instrument Control (e\*Scope®)**.  
The browser displays the instrument screen.
  4. Use a mouse to select and interact with the oscilloscope controls shown in the Web browser.

## Deskew analog input channels - quick visual method

Use the following procedure to visually align waveform edges to compensate for timing differences between probes.

Critical timing measurements on multiple channels require that all probes be adjusted, or deskewed, to compensate for signal timing differences between probes. This procedure uses displayed waveform edges to quickly minimize deskew between probes.

**NOTE.** Once probes have been deskewed for a particular channel, you should only use the probes on the channels for which they were deskewed, when taking critical timing measurements.

1. Connect all probes that you want to deskew.
2. Connect all probe tips and ground leads to the Probe Compensation connector (maximum of four channels at a time).
3. Turn on all the channels that you want to deskew.
4. Double-tap in the Waveform view and set **Waveform Mode** to **Overlay**.
5. Push the **Autoset** button.
6. Adjust the vertical **Scale** and **Position** controls for each channel so that the signals overlap and are centered on the display.
7. Adjust the horizontal **Scale** so that the differences in the channel delays are clearly visible.
8. Determine the channel you want to use as your reference.
9. Double-tap the Channel badge of a channel other than the reference channel and tap the **Other** panel.
10. Tap the **Deskew** field and use the multipurpose knob to align this channel with the reference channel waveform such that the waveforms cross the trigger point at the same time. For fine adjust, double-tap the Deskew field to open a number pad.
11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 for each additional channel you want to deskew.

## Deskew analog input channels - measurement method

Use the following procedure to more accurately minimize timing differences between probes.

Critical timing measurements on multiple channels require that all probes be adjusted, or deskewed, to compensate for signal timing differences between probes. This procedure uses a Delay measurement to adjust a probe's deskew setting.

**NOTE.** Once probes have been deskewed for a particular channel, you should only use the probes on the channels for which they were deskewed, when taking critical timing measurements.

1. Connect all probes that you want to deskew.
2. Connect all probe tips and ground leads to the Probe Compensation connector (maximum of four channels at a time).
3. Turn on all the channels that you want to deskew.
4. Push the **Autoset** button.
5. Change the vertical Scale of all active channels to **500mV/div** and adjust the vertical Position so that the waveforms are centered in their respective slices.
6. Determine the channel you want to use as your reference.
7. Tap the **Add New...Measure** button and tap the **Timing Measurements** panel.
8. Select the **Delay** measurement and set your chosen reference channel as **Source 1** and your channel being deskewed as **Source 2**, then tap the **Add** button.
9. Double-tap the Channel badge of the channel being deskewed (Source 2)and tap the **Other** panel
10. Tap the **Deskew** field and use the multipurpose knob to align this channel with the reference waveform such that the measured delay between channels becomes a minimum. For fine adjust, double-tap the Deskew field to open a number pad.
11. Double-tap the **Delay** measurement badge and set the Source 2 channel to the next channel to deskew.
12. Repeat steps 9 through 11 for each additional channel you want to deskew.

## Connect a keyboard or mouse

The instrument supports most standard USB-connected keyboards and mice, and wireless-connected keyboards and mice (using a USB-connected dongle).

Connect a keyboard and/or mouse by connecting their USB cable, or USB dongle, into any available USB Host port. The keyboard or mouse should work immediately. If it does not, try the following:

1. Remove and reinsert the USB cable or dongle in the same port.
2. Insert the USB cable or dongle into a different USB port.

## Connect an external monitor or projector

Use the video outputs to send the instrument display to a projector or to a flat-panel LCD monitor.

1. Power on the oscilloscope.
2. Connect the appropriate video cable to the projector or monitor. Connect the other end to the correct DVI, Display Port, or VGA connector on the oscilloscope.
3. Power on the projector or monitor.
4. Follow the projector or monitor instructions to set up and adjust the image.

## Prevent ESD Guidelines

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage oscilloscope and some probe inputs. This topic discusses how to avoid this type of damage.

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a concern when handling any electronic equipment. The instrument is designed with robust ESD protection, however it is still possible that large discharges of static electricity directly into the signal input may damage the instrument. Use the following techniques to prevent electrostatic discharge from damaging the instrument.

- Discharge the static voltage from your body by wearing a grounded antistatic wrist strap while connecting and disconnecting cables, probes, and TekConnect adapters. The instrument provides a front panel connection to attach a wrist strap.
- A cable that is left unconnected on a bench can develop a large static charge. Discharge the static voltage from all cables before connecting them to the instrument or device under test by momentarily grounding the center conductor of the cable, or by connecting a  $50\ \Omega$  termination to one end, before attaching the cable to the instrument.
- Before you apply power, connect the instrument to an electrically-neutral reference point, such as earth ground. To do this, plug the three-pronged power cord into an outlet grounded to earth ground. Grounding the oscilloscope is necessary to ensure safety and to take accurate measurements.
- If you are working with static sensitive components, ground yourself. Static electricity that builds up on your body can damage static-sensitive components. Wear a wrist strap to safely send static charges on your body to earth ground.
- The oscilloscope must share the same ground as any circuits that you plan to test.

# Analog channel operating basics

## Acquiring a signal

After acquiring a signal you can take measurements and plot the results.

Use the following procedure to set the scale and position parameters for analog signal acquisition.

1. Press the Default Setup button.
2. Connect the probe output to the desired oscilloscope channel, and connect the probe input to the input signal source using proper probing/connecting techniques. Click [here](#) for details on setting up the Vertical input controls.

---

**NOTE.** Some probes automatically set their termination and other values.

---

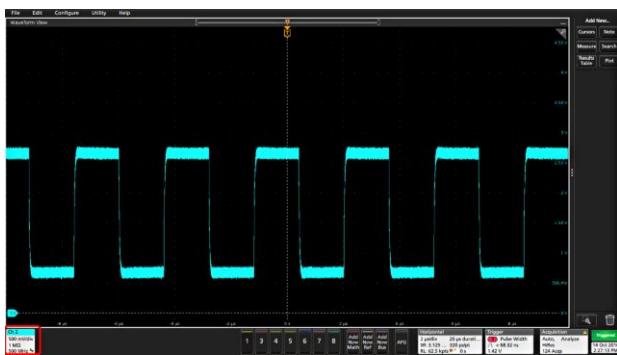
3. Tap the channel button to add the channel waveform to the waveform view and add a channel badge to the setting bar. A channel button lights when its channel is on.
4. Double-tap the channel badge to open the channel Vertical Settings menu. To change the input coupling, select the appropriate coupling button.
  - Select DC to couple both the AC and DC components of an input signal.
  - Select AC to couple only the AC components of an input signal.
5. Use the Vertical knobs to scale and position the waveform vertically on the screen. The Knobs should be highlighted with the active channels color. Dragging the waveform handle also positions the waveform.
6. Use the Vertical Settings menu to change the offset. Tap Offset, and then use a multipurpose knob to adjust the offset.
7. Use the Horizontal knobs to scale and position the waveform horizontally on the screen and to set the record length. Dragging the reference icon also positions the waveform.
8. Use the Horizontal menu to set the record length and sample rate (when in Manual mode).
9. You may attempt to stabilize the display by pressing the trigger Level control to set the trigger level to 50%. The 50% level is calculated as the midpoint between the highest and lowest samples of the acquired waveform. If your signal is periodic you should see a stable, triggered signal. This method will not work as well with random signals.

## Quickly display a waveform (Autoset)

The Autoset function analyzes the signal characteristics and changes the instrument Horizontal, Vertical, and Trigger settings to automatically display a triggered waveform. You can then make further changes to trigger and horizontal settings to view the waveform point of interest.

1. Connect the probe with the signal of interest to the lowest-numbered channel. The signal can be analog or digital.
2. Connect any other associated signal(s) to available channel input(s).

3. Add the channel waveforms to the Waveform view. [Add a channel waveform to the display](#) on page 54
4. Push the front-panel **Autoset** button. When using the Stacked Display mode, the instrument analyzes the signal characteristics of the lowest-numbered displayed channel (analog or digital) and adjusts the horizontal, vertical, and trigger settings accordingly to display a triggered waveform for that channel. Vertical scale is adjusted for all other active waveforms to maximize ADC utilization.



When using the Overlay Display mode, the instrument adjusts the horizontal and trigger settings of the lowest-numbered displayed channel to display a triggered waveform for that channel, and adjusts the vertical settings and position of all active waveforms such that they are uniformly spaced on screen.

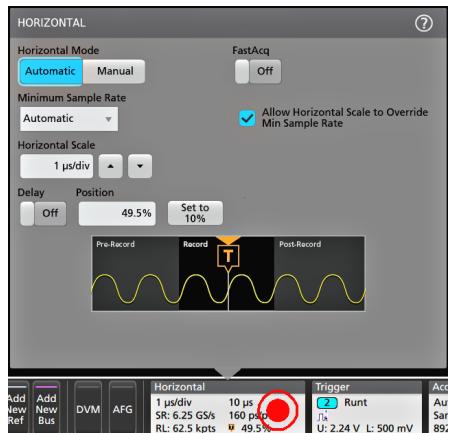
#### Autoset guidelines:

- Autoset displays two or three cycles (depending on the detected signal) with the trigger level near the midlevel of the signal.
- The trigger is set to type Edge, rising slope, DC coupling.
- If no channels are displayed before pushing **Autoset**, the oscilloscope adds Ch 1 to the view whether it has a signal or not.
- For digital signals, the oscilloscope analyzes and triggers on the lowest (LSB) digital channel with an active signal.
- Autoset ignores math, reference, and bus waveforms.
- A channel or waveform with a frequency less than 40 Hz is classified as no signal.

## Set Horizontal parameters

Use this procedure to set the horizontal time base parameters such as mode, minimum sample rate, horizontal scale, delay, and trigger delay time (relative to the center of the waveform record).

1. Double-tap the **Horizontal** badge on the Settings bar to open the Horizontal configuration menu.

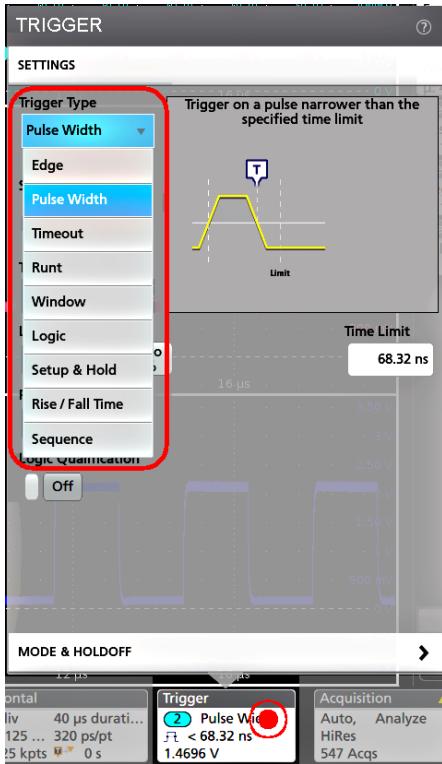


2. Use the menu selections to set horizontal parameters.
3. Tap the Help icon on the menu title for more information on these settings.

## How to trigger on a signal

Use this procedure to open the Trigger menu to select and configure the trigger event type and conditions.

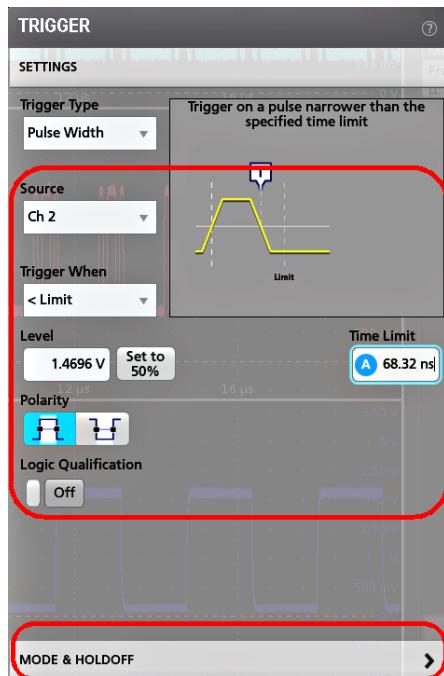
1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar to open the Trigger configuration menu.
2. Select a trigger from the **Trigger Type** list. The trigger type sets what fields are available in the menu and also updates the illustration to show a graphic of the trigger type.



**NOTE.** To trigger on a bus, you must first add the bus to the Waveform view. See [Add a math, reference, or bus waveform on page 59](#)

**NOTE.** Triggering on buses other than Parallel requires purchasing and installing serial trigger and analysis options. See the Tektronix Web site for available serial trigger and analysis options.

3. Select the other fields and panels to refine the trigger conditions. The menu fields and trigger graphic update as you make changes to the trigger settings. Displayed fields depend on the selected trigger type. Selection changes take effect immediately.

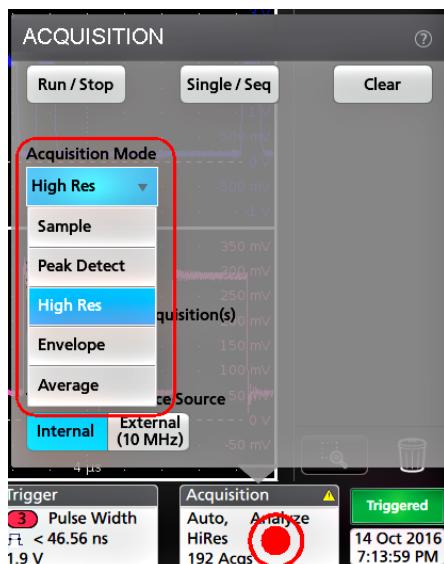


4. Tap the Help icon on the menu title for more information on these settings.
5. Tap outside the menu to close the menu.

## Set the acquisition mode

Use this procedure to set the method the instrument uses to acquire and display the signal.

1. Double-tap the **Acquisition** badge on the Settings bar to open the Acquisition configuration menu.
2. Select the acquisition method from the **Acquisition Mode** list. Set any other parameters associated with the selected acquisition type.



3. Tap the Help icon on the menu title for more information on these settings.
4. Tap outside the menu to close the menu.

## Start and stop an acquisition

Acquisition controls the start and stop of waveform acquisition.

1. To start an acquisition, double-tap the Acquisition badge and tap **Run/Stop** in the Acquisition configuration menu. You can also push the **Run/Stop** button on the front panel.



2. To stop an acquisition, tap **Run/Stop** again or push the **Run/Stop** button.
3. To take a single acquisition, double-tap the Acquisition badge and tap **Single/Seq** in the Acquisition configuration menu, or push the **Single/Seq** button on the front panel.
4. The color of the **Run/Stop** and **Single/Seq** buttons on the front panel indicate the acquisition status (green = acquiring, red = stopped). The Trigger
5. To clear the current acquisition data from waveform memory, double-tap the Acquisition badge and tap **Clear** in the Acquisition configuration menu, or push the **Clear** button on the front panel.

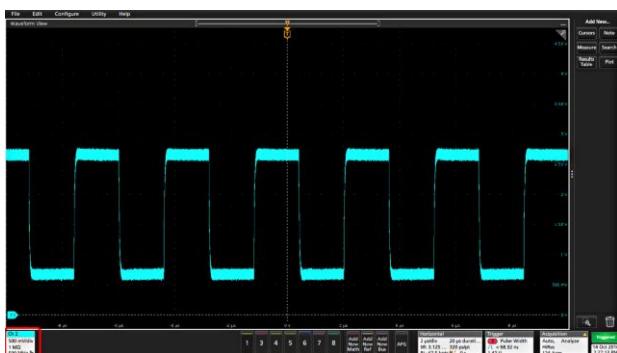
## Add a channel waveform to the display

Use this procedure to add a channel signal to the Waveform View.

1. Connect signal(s) to the channel input(s).
2. Tap an Inactive Channel button (in the Settings bar) of a connected channel.



The selected channel is added to the Waveform View and a Channel badge is added to the Settings bar.



3. Continue tapping Inactive Channel buttons to add more channels (digital or analog). Channels are displayed from lowest-numbered channel at the top, to highest-numbered channel at the bottom of the view, regardless of the order they were added (in stacked mode).



4. Double-tap a channel badge to open that channel's configuration menu to check or change settings. See [Configure channel and waveform settings](#) on page 55.

## Configure channel and waveform settings

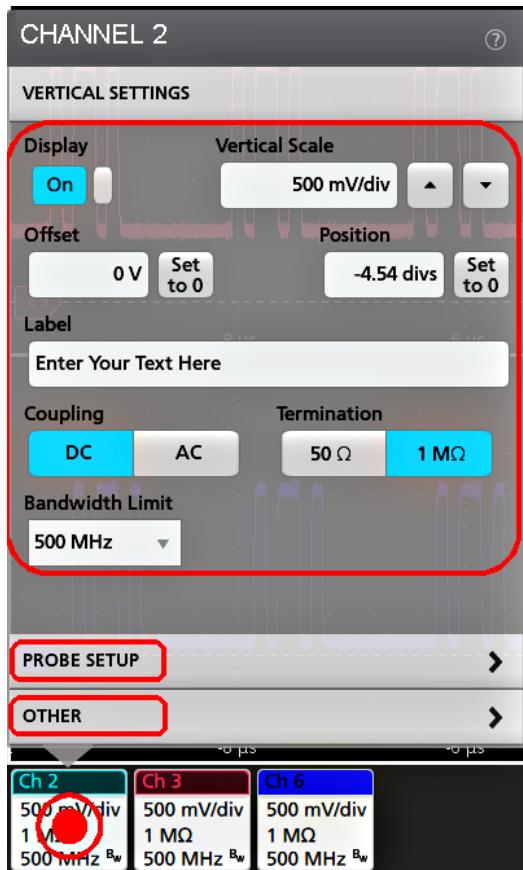
Use the channel and waveform configuration menus to set parameters such as vertical scale and offset, coupling, bandwidth, probe settings, deskew values, external attenuation values, and other settings.

Use this procedure to set up analog signal input.

**Prerequisites:**

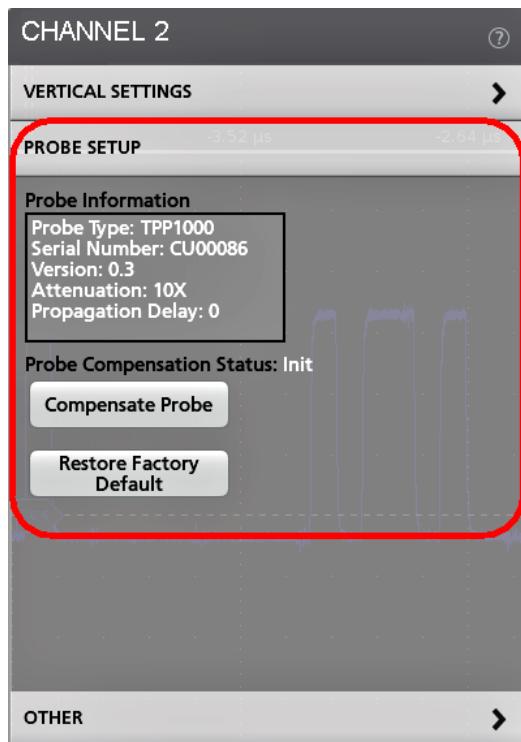
- An analog probe or cable is connected to the channel before setting up the channel.
- There is a channel or waveform badge in the Settings bar.

- Double-tap a **Channel** or **Waveform** badge to open the configuration menu to the Vertical Settings panel. Displayed fields and controls can change depending on menu selections.



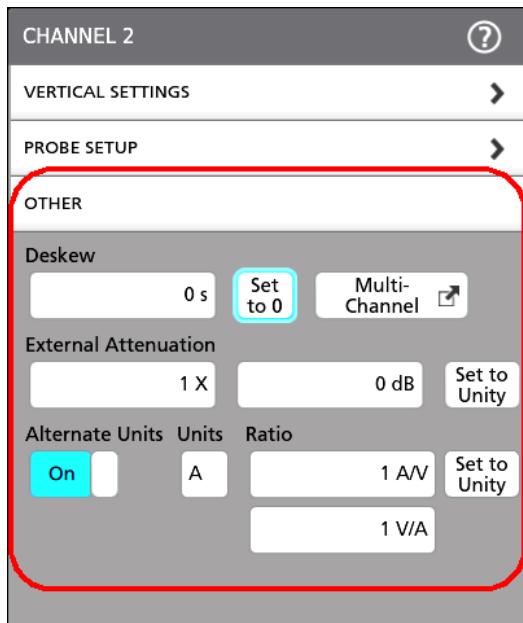
Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Toggles display of the source waveform on or off.
<b>Vertical Scale</b>	Adjusts the vertical scale: Double-click the <b>Scale</b> control and use the virtual keypad to make the adjustment.
<b>Offset</b>	Adjusts the vertical offset: Double-click the <b>Offset</b> control and use the virtual keypad to make the adjustment.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical offset to 0.
<b>Position</b>	Adjusts the vertical position: Double-click the <b>Position</b> control and use the virtual keypad to make the adjustment.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the source waveform.
<b>Coupling</b>	Sets the coupling for the channel. If the termination is 50 Ω, only DC coupling is available.
<b>Termination</b>	Sets the termination for the channel. If DC coupling is selected and the attached probe supports it, 1 MΩ and 50 Ω options are available. Some probes automatically set the required termination.
<b>Bandwidth Limit</b>	Sets the bandwidth limit of the channel.

- To set up your probe, tap the **PROBE SETUP** panel. The fields and controls in the Probe Setup panel vary with the type of probe connected to the channel. A TPP probe is shown in this example, for other probes, see the probe user documentation.



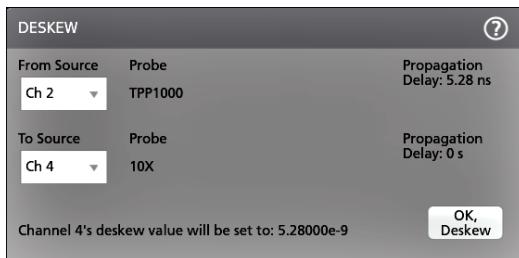
Field or control	Description
Probe Information	Displays the probe type, serial number, and attenuation, if it is available.
Probe Compensation Status	Displays the compensation status of the attached probe.
Compensate Probe	Starts the probe compensation procedure.
Restore Factory Default	Returns the compensation to the factory default settings.

3. To set up deskew, external attenuation, or alternate units, tap the **OTHER** setup panel.



Field or control	Description
<b>Deskew</b>	Allows setting the channel deskew value.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the channel deskew to 0.
<b>Multi-Channel</b>	Brings up the Deskew configuration menu.
<b>External Attenuation</b>	Allows setting an external attenuation for the channel. As one field is edited, the other field changes to reflect the corresponding value.
<b>Set to Unity</b>	Sets left numeric input field to 1X and right input to 0.0 dB.
<b>Alternate Units</b>	Toggles alternate units on or off.
<b>Units</b>	Sets the ratio units. This field is disabled when the Alternate Units switch is off.
<b>Ratio</b>	Sets the desired ratio value. As one field is edited, the other field changes to reflect the corresponding value. This button is disabled when the Alternate Units switch is off.
<b>Set to Unity</b>	Sets the ratio to 1. This button is disabled when the Alternate Units switch is off.

- When **Multi-Channel** in the **Other** panel is selected, the DESKEW configuration menu is displayed.



Field or control	Description
<b>From Source</b>	Selects the From Source to Deskew.
<b>Probe</b>	Displays the probe name or a drop-down list to select the probe connected to the From Source.
<b>Propagation Delay</b>	Displays the propagation delay of the probe shown in the Probe control.
<b>To Source</b>	Selects the To Source to Deskew.
<b>Probe</b>	Displays the probe name or a drop-down list to select the probe connected to the To Source.
<b>Propagation Delay</b>	Displays the propagation delay of the probe shown in the Probe control.
<b>OK, Deskew</b>	Uses the deskew values to adjust the horizontal delay between channels

- Tap outside the menu to close the menu.

## Add a math, reference, or bus waveform

Math waveforms let you create new waveforms based on operations between two or more waveforms or by applying equations to waveform data. A reference waveform is a static waveform record displayed for comparison. Bus waveforms let you view and analyze serial or parallel data.

There is no set limit to the number of Math, Reference, or Bus waveforms you can add to the Waveform View, other than system physical memory constraints.

- Tap the **Add New Math**, **Add New Ref**, or **Add New Bus** button in the Settings bar.

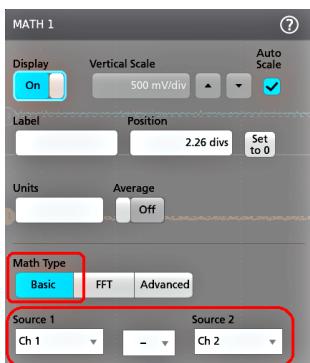


- The instrument adds the waveform to the Waveform view, adds a Waveform badge to the Settings bar, and opens a configuration menu. This example shows adding a Math waveform.



3. Use the configuration menus to refine the waveform parameters. Displayed fields depend on the waveform and selections made in the menu. Selection changes take effect immediately.

This example shows adding a Math waveform, using the Math **Source** fields to select Ch 1 and Ch 2 as the waveform sources, and set the math type to **Basic** math operation, and subtracting channel 2 from channel 1.

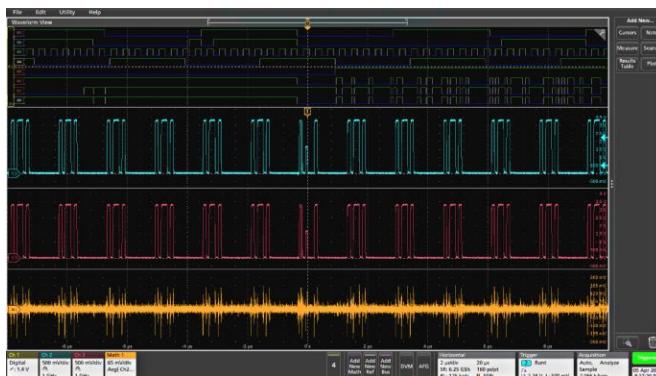


4. When adding a Reference waveform, the instrument presents a **Recall** configuration menu. Navigate to and select the reference waveform file (\*.wfm) to recall, then tap the **Recall** button. The instrument displays the Reference waveform and opens the configuration menu.
5. Double-tap a math, reference, or bus badge to check or change that waveform's settings. See [Configure channel and waveform settings](#) on page 55.
6. Tap the Help icon on a configuration menu title for more information on math, reference, and bus waveform settings.
7. Tap outside the menu to close the menu.

## Add a measurement

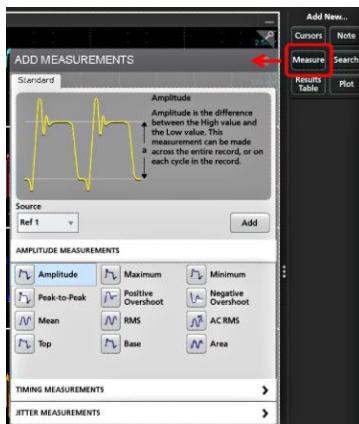
Use this procedure to select and add measurements.

- Acquire the channel(s) and/or waveform(s) on which you want to take measurements.

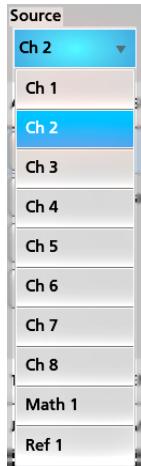


**NOTE.** Waveforms do not need to be displayed to be used for measurements, as long as the channel or waveform badge is on the Settings bar and is acquiring the signal to measure.

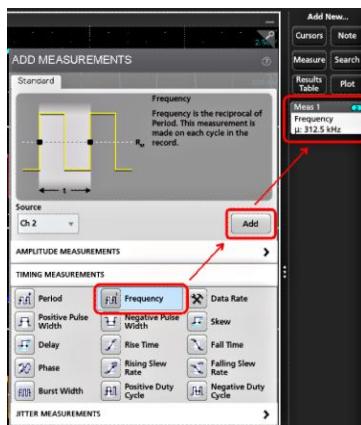
- Tap the **Add New...Measure** button to open the **Add Measurements** configuration menu.



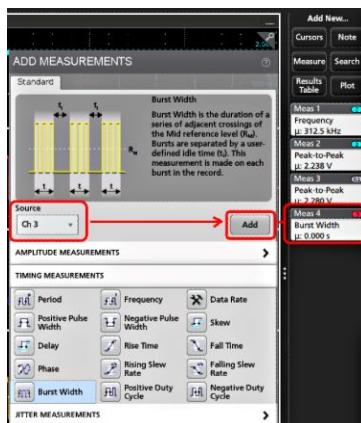
- Tap the **Source** field and select the measurement source. All available sources that are valid for the measurement are listed.



4. Select from the configuration menu panels, such as Amplitude, Timing, and Jitter, to display measurements for those categories.
5. Select a measurement and tap **Add** (or double-tap the measurement) to add the measurement to the Results bar. The measurement badge is added immediately.



6. Select and add other measurements for the current source. Tap the measurement category panels to display and select other measurements to add.
7. To add measurements for other sources, select a different source, select a measurement, and add the measurement.



8. Tap outside the **Add Measurements** menu to close the menu.
9. To further adjust a measurement's settings, double-tap a measurement badge to open a configuration menu for that measurement. See *Configure a measurement* on page 63.
10. Tap the Help icon on the menu title for more information on settings.

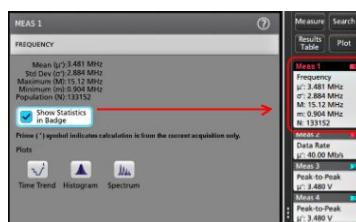
## Configure a measurement

Use this procedure to add statistical readouts to the measurement badge, display plots for the measurement, and refine measurement parameters (configuration, global versus local scope of settings, gating, filtering, and so on).

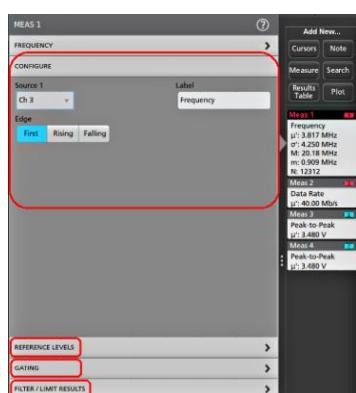
1. Double-tap a measurement badge to open its **Measurement** configuration menu.



2. Tap **Show Statistics in Badge** to add statistical readouts to the measurement badge.



3. Tap available panel titles to make changes for those categories.

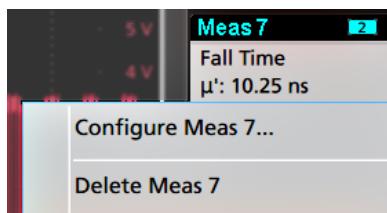


4. Use the available fields to refine the measurement conditions. Displayed fields depend on the measurement. Selection changes take effect immediately. Selection changes can also change fields in other panels.
5. Tap the Help button on the menu title for more information on this menu's settings.
6. Tap outside the menu to close the menu.

## Delete a Measurement or Search badge

Use this procedure to remove a Measurement or Search badge from the Results bar.

1. Touch and hold the Measurement or Search badge that you want to delete. The instrument opens a right-click menu.
2. Select **Delete Meas** to delete that badge from the Results bar.



3. You can also delete a Measurement or Search badge by dragging it to the **Trash Can** icon, located at the bottom of the **Results** bar. When the Trash can icon and the badge turns red, lift your finger to delete the badge. You can use the mouse to drag and delete a badge.

---

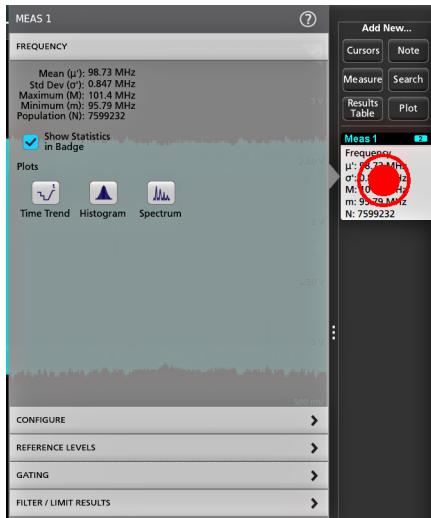
**NOTE.** You can undo a measurement delete.

---

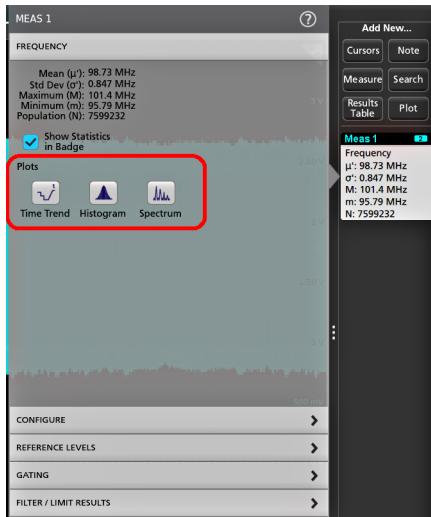
## Add a plot of a measurement

Measurement plots let you graph the distribution of waveform datapoint occurrences (histogram), plot the frequency components (spectrum) of a waveform, show the time trend of a measurement, display an eye diagram, and other supported plots depending on the measurement. Available plots depend on the measurement.

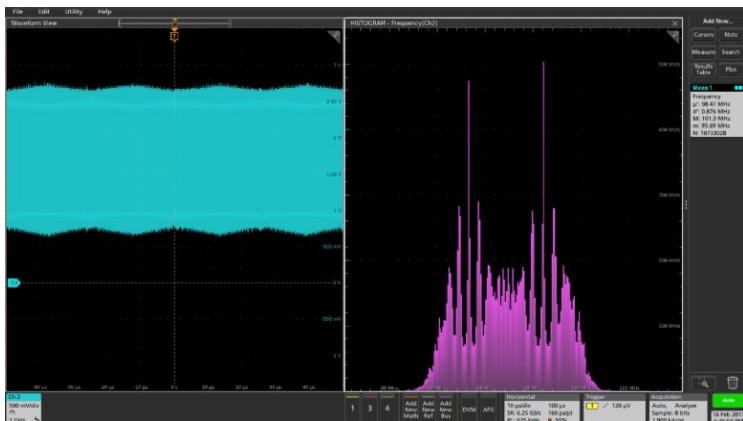
1. Double-tap a Measurement badge to open the **Meas** configuration menu.



2. Tap a **Plots** button to add that plot for the measurement to the screen.

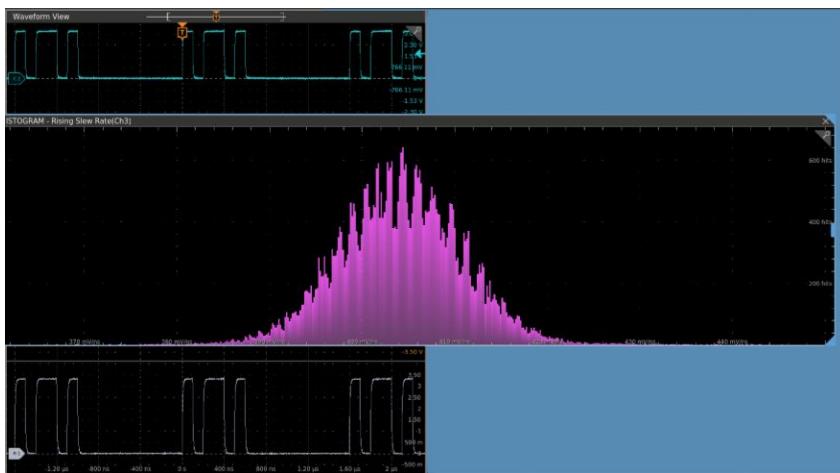


The following shows adding a Histogram plot.



You can add more than one plot to measurements (to different measurements or the same measurement). For example, you can add two histogram plots for the same measurement, set one to display the X-Axis with a Logarithmic scale, and the other plot to display the X-Axis with a Linear scale.

3. You can move plot windows by dragging the Plot view title bar to a new position. The blue background area moves to show where the plot will be located when you remove your finger from the title bar. You can also resize plot windows by selecting and dragging the Plot view border. You should use a mouse to do these operations, as it is easier to select and drag plots with a mouse.



4. Double-tap within a Plot view to open a configuration menu to set display characteristics. Tap the Help icon on the configuration menu title for more information on that menu's settings. Tap outside the menu to close the menu.

## Display a Histogram plot

Use this procedure to display a histogram plot.

To display a histogram plot you must be taking a measurement.

1. Double-tap a measurement badge.

The Measurement configuration menu is displayed.

2. Tap the **Histogram** plot button.

The Histogram plot is displayed in a separate Plot view.

3. Double-tap in the plot view to open a configuration menu for that plot.

## Display a Time Trend plot

Use this procedure to display a time trend plot.

To display a time trend plot you must be taking a measurement.

1. Double-tap a measurement badge.

The Measurement configuration menu is displayed.

2. Tap the **Time Trend** plot button.

The Time Trend plot is displayed. Time Trend plots are shown in the Waveform View rather than in a separate Plot view.

## Display a Spectrum plot

Use this procedure to display a spectrum plot.

To display a time spectrum plot you must be taking a measurement.

1. Double-tap a measurement badge.

The Measurement configuration menu is displayed.

2. Tap the **Spectrum** plot button.

The Spectrum plot is displayed in a separate Plot view.

3. Double-tap in the plot view to open a configuration menu for that plot.

## Display an XY or XYZ plot

Use this procedure to display an XY or XYZ plot.

1. Tap **Add New... Plot**.

The Plot configuration menu is displayed.

2. If creating an XY plot, tap **XY**.
3. If creating an XYZ plot, tap **XYZ**.
4. Tap the **X Source** drop down and select the X Source from the list.
5. Tap the **Y Source** drop down and select the Y Source from the list.
6. If creating an XYZ plot, tap the **Z Source** drop down and select the Z Source from the list.
7. Tap **Add**.

The plot is displayed in a separate Plot view.

8. Double-tap in the Plot view to open a configuration menu for that plot.

## Display an FFT math waveform

Use this procedure to display an FFT math waveform.

The FFT process mathematically converts the standard time-domain signal (repetitive or single-shot acquisition) into its frequency components. The FFT function processes the waveform record and displays the FFT frequency domain record, which contains the input signal frequency components from DC (0 Hz) to  $\frac{1}{2}$  the sample rate (also called the Nyquist frequency).

1. Tap **Add New Math** to create a math waveform and open the Math configuration menu.
2. Tap **Source** and select the signal source from the list.
3. Set Math Type to **FFT**.

The FFT of the waveform is displayed in an FFT Math waveform view.

4. Double-tap on the FFT waveform display to open a configuration menu to further refine the FFT display. See [Math FFT plot configuration menu \(Math waveform\)](#) on page 218.

## Add a Search

Use this procedure to set search criteria and mark a waveform where those events occur.

You can search on analog and digital signals, math waveforms, and reference waveforms. You can add searches to different waveforms and multiple searches to the same waveform. Prerequisite: Display the channel or waveform signal on which to search. The waveform must be displayed to create a search for it.

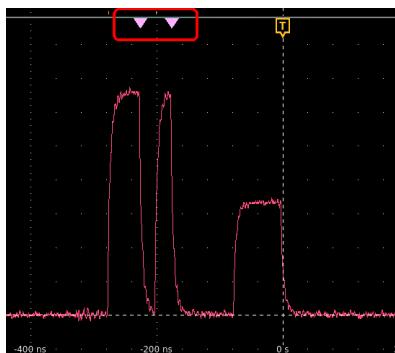
1. Display the channel or waveform signal on which to search. The waveform must be displayed to create a search for it.
2. Tap the **Add New...Search** button to open the Search configuration menu.



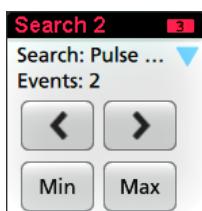
3. Use the configuration menu fields to set the search criteria in the same way that you would set for a trigger condition (select the **Search Type**, **Source**, and conditions on which to search).

**NOTE.** You cannot search for sequential events (there is no Sequence search type).

4. The searched waveform is marked with one or more triangles as soon as the search criteria becomes true. Each search uses a different color for its markers. The example image shows search criteria set to find positive pulse widths that are less than 70 ns wide.



5. To stop showing marks on a waveform, double-tap the **Search** badge and tap **Display** to **Off**.
6. To move the waveform to center marks on the display, push the **Run/Stop** front panel button to stop acquisition, single-tap a **Search** badge, and tap the < or > Navigation button.



**NOTE.** Navigation buttons are only functional when the oscilloscope acquisition mode is set to **Stop**.

This opens the **Zoom** mode and moves the waveform to the previous or next event mark on the waveform.

7. If available for a search, tap the **Min** or **Max** button to center the waveform in the display at the minimum or maximum value of the search events in the waveform record.
8. To return the instrument to normal acquisition mode, tap the **Zoom** icon in the upper right corner of the Waveform View to turn off **Zoom** mode, and push the **Run/Stop** front-panel button to set it to Run mode.

## Change waveform view settings

Use this procedure to change the waveform display mode (Stacked or Overlay), waveform trace interpolation algorithm, waveform persistence, style and intensity, and graticule style and intensity.

1. Double-tap on an open graticule area to open the **Waveform View** configuration menu.



2. Tap the buttons in the **Display Mode** to toggle between **Overlay** and **Stacked** modes.

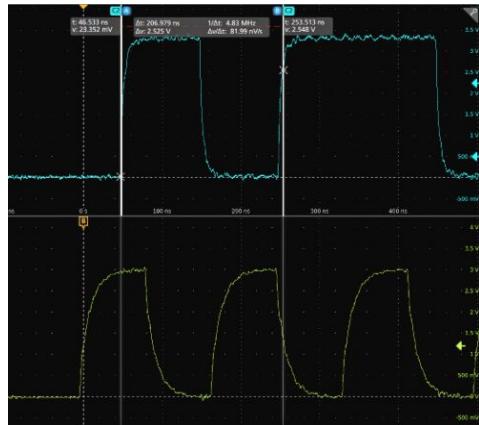


3. Use the other controls to set the waveform interpolation algorithm, waveform point persistence, style, and intensity, and graticule style and intensity.
4. Tap the **Help** icon on the menu title to open the Waveform View menu help topic for more information on the waveform view parameters.
5. Tap outside the menu to close the menu.

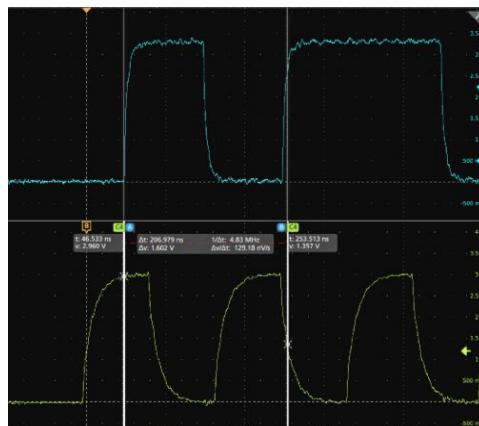
## Display and configure cursors

Cursors are on-screen lines that you can move to take measurements on specific parts of a waveform or plot, or between two different waveforms. Cursor readouts show both current position values and the difference (delta) between cursors.

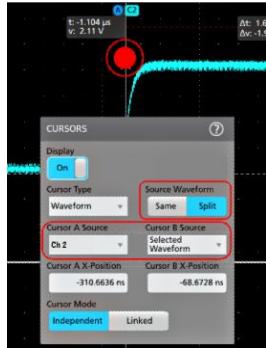
1. Tap the waveform slice (in Stacked mode), or the channel or waveform badge (in Overlay mode) to which you want to add cursors.
2. Tap the **Add New...Cursors** button, or push the front-panel **Cursors** button.  
The cursors are added to the display.



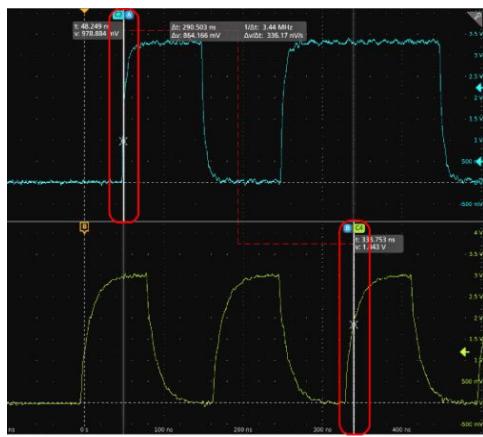
3. Use Multipurpose Knobs **A** and **B** to move the cursors, or touch and drag a cursor. Cursors show readouts that show position and difference measurements between the cursors.
4. To move the cursors to a different channel or waveform, just tap in that waveform graticule.



5. To further configure cursors, double-tap on either cursor line or the cursor readouts to open the **Cursors** configuration menu. For example, tap the Cursor type to select the cursors to display, such as Waveform, V Bars, H Bars, and V&H Bars.



- To split the cursors between two waveforms, tap the **Source** field and select **Split** and select the source for each cursor.



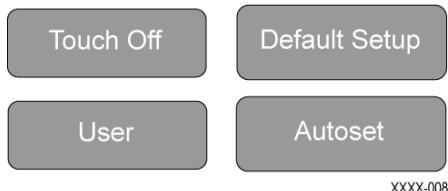
The cursors are moved to the specified waveforms.

- Tap the Help icon on the menu title for more information on the menu settings.
- To stop showing cursors, push the front panel **Cursor** button, press and hold to open the right-click menu and turn cursors off, or open the Cursors configuration menu and set Display to **Off**.

## Using Default Setup

Use Default Setup to restore instrument settings to their factory defaults.

- Press the front panel **Default Setup** button to return the instrument to its factory default settings (horizontal, vertical, scale, position, and so on).

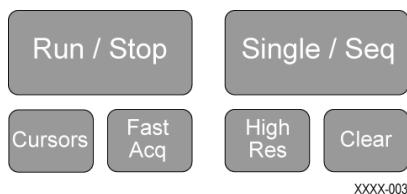


- You can also select **File > Default Setup** to restore default settings.

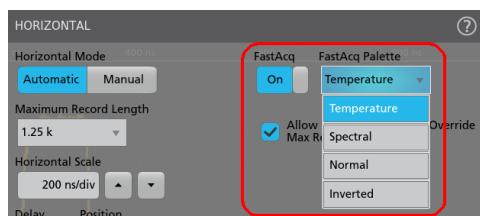
## Using Fast Acq

Fast Acq (fast acquisition mode) reduces the dead time between waveform acquisitions, enabling the capture and display of transient events such as glitches or runt pulses. Fast acquisition mode can also display waveform phenomena at an intensity that reflects their rate-of-occurrence.

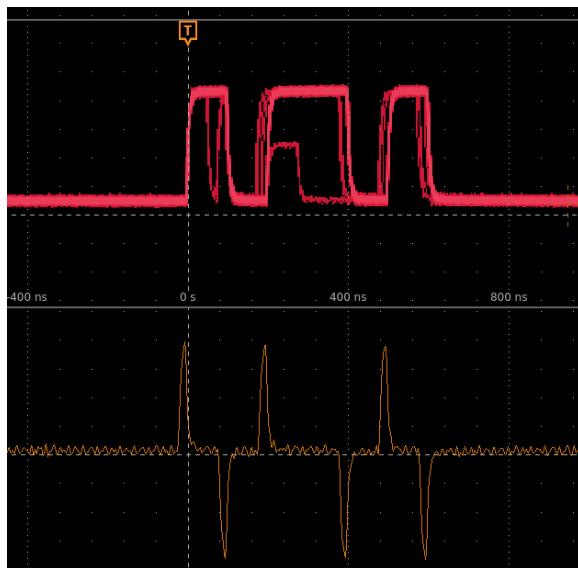
- To use Fast Acquisition mode, double-tap the **Horizontal** badge and tap **Fast Acq** to toggle Fast Acq to On. You can also push the **Fast Acq** front-panel button.



- To display waveform phenomena at an intensity that reflects their rate-of-occurrence, double-tap the Horizontal badge, tap the **Fast Acq Palette** field, and select a display palette from the drop-down.



3. View the waveform to find glitches, transients, or other random events. When you have identified an anomaly, use the advanced trigger system to capture the event of interest for further analysis.



If Fast Acquisitions mode is on and you attempt to activate a feature that conflicts with this mode, Fast Acquisitions mode will be inhibited. When the conflicting feature is turned off, in most cases, Fast Acquisitions will resume.

## Add a note to a view

Tap the **Add New... Note** button to add text labels to your waveform and plot views. Use a mouse and keyboard to more easily edit and position a note.

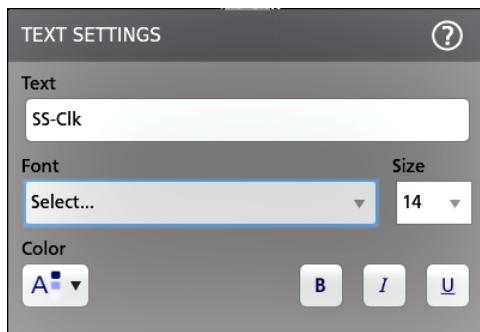
1. Tap the **Add New... Note** button. The oscilloscope adds a text placeholder object called Edit text to the Waveform view.

---

**NOTE.** The default note field wraps text at about 15 characters, and does not autowrap note text once the text is entered. If you need longer notes, resize the note field before entering text. Use a mouse to select the note and select a corner to resize the note field to a larger size.

---

2. Double-tap on the note text top open the Text Settings configuration menu.



3. Tap in the **Text** field and use a keyboard to enter the note text, or double-tap in the Text field and use the on-screen keyboard to enter the note text.

---

**NOTE.** You can enter only one row of text in the Text field of the Text Settings configuration menu (using an attached keyboard). You can enter multiple rows using the on-screen keyboard entry field.

---

4. If you used the on-screen keyboard to enter text, tap the **Enter** button on the keyboard to close the keyboard and show the note on the screen.
5. Use the other Text Settings configuration menu controls to set font type, size, color and other characteristics.
6. Tap outside the Text Settings menu to close it.
7. To move a note, touch and drag the note text to a new position.

## Delete a Note

Tap and hold on a note text to open a menu to delete that note.

1. Touch and hold on the note text you want to delete (or right-click with the mouse). The oscilloscope opens the right-click menu.
2. Select **Delete**. The note is deleted immediately.

---

**NOTE.** You can select **Edit > Undo** on the menu bar to restore the note.

---



# Acquiring digital signals

Connect a TLP058 FlexChannel digital logic probe to any oscilloscope input channel. Connect the logic probe inputs to the DUT (see the probe instructions). Then use the following topics to set up, acquire and display digital signals.

- [Connect and set up digital signals](#) on page 77
- [Add a serial bus to the Waveform view](#) on page 78
- [Add a parallel bus to the Waveform view](#) on page 80

## Connect and set up digital signals

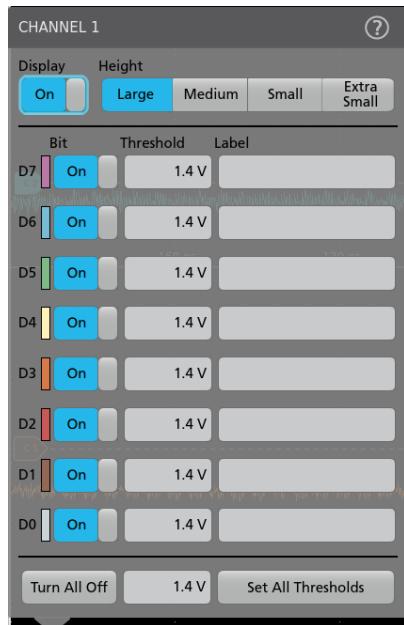
Use the digital Channel configuration menu to set up the digital channels to acquire signals.

Digital channel configuration menus are available only if a FlexChannel-supported digital logic probe is attached to the oscilloscope.



**CAUTION.** To prevent damage to the instrument always wear an antistatic wrist strap when making connections to the instrument and DUT. Always observe the maximum input voltage ratings for input connectors.

1. Connect the FlexChannel logic probe to the instrument. The digital signal waveforms are opened on the screen.
2. Connect the probe to the signal sources. Use the accessories in the Tektronix Probe accessory Kit (shipped with the probe) to connect to your DUT.
3. Push the Menu button on the logic probe to open the Channel digital configuration menu. Set up digital channels to match your digital logic requirements.



4. Tap **Display** to toggle the digital channel group On or Off. Doing this closes the menu and removes the Digital channel badge from the Settings bar.
5. To change the displayed height of the digital channels, tap a **Height** button. The Height settings are only available when the display mode is set to Overlay in the Waveform View configuration menu.
6. Tap a **Bit** control to toggle individual digital channel bits On or Off and remove them from the displayed logic waveform.
7. Tap a **Threshold** control and use multipurpose knob A to set individual channel threshold levels. You can also set the threshold by double-tapping a control and setting the threshold using the virtual keypad.
8. Use the **Label** field to enter a custom label for digital channels. Tap the field and use a keyboard to enter label text. Or double-tap on the field and use the virtual keyboard to enter label text.
9. Tap **Turn All Off** to turn all digital bits Off. Doing this closes the menu and removes the Digital channel badge from the Settings bar.
10. To set all thresholds at once, enter a threshold value in the adjacent field and tap **Set All Thresholds**.

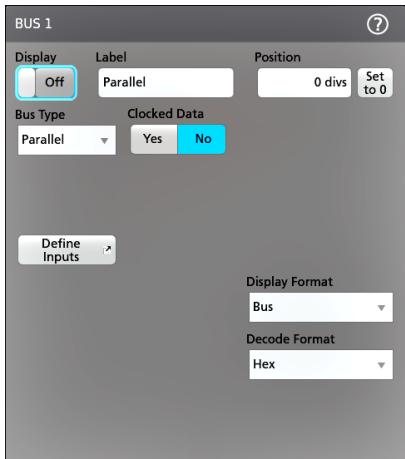
## Add a serial bus to the Waveform view

Use this procedure to add a serial bus to the Waveform view screen.

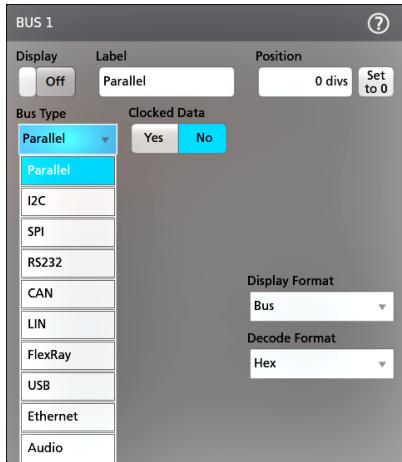
This instrument supports the following buses: Parallel, SPI, I2C, USB, RS232, CAN, LIN, FlexRay, Ethernet, and Audio. All serial bus functions are options that must be purchased and installed before they are available in the menu.

Use a Bus configuration menu to define a bus from which to acquire, decode, and display data. You can set up serial buses for the SPI, I2C, USB, RS232, CAN, LIN, FlexRay, Ethernet, and Audio serial data standards. You can also set up clocked or unclocked parallel buses.

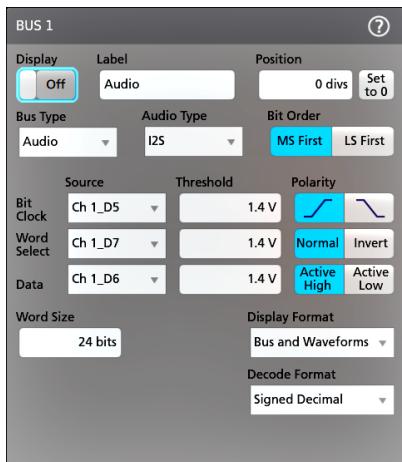
1. Tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar to add a Badge bus to the Settings bar, add a bus waveform to the screen, and open the Bus configuration menu. The default bus type is parallel.



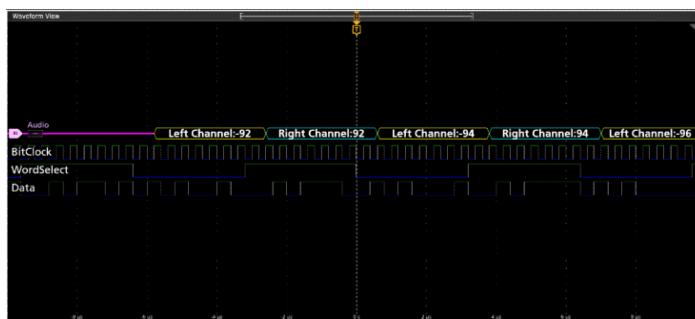
2. Tap **Bus Type** and select the bus type from the drop-down list.



3. Use the fields and controls to select the signal sources, thresholds, other parameters, and the output format. The following example shows the settings for an Audio I<sup>2</sup>C serial bus.

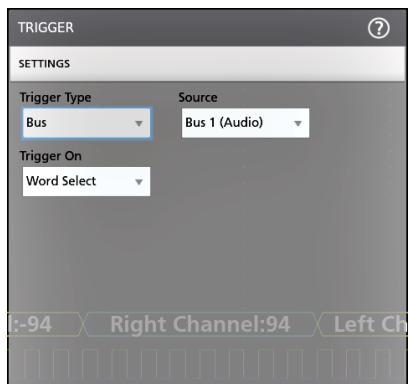


The decoded bus is updated on the screen as you make changes to the settings.



4. Tap outside of the Bus configuration menu to close it.

- Double-tap the **Trigger** badge and use the Trigger configuration menu to trigger on a specific condition in the bus.



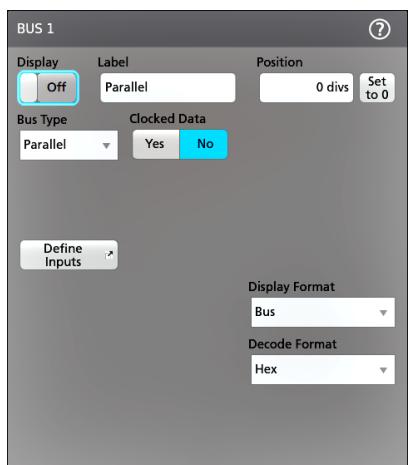
- For more information on serial bus settings, tap the Help button on the Bus configuration menu.

## Add a parallel bus to the Waveform view

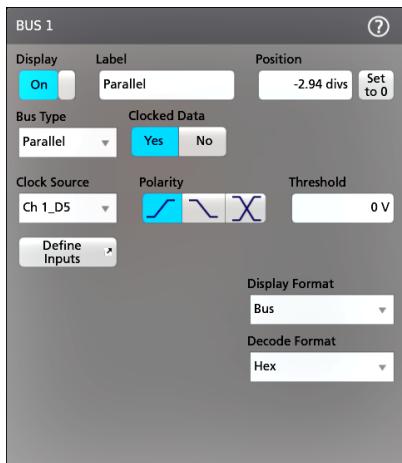
Use this procedure to add a parallel bus to the Waveform view.

When you acquire data from a Parallel bus, you can set up the bus to be clocked or unclocked. If the bus is not clocked, the instrument acquires all data from the parallel bus at the sample rate of the instrument.

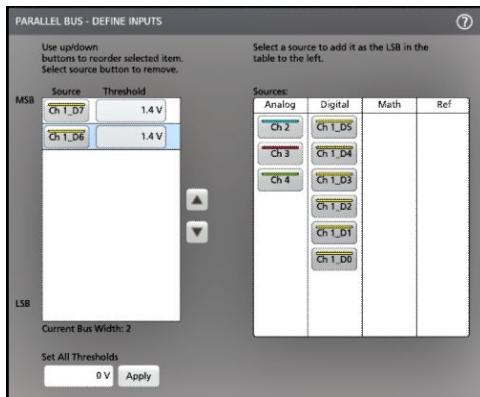
- Tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. This adds a Bus badge bus to the Settings bar, adds a bus waveform to the screen, and opens the Bus configuration menu. The default bus type is parallel.



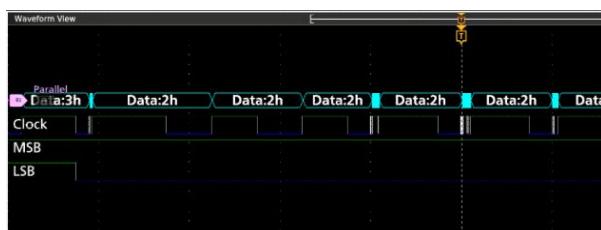
- If setting up a clocked bus:



- a. Set Clocked Data to **Yes**.
- b. Tap the **Clock Source** field and select the source for the parallel bus clock signal.
- c. Tap the **Polarity** and **Threshold** controls and set the clock signal transition to detect and threshold level, respectively.
3. Tap **Define Inputs** and select the signal sources for the parallel bus. Signal sources can be analog, digital, math, or reference. Tap a signal in the Sources list to add it to the bus list on the left.



The bus waveform updates as you make changes on the configuration menu. Tap the + symbol next to the waveform handle to turn on and off showing the signals associated with the bus waveform.



4. Use the rest of the fields and controls in the configuration menu to set up the parallel bus parameters(label, position, display and decode formats).

5. Tap outside of the Bus configuration menu to close it.
6. To get a stable triggered waveform, double-tap the **Trigger** badge, set the Trigger Type to **Bus**, select the bus Source to the parallel bus you just set up, and enter the data condition on which to trigger in the **Data** field.
7. For information on parallel bus menu settings, tap the Help button on the Bus configuration menu.

# Advanced triggering

You can check the advanced trigger status in the trigger menu. The menu indicates the trigger type and then shows sources, levels, or any other parameters that are important for the particular trigger type. Use the following links for more information on advanced triggering.

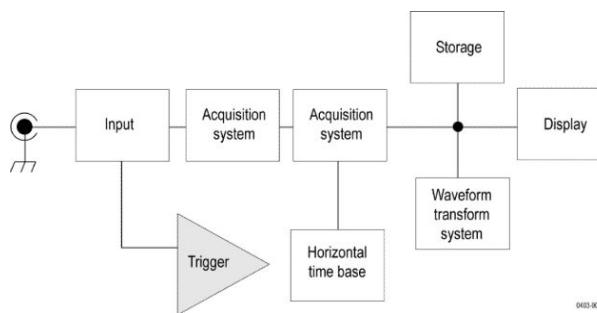
- [Triggering concepts](#) on page 83
- [Set Trigger Holdoff](#) on page 85
- [Trigger on sequential events \(A and B triggers\)](#) on page 85
- [Set up trigger on a parallel bus](#) on page 86
- [Set up trigger on a serial bus](#) on page 86

## Triggering concepts

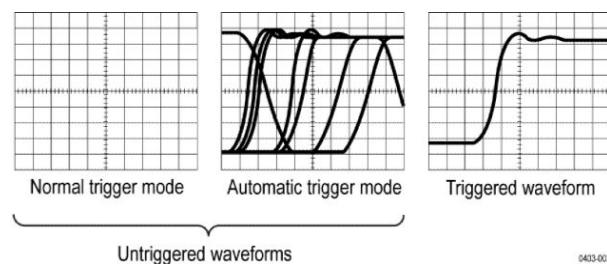
### Overview

User selected trigger conditions are used to capture waveforms for measurement and analysis.

The next figure shows how triggers fit into the overall instrument operation.



Triggers help you capture meaningful waveforms to display on screen. This instrument has simple edge triggers as well as a variety of advanced triggers.



## The trigger event

The trigger event establishes the time-zero point in the waveform record. All waveform record data are located in time with respect to that point. The instrument continuously acquires and retains enough sample points to fill the pretrigger portion of the waveform record (that part of the waveform that is displayed before, or to the left of, the triggering event on screen).

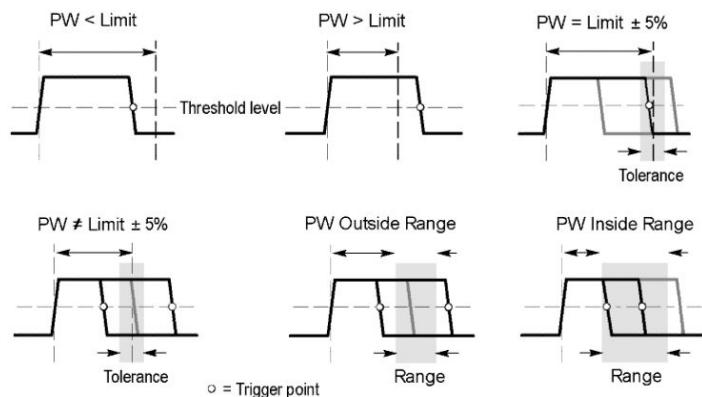
When a trigger event occurs, the instrument starts acquiring samples to build the posttrigger portion of the waveform record (displayed after, or to the right of, the trigger event). Once a trigger is recognized, the instrument will not accept another trigger until the acquisition is complete and the holdoff time has expired.

## Trigger on a pulse width event

Pulse-width triggering triggers the oscilloscope when a signal pulse width is less than, greater than, equal to, or not equal to a specified pulse width. This trigger is useful for digital logic troubleshooting.

To set a pulse width trigger:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge to open the Trigger configuration menu.
2. Tap **Trigger Type** and select **Pulse Width**.
3. Tap **Source** and select the trigger source.
4. Tap **Trigger When** and select the pulse width condition on which to trigger (**> Limit**, **< Limit**, **= Limit**, **≠ Limit**, **Outside Range**, **Inside Range**).

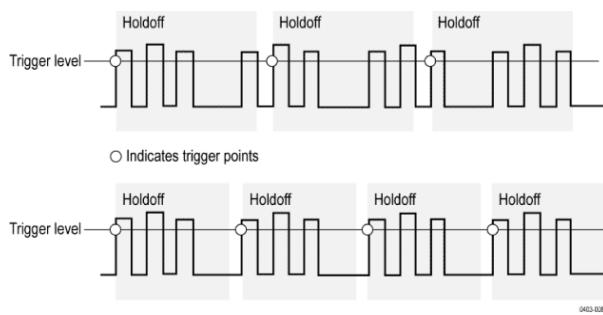


5. Set the pulse width time constraints:
  - a. For all trigger when conditions except Outside Range or Inside Range, tap the **Time Limit** field and use the assigned multipurpose knob to set the pulse width time condition to meet.
  - b. For Outside Range or Inside Range conditions, tap the **High Time Limit** and **Low Time Limit** fields and use the assigned multipurpose knobs to set the pulse width time range condition to meet.
6. Tap the **Level** field and set the threshold value at which you want to measure pulse width.
7. Select the pulse polarity on which to trigger.
8. To further refine the trigger conditions, set Logic Qualification to On and tap the **Define inputs** button to define the logic condition of any other signals that must be true at the same time as the pulse width trigger event is true.

## Set Trigger Holdoff

Trigger Holdoff sets the time, after triggering on an event, that the instrument waits before detecting the same trigger event to start the next acquisition.

Setting the correct holdoff time is important to get a stable trigger. The longer holdoff time for the top waveform causes unstable triggering. The shorter holdoff set for the bottom waveform only triggers on the first pulse in the burst to remedy the unstable trigger.



Prerequisite: You have set up a trigger event for a signal.

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar to open the Trigger configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Mode & Holdoff** panel.
3. To set a specific holdoff time, tap **Time**, then tap **Holdoff Time** and use the assigned multipurpose knob to specify a holdoff time. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a holdoff time.
4. To delay the trigger a random amount of time between triggers, tap **Random**.

## Trigger on sequential events (A and B triggers)

Use the A and B Trigger Events to trigger on a second event after a first event occurs.

### Set up sequential triggering

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge to open the Trigger configuration menu.
2. Tap **Trigger Type** and select **Sequence**.
3. Set up the A Trigger Event:
  - a. Tap the **A Trigger Event** button to open the A Trigger Event menu.
  - b. Tap **Trigger Type** and select a trigger type from the drop-down list. This example uses Edge.
  - c. Tap **Source** and select the A event trigger source.
  - d. If displayed, tap **Coupling** and select the trigger coupling.
  - e. Tap **Level** and set the desired trigger level using the multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field to set the value using the virtual keypad.
  - f. Tap a **Slope** button to select the slope of the signal on which to trigger (Rise, Fall, Either).
  - g. Tap anywhere outside the A Trigger Event menu to close it.
4. Set up the B Trigger Event:
  - a. Tap the **B Trigger Event** button in the main Trigger configuration menu to open the B Trigger Event menu.

- b. Tap **Trigger Type** and select a trigger type. This example uses Runt.
  - c. Tap **Source** and select a trigger source.
  - d. Tap **Trigger When** and select the condition on when to trigger on a runt signal.
  - e. Tap a **Polarity** icon to set the runt pulse polarity to detect (positive, negative, or either).
  - f. Tap the **Upper Threshold** and **Lower Threshold** fields and set the levels that a signal must cross to be considered a valid signal. Signals that don't cross both these thresholds are runt signals.
  - g. Tap anywhere outside the B Trigger Event menu to close it.
5. To trigger on a specific occurrence of the B trigger event:
    - a. Tap After the A Trigger Event is found: **Trigger on the Nth Trigger Event** button in the main Trigger menu.
    - b. Tap **Where N is:** and use the multipurpose knob to set the oscilloscope to trigger on the Nth occurrence of a B trigger event.
  6. To trigger on the B event after a specific time delay:
    - a. Tap After the A Trigger Event is found: **Trigger on the 1st B Event** button.
    - b. Tap **After a Delay of:** and use the multipurpose knob to set the desired delay time to wait before detecting and triggering on a B trigger event. You can also double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a delay time.

## Set up trigger on a parallel bus

Use this procedure to set up triggering on a parallel bus.

Use this procedure if you have already created a parallel bus.

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge.
2. Tap the **Trigger Type** field and select **Bus** from the list.
3. Tap the **Source** field and select the parallel bus on which to trigger.
4. Tap either the **Binary** or **Hex** Data boxes to enter the parallel bus data value, in either Binary or Hexadecimal format, on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the number of sources (channels) in the parallel bus.
  - a. Use multipurpose knob A to select the digit or digits to change.
  - b. Use multipurpose knob B to change the value of the selected digits.

## Set up trigger on a serial bus

Use this procedure to set up triggering on a serial bus.

Use this procedure if you have already created a serial bus. Serial buses require purchasing and installing serial bus options. See [Serial bus and trigger options](#) on page 9.

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Tap **Trigger Type** and select **Bus** from the list.
3. Tap **Source** and select a serial bus from the list.
4. Tap **Trigger On** and select what to trigger on from the list. The displayed fields and controls depend on the bus type and Trigger On selection. Use these fields to trigger on a specific bus condition.

# Setting waveform display parameters

Use waveform display controls to set the display mode, persistence, style, and intensity display parameters, and graticule style and intensity.

Use the following topics for more information on setting display parameters.

- [Set waveform display mode \(Stacked or Overlay\) on page 87](#)
- [Set the Waveform Interpolation mode on page 87](#)
- [Set the waveform persistence, style, and intensity on page 88](#)
- [Set the graticule style and intensity on page 88](#)

## Set waveform display mode (Stacked or Overlay)

Use this procedure to change the waveform display mode (Stacked or Overlay).

1. Double-tap on an open graticule area to open the Waveform View configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Display Mode** buttons to toggle between **Overlay** and **Stacked** modes.

In stacked display mode, each waveform is stacked vertically in separate graticule slices. This is the default display mode.

In overlay display mode, all waveforms are displayed in a single graticule (traditional waveform view).

## Set the Waveform Interpolation mode

Use this procedure to set the waveform interpolation mode, which sets how waveform data points are calculated between record data points.

1. Double-tap on an open graticule area to open the Waveform View configuration menu.
2. Tap the buttons under **Interpolation** to select either **Sin(x)/x** or **Linear**.

**Sin(x)/x** calculates record points along a curve between the actual acquired samples. This form of interpolation is useful when acquiring rounded waveforms such as sine waves. It is good for general-purpose uses but may introduce overshoot or undershoot in signals with fast rise times. This interpolation is also useful for looking at high-frequency signals, especially where the frequency components are just below the Nyquist frequency.

**Linear** calculates record points between actual acquired samples using a straight-line fit. This interpolation is useful for measuring waveforms with fast rise times, such as pulse trains.

## Set the waveform persistence, style, and intensity

Use the Waveform View configuration menu to set waveform persistence, style, and intensity.

1. Double-tap on an open graticule area to open the Waveform View menu.
2. Tap the **Persistence** field to select the persistence option.
  - **Off** disables display persistence.
  - **Auto** lets the oscilloscope automatically determine a persistence time for you.
  - **Infinite** persistence continuously accumulates record points until you change one of the acquisition display settings. Use infinite persistence for displaying unique signal anomalies, such as glitches.
  - **Variable** persistence accumulates record points for a specified time interval. Each record point decays independently according to the time interval. Use variable persistence for displaying infrequently appearing signal anomalies, such as glitches.If you select Variable persistence, tap **Variable Persistence Time** and set the time using the multipurpose knob, or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter the time value.
3. Tap the Waveform Style buttons to set waveforms to draw as vectors (continuous lines) or dots.
  - **Vectors** displays the waveform with the waveform sample values connected using the selected interpolation method.
  - **Dots** displays the individual waveform sample values with no interpolation.
4. Tap the **Waveform Intensity** field and use the multipurpose knob to set the brightness of all waveforms.

## Set the graticule style and intensity

Use this procedure to set the graticule (display grid) style and intensity.

1. Double-tap on an open graticule area to open the Waveform View configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Graticule Style** field to select a graticule style from the list.

**Grid** provides a grid, cross hairs, and frame on the instrument display.

**Time** provides a vertical grid of time marks, cross hairs, and frame on the instrument display.

**Full** shows a frame and a grid on the instrument display. This style is useful for making quick, full-screen measurements with cursors and automatic readouts when cross hairs are not needed.

**None** provides a frame without a grid and cross hairs.

3. Tap the Graticule Intensity field and use the multipurpose knob to set the brightness of all graticules.

---

**NOTE.** Changing the graticule intensity also changes the intensity of vertical scale readouts and horizontal time readouts on the screen. Graticule intensity does not change the intensity of note text on the screen.

---

# Zooming on waveforms

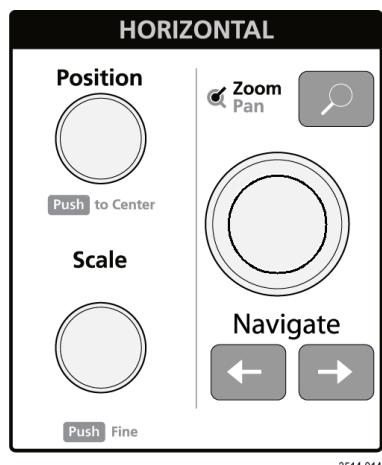
Use the zoom tools to magnify waveforms to view signal details.

## Turn on Zoom mode

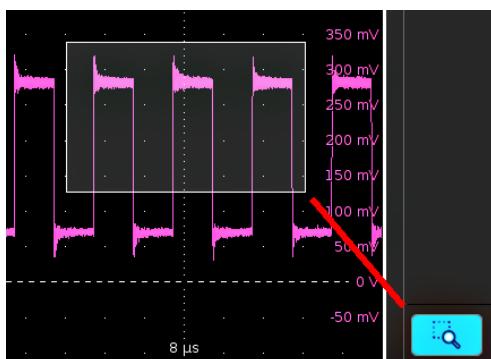
Zoom mode lets you look at a portion of your waveform in greater detail.

To enable Zoom mode, use one of the following methods:

1. Push the front-panel **Zoom** button.



2. Tap the **Draw-a-Box** button.



This feature lets you quickly draw a box around an area of interest in the Waveform or Zoom Overview on which to zoom. Drawing a box immediately puts the oscilloscope view into zoom mode. Tap the Draw-a-Box button, then touch and drag in the Waveform view to draw a box on the area of interest. You can double-tap the Draw-a-Box button to keep it enabled, so that you can draw boxes in different areas of the Zoom Overview, or draw boxes to further zoom in on a waveform in the Zoom View.

3. Tap the Zoom icon in the corner of Waveform and Plot views.



4. For more information see [The Zoom user interface elements](#) on page 38.

## Using Wave Inspector front-panel controls for zoom

Use the Wave Inspector controls to increase or decrease the area of the zoom box and to control the part of the waveform shown in the main Zoom view.

1. Push the front-panel **Zoom** button to open Zoom mode. Push the Zoom button again to exit zoom mode.
2. Turn the **Zoom** knob (center knob) to increase or decrease the horizontal area of the zoom box in the Zoom Waveform Overview, which in turn controls the amount of the waveforms shown in the main Zoom view.
3. Turn the **Pan** knob (outer knob) to move the Zoom box left or right in the Zoom Waveform Overview, which in turn controls the part of the waveform shown in the main Zoom view.
4. For information on the Zoom interface, see [The Zoom user interface elements](#) on page 38.

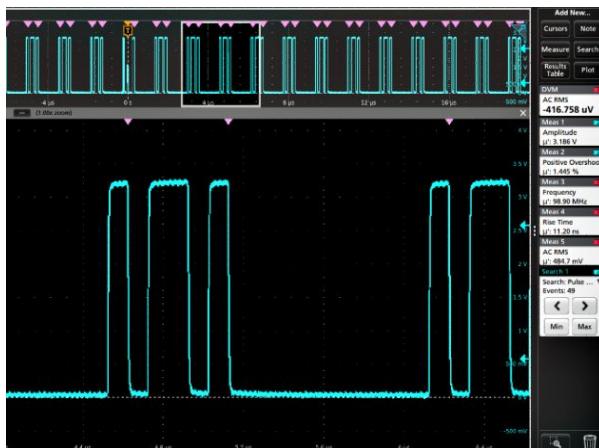
## Zoom mode and Searches

Use Zoom and Searches to find events of interest

Searches provide a way to mark a waveform event or events for reference. You can set marks automatically with search criteria such as particular edges, pulse widths, runts, logic states, rise/fall times, setup and hold, and bus data types.

When in Zoom mode, you can use the front-panel left and right arrow buttons to position the waveform to previous or next search marks on the waveform.

You can also tap a Search badge and use its navigation buttons to position the waveform to previous or next search marks.



For more information on Searches, see [Add a Search](#) on page 68.



# Customizing measurements

After creating a measurement you can customize the measurement for more precise results by using gating, setting reference levels, adding a filter, limiting the results, or adding a label.

To customize measurements, double-tap a Measurement badge in the Results bar to open the [Measurement configuration menu](#).

See the following topics for more information.

- **Label** your measurement to clarify documentation. See [Label a measurement](#) on page 93.
- **Reference levels** determine how time-related measurements are taken. See [Set measurement reference levels](#) on page 94.
- **Gating** confines the measurement to a certain portion of a waveform. See [Set measurement gates](#) on page 95.
- **Filters** control the band pass of a measurement. See [Set measurement filters](#) on page 95.
- **Limiting** the results you can specify a minimum or maximum value. See [Set measurement limits](#) on page 96.

## Label a measurement

Use this procedure to add a custom label to a measurement.

Measurement labels appear on the Measurement badge and can be added to Results tables.

Labels are set in the Measurements panel of the Measurements configuration menu. See [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145.

Prerequisite: To set measurement reference levels you must be taking a measurement. See [Add a measurement](#) on page 61.

1. Double-tap a **Measurement** badge in the Results bar to open the [Measurement configuration menu](#).
2. Tap the **Configure** panel.
3. Use one of the following methods to enter label text:
  - Tap the **Label** field and enter the label text using a keyboard and press the keyboard Enter key to add the label text to the Measurement badge.
  - Double-tap the **Label** field and enter the label text using the virtual keyboard, then tap the **Enter** button to add the label text to the Measurement badge. Tap outside the virtual keyboard to close it.

---

**NOTE.** The new label text replaces the default measurement name on the Measurement badge that shows the measurement type (Frequency, Peak-to-Peak, and so on). To view the measurement type for a relabeled measurement, double-tap the Measurement badge and look at the topmost panel name, which has the measurement name.

Custom measurement labels can be added to a Results table.

- 
4. Tap anywhere outside the Measurement menu to close it.

## Set measurement reference levels

Use this procedure to set measurement reference levels.

Reference levels are set in the Reference Levels panel of the Measurements configuration menu. See [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145.

Prerequisite: To set measurement reference levels you must be taking a measurement. See [Add a measurement](#) on page 61.

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge.

The Measurement configuration menu is displayed.

2. Tap the **Reference Levels** panel.
3. Select either Global (default) or Local:

- **Global** causes changes in this panel to be updated in all other measurements that also have Global selected in this panel.

When switching from Global to Local:

- If a specific measurement has not been set to Local before then no changes are made to any of the values. You can update the parameters.
- If a specific measurement has been set to Local before, then changed back to Global and then again switched to Local, the last used Local values are shown.
- **Local** causes changes in this panel to only effect this measurement. When switching from Local to Global, all fields will update to the current Global parameters.

4. Tap **Set Levels In** and select either **%** or **Absolute**.

- **%** sets the High, Mid, and Low reference levels as percentages of the calculated Top and Base signal levels. Tap the Levels **10% - 90%**, **20% - 80%**, or **Custom** button to select the type of percent value to set.

- **10% - 90%** sets the Low, Mid and High Ref values to 10%, 50% and 90% respectively for both rising and falling edges.

- **20% - 80%** sets the Low, Mid and High Ref values to 20%, 50% and 80% respectively for both rising and falling edges.

- **Custom** opens the Rising and Falling Edge numeric entry fields to set High, Mid and Low Ref levels to different values for the rising and falling edges of a waveform. Tap the Rising Edge and Falling Edge **High**, **Mid**, or **Low** fields and set the level using the assigned multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.

- **Absolute** sets the High, Mid, and Low reference levels to specific signal levels. Tap the Levels **Same** or **Unique** buttons to select the type of absolute value to set.

- **Same** sets the High, Mid, and Low reference for both rising and falling edges of a signal to the specified values. Tap the Threshold **High**, **Mid**, or **Low** field and set the threshold using a multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.

- **Unique** opens the Rising and Falling Edge numeric entry fields to set High, Mid and Low Ref levels to different values for the rising and falling edges of a waveform. Tap the Rising Edge and Falling Edge **High**, **Mid**, or **Low** fields and set the level using the assigned multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.

5. Tap the **Base Top Method** drop down tab and select the method from the list. This setting is only available when using the % level setting.

6. Touch **Hysteresis** and use the assigned multipurpose knob to set the value.

7. Tap anywhere outside the Measurement configuration menu to close it.

## Set measurement gates

Use this procedure to specify which portion of your waveform is used to take measurements.

Gating is set in the Gating panel of the Measurements configuration menu. See [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145.

To set measurement gates you must be taking a measurement. See [Add a measurement](#) on page 61.

1. Double-tap a measurement badge to open the Measurement configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Gating** panel.
3. Tap **Gating** and select either Global or Local gating:
  - **Global** causes changes in this panel to be updated in all other measurements that also have Global selected in this panel.

When switching from Global to Local:

  - If a specific measurement has not been set to Local before then no changes are made to any of the values. You can update the parameters.
  - If a specific measurement has been set to Local before, then changed back to Global and then again switched to Local, the last used Local values are shown.
  - **Local** causes changes in this panel to only effect this measurement. When switching from Local to Global, all fields will update to the current Global parameters.
4. Tap the **Gating Type** drop down tab and select the gating type from the list.:
  - **None** takes measurement across the entire waveform record.
  - **Screen** takes measurements on that portion of the waveform shown in the display. When Zoom is on, the display is the zoom window.
  - **Cursors** takes measurements on that portion of the waveform between the cursors. Selecting Cursors opens cursors on the measurement source. Set the cursors so that the waveform area of interest is between the cursors.
  - **Logic** takes measurements only when the logical state of a specified waveform is true. If Logic gating is selected, continue with the following steps.
    - a. Tap the **Source** field and select the source from the list.
    - b. Tap the **Threshold** field and use the assigned multipurpose knob to set the desired threshold.
    - c. Tap the **Hysteresis** field and use the assigned multipurpose knob to set the desired hysteresis.
    - d. Tap **Active** and select either the High or Low active state. High sets the gating to take measurements when the specified waveform is an active High. Low sets the gating to take measurements when the specified waveform is an active Low
5. Tap anywhere outside the Measurement configuration menu to close it.

## Set measurement filters

Use this procedure to set measurement filters.

Filters are set in the Filter/Limit Results panel of the Measurements configuration menu. See [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145.

To set measurement filters you must be taking a measurement. See [Add a measurement](#) on page 61.

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge in the Results bar to open the Measurement configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Filter/Limit Results** panel.

3. Select either Global or Local.

- **Global** causes changes in this panel to be updated in all other measurements that also have Global selected in this panel.

When switching from Global to Local:

- If a specific measurement has not been set to Local before then no changes are made to any of the values. You can update the parameters.
- If a specific measurement has been set to Local before, then changed back to Global and then again switched to Local, the last used Local values are shown.
- **Local** causes changes in this panel to only effect this measurement. When switching from Local to Global, all fields will update to the current Global parameters.

4. Tap the **High Pass Filter** field and select the type of filter from the drop down list.

If you select a filter other than None, tap the **HPF Freq (F1)** field and set the frequency using the assigned multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.

5. Tap the **Low Pass Filter** field and select the type of filter from the drop down list.

If you select a filter other than None, tap the **LPF Freq (F2)** field and set the frequency using the assigned multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.

6. Tap anywhere outside the Measurement configuration menu to close it.

## Set measurement limits

Use this procedure to set measurement limits. Measurement limits let you set boundaries to eliminate nonrelevant values from a measurement.

Measurement limits are set in the Filter/Limit Results panel of the Measurements configuration menu. See [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145.

To set measurement limits you must be taking a measurement. See [Add Measurements configuration menu overview](#) on page 105.

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge in the Results bar to open the Measurements configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Filters/Limit Results** panel.
3. Tap **Limit Measurement Results** to let you restrict displayed measurements to only those that are within a specified range.
  - Tap the **Min Value** field and set the minimum acceptable measurement value using the assigned multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.
  - Tap **Max Value** and set the maximum acceptable measurement value using the assigned multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.
4. Tap **Limit Measurement Population** to let you set the number of measurement acquisitions (population) to acquire before stopping acquisitions for this measurement.
  - Tap the **Limit** field and set the population limit using the assigned multipurpose knob. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a value.

**NOTE.** If Limit Measurement Results and Limit Measurement Population are both On, the values in the Measurement badge are for the number of measurement acquisitions set in the population Limit field that were within the Limit Measurement Results settings.

5. Tap anywhere outside the Measurement configuration menu to close it.

# Saving and recalling information

Use these procedures to save or recall waveforms, setups, or sessions.

## Save a screen image

Use this procedure to save a screen image.

1. Tap the **File** menu and select **Save As**.

The Save As configuration menu opens.

2. Tap **Screen Capture** to open the Screen Capture tab.
3. Tap **Save Location** or **Browse** to select the location to save the file.
  - a. Tap the drop down arrow in the **Save Location** field and select the location to save the file from a list of recent save locations. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keyboard to enter a path to the save location.
  - b. Tap **Browse** to open the *Browse Save As Location* configuration menu to navigate to and select a location at which to save the file.
4. **File Name** shows the name last used to save a file. The default name is Tek000. To change the file name, double-tap the file name and enter a new file name using the virtual keyboard.
5. Tap **Auto Increment File Name** to enable or disable automatic incrementing of a file name. Auto Increment File Name lets you save sequential files without needing to manually rename them each time. The count number is added to the end of the file name.
  - If Auto Increment File Name is enabled the **Count** defaults to 000 if there are no files at the specified location and file name that already use incremented file names. If there are files at the save location that already use the specified file name, and have already been saved using count increments, the Count field shows the next count value that will be added to the file name when the file is saved.
  - To change the starting count value, tap the Count field and use the assigned knob to change the value, or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to change the value.
6. Tap **Save As Type** and select the desired graphic image file type from the list.
7. Tap **Save** to save the screen image to the specified file name, location, and type.

---

**NOTE.** Once you have saved a file using the Save As configuration menu, you can push the front-panel **User** button to immediately save the same type file again, without opening any menus.

---

## Save a waveform to a file

Use this procedure to save channel waveform (analog or digital) data to a comma-separated values (csv) or Tektronix waveform data (wfm) file, for later analysis or inclusion in reports.

1. Tap the **File** menu and select **Save As**.  
The Save As configuration menu opens.
2. Tap **Waveform** to open the Waveform tab.
3. Tap **Save Location** or **Browse** to select the location to save the file.
  - a. Tap the **Save Location** drop down arrow and select the location to save the file from a list of recent save locations. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keyboard to enter a path to the save location.
  - b. Tap **Browse** to open the *Browse Save As Location* configuration menu to navigate to and select a location at which to save the file.
4. **File Name** shows the name last used to save a file. The default name is Tek000. To change the file name, double-tap the file name and enter a new file name using the virtual keyboard.
5. Tap **Auto Increment File Name** to enable or disable automatic incrementing of a file name. Auto Increment File Name lets you save sequential files without needing to manually rename them each time. The count number is added to the end of the file name.
  - If Auto Increment File Name is enabled the **Count** defaults to 000 if there are no files at the specified location and file name that already use incremented file names. If there are files at the save location that already use the specified file name, and have already been saved using count increments, the Count field shows the next count value that will be added to the file name when the file is saved.
  - To change the starting count value, tap the Count field and use the assigned knob to change the value, or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to change the value.
6. Tap **Save As Type** and select the desired waveform data type from the list.
7. Tap **Source** and select the source of the waveform to save from the list. You can save a single waveform or all waveforms
8. Tap **Save** to save the waveform to the specified file name, location, and type.

---

**NOTE.** Once you have saved a file using the Save As configuration menu, you can push the front-panel User button to immediately save the same type file again, without opening any menus.

---

## Save instrument settings to a file

Use this procedure to save instrument settings to a Tektronix setup (.set) file.

1. Tap the **File** menu and select **Save As**.  
The Save As configuration menu opens.
2. Tap **Setup** to open the Setup tab.
3. Tap **Save Location** or **Browse** to select the location to save the file.
  - a. Tap the **Save Location** drop down arrow and select the location to save the file from a list of recent save locations. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keyboard to enter a path to the save location.
  - b. Tap **Browse** to open the *Browse Save As Location* configuration menu to navigate to and select a location at which to save the file.

4. **File Name** shows the name last used to save a file. The default name is Tek000. To change the file name, double-tap the file name and enter a new file name using the virtual keyboard.
5. Tap **Auto Increment File Name** to enable or disable automatic incrementing of a file name. Auto Increment File Name lets you save sequential files without needing to manually rename them each time. The count number is added to the end of the file name.
  - If Auto Increment File Name is enabled the **Count** defaults to 000 if there are no files at the specified location and file name that already use incremented file names. If there are files at the save location that already use the specified file name, and have already been saved using count increments, the Count field shows the next count value that will be added to the file name when the file is saved.
  - To change the starting count value, tap the Count field and use the assigned knob to change the value, or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to change the value.
6. Enable **Include Reference Waveforms** to include waveform files for all active waveforms in the setup file.
7. Tap **Save** to save the setup information to the specified file name and location.

**NOTE.** Once you have saved a file using the Save As configuration menu, you can push the front-panel **User** button to immediately save the same type file again, without opening any menus.

## Save reports

Use this procedure to save reports.

1. Tap the **File** menu and select **Save As**.  
The Save As configuration menu opens.
2. Tap **Report** to open the Report tab.
3. Tap **Save Location** or **Browse** to select the location to save the file.
  - a. Tap the **Save Location** drop down arrow and select the location to save the file from a list of recent save locations. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keyboard to enter a path to the save location.
  - b. Tap **Browse** to open the *Browse Save As Location* configuration menu to navigate to and select a location at which to save the file.
4. **File Name** shows the name last used to save a file. The default name is Tek000. To change the file name, double-tap the file name and enter a new file name using the virtual keyboard.
5. Tap **Auto Increment File Name** to enable or disable automatic incrementing of a file name. Auto Increment File Name lets you save sequential files without needing to manually rename them each time. The count number is added to the end of the file name.
  - If Auto Increment File Name is enabled the **Count** defaults to 000 if there are no files at the specified location and file name that already use incremented file names. If there are files at the save location that already use the specified file name, and have already been saved using count increments, the Count field shows the next count value that will be added to the file name when the file is saved.
  - To change the starting count value, tap the Count field and use the assigned knob to change the value, or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to change the value.
6. Tap **Save As Type** and select the report file format from the list.
7. Tap **Append Report** to enable appending this report to a previous report that uses the same file name.
8. Double-tap **Comments** and use the virtual keyboard to add descriptive comments to the report.
9. Tap **Include Images and Annotations** to include screen images and annotations in the report.

10. Tap **Include Setup Configuration** to include the instrument settings data in the report.
11. Tap **Save** to save the report file to the specified file name, location, and type.

**NOTE.** Once you have saved a file using the Save As configuration menu, you can push the front-panel **User** button to immediately save the same type file again, without opening any menus.

---

## Save sessions

Use this procedure to save a session file. A session file contains instrument setup information and reference waveforms of active signals.

1. Tap the **File** menu and select **Save As**.  
The Save As configuration menu opens.
2. Tap **Session** to open the Session tab.
3. Tap **Save Location** or **Browse** to select the location to save the file.
  - a. Tap the **Save Location** drop down arrow and select the location to save the file from a list of recent save locations. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keyboard to enter a path to the save location.
  - b. Tap **Browse** to open the *Browse Save As Location* configuration menu to navigate to and select a location at which to save the file.
4. **File Name** shows the name last used to save a file. The default name is Tek000. To change the file name, double-tap the file name and enter a new file name using the virtual keyboard.
5. Tap **Auto Increment File Name** to enable or disable automatic incrementing of a file name. Auto Increment File Name lets you save sequential files without needing to manually rename them each time. The count number is added to the end of the file name.
  - If Auto Increment File Name is enabled the **Count** defaults to 000 if there are no files at the specified location and file name that already use incremented file names. If there are files at the save location that already use the specified file name, and have already been saved using count increments, the Count field shows the next count value that will be added to the file name when the file is saved.
  - To change the starting count value, tap the Count field and use the assigned knob to change the value, or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to change the value.
6. Tap **Save** to save the session data to the specified file name, location, and type.

**NOTE.** Once you have saved a file using the Save As configuration menu, you can push the front-panel **User** button to immediately save the same type file again, without opening any menus.

---

## Recall a Reference waveform

Use this procedure to recall (load) and display a saved waveform as a Reference waveform. There is no set limit to the number of reference waveforms that you can load and display.

1. Tap the **Add New Ref** button on the Settings bar.

The *Recall configuration menu* opens showing the settings last used to recall a waveform file.

2. Tap **Files of Type:** and select the file type from the list.

The files list updates to show all files that match the selected file type.

3. Navigate to the folder that contains the file to recall, using one of the following methods:

- To recall files from recently accessed file locations, tap the drop down arrow in the **Look in** field and select from the list of recently accessed locations.
- Tap in the **Drive** column and use the displayed contents to navigate to locations on the internal storage location C, or on a connected USB drive (E -K).
- Double-tap the **Look in** field and use the virtual keyboard to manually enter a path to the file location (folder).

As you navigate the folders, the files list area shows all files that match the file type selected in the Files of Type field.

4. Select the file to recall, using one of the following methods:

- If the file was recently recalled, tap the drop down arrow in the **File Name:** field and select from a drop-down list of recently recalled files.
- Select a file name in the main files list. The File Name field updates to show the selected file name.

---

**NOTE.** You can double-tap on a file name to immediately recall the file and close the menu.

---

5. Tap **Recall**.

The reference waveform is loaded and displayed, and a Ref badge is added to the Settings bar.

## Recall a Setup file

Use this procedure to recall (load) and configure instrument settings from a Setup file.

1. Select **File > Recall** from the Menu bar to open the *Recall configuration* menu.
2. Tap **Setup** to open the Setup tab.

The Recall configuration menu opens to show the settings last used to recall a setup file.

3. Tap **Files of Type:** and select the file type from the list.

The files list updates to show any files that match the selected file type.

4. Navigate to the folder that contains the file to recall, using one of the following methods:

- To recall files from recently accessed file locations, tap the drop down arrow in the **Look in** field and select from the list of recently accessed locations.
- Tap in the **Drive** column and use the displayed contents to navigate to locations on the internal storage location C, or on a connected USB drive (E -K).
- Double-tap the **Look in** field and use the virtual keyboard to manually enter a path to the file location (folder).

As you navigate the folders, the files list area shows all files that match the file type selected in the Files of Type field.

5. Select the file to recall, using one of the following methods:

- If the file was recently recalled, tap the drop down arrow in the **File Name:** field and select from a drop-down list of recently recalled files.
- Select a file name in the main files list. The File Name field updates to show the selected file name.

---

**NOTE.** You can double-tap on a file name to immediately recall the file and close the menu.

---

6. Tap **Recall**

The instrument loads the setup file and reconfigures the oscilloscope to the setup file settings.

## Recall a Session file

Use this procedure to recall (load) instrument settings and associated waveforms (as Reference waveforms) from a Session file.

1. Select **File > Recall** from the Menu bar to open the *Recall configuration* menu.
2. Tap **Session** to open the Session tab.

The Recall configuration menu opens to show the settings last used to recall a session file.

3. Tap **Files of Type:** and select the file type from the list.

The files list updates to show any files that match the selected file type.

4. Navigate to the folder that contains the file to recall, using one of the following methods:

- To recall files from recently accessed file locations, tap the drop down arrow in the **Look in** field and select from the list of recently accessed locations.
- Tap in the **Drive** column and use the displayed contents to navigate to locations on the internal storage location C, or on a connected USB drive (E -K).
- Double-tap the **Look in** field and use the virtual keyboard to manually enter a path to the file location (folder).

As you navigate the folders, the files list area shows all files that match the file type selected in the Files of Type field.

5. Select the file to recall, using one of the following methods:

- If the file was recently recalled, tap the drop down arrow in the **File Name:** field and select from a drop-down list of recently recalled files.
- Select a file name in the main files list. The File Name field updates to show the selected file name.

---

**NOTE.** You can double-tap on a file name to immediately recall the file and close the menu.

---

6. Tap **Recall**.

The instrument loads the session file and reconfigures the oscilloscope to the session file settings.

# Menus and dialog boxes

## The Acquisition configuration menu

Use this configuration menu to set which data points are used to acquire waveforms, and enable automatically saving acquisitions to files.

To open the Acquisition menu, double-tap the **Acquisition** badge on the Settings bar.

### The Acquisition menu fields and controls

Displayed fields and controls can change depending on menu selections.

Field or control	Description
<b>Run/Stop</b>	Toggles the oscilloscope between constant acquisition (Run) and no acquisitions (Stop). When stopped, the oscilloscope shows waveforms from the last completed acquisition.
<b>Single/Seq</b>	Acquires a single acquisition or a set number of acquisitions, then stops.
<b>Clear</b>	Erases acquired waveform data points from memory. Applies to all live acquisition waveforms.
<b>Acquisition Mode</b>	<p><b>Sample</b> creates a record point by saving one or more samples during each acquisition interval. Sample mode is the default acquisition mode. The instrument does no post processing of the acquired samples in this mode.</p> <p><b>Peak Detect</b> alternates between saving the highest sample in one acquisition interval and the lowest sample in the next acquisition interval. Useful for capturing fast and random events such as narrow waveform pulses.</p> <p><b>High Res</b> applies unique finite impulse response (FIR) filters based on the current sample rate. This FIR filter maintains the maximum bandwidth possible for that sample rate while rejecting aliasing. The filter removes noise from the oscilloscope amplifiers and ADC above the usable bandwidth for the selected sample rate. Implementation of the filter in hardware, ahead of the trigger and storage, reduces trigger jitter and enables using Fast Acq mode while in High Res mode.</p> <p>High Res mode also guarantees at least 12 bits of vertical resolution. The number of bits of resolution is displayed in the Acquisition badge in the Settings bar.</p> <p>The High Res sample rate and record length settings are displayed in the Horizontal badge. High Res mode sets the maximum real time sample rate to <math>\frac{1}{2}</math> the maximum sample rate.</p> <p><b>Envelope</b> acquires and displays a waveform record that shows the extremes in variations over several acquisitions. The instrument saves the highest and lowest values in two adjacent intervals (similar to the Peak Detect mode). Unlike Peak Detect mode, the peaks are gathered over many trigger events.</p> <p><b>Average</b> acquires and displays a waveform record that is the average result of several acquisitions. This mode reduces random noise.</p>
<b>Single Sequence/Stop After</b>	Enables stopping acquisitions after a specified number of acquisitions. Only works when using the Single/Sequence button.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save on Trigger</b>	Enables automatically saving waveform and/or screen image files when a trigger event occurs. Optimally used with single triggers or small sequences to reduce the number of files saved.
<b>Configure</b>	Opens the <b>Save On Trigger</b> menu to set the type of file to save and the save location. See <a href="#">Save On Trigger menu</a> on page 104.
<b>Timebase Reference Source</b>	Sets the time base source used by the oscilloscope to acquire and measure signals. Internal sets the oscilloscope to use an internal reference signal. External sets the oscilloscope to use a 10 MHz signal connected to the rear-panel Ref In connector.

## Save On Trigger menu

Use this configuration menu to enable automatically saving a waveform file, screen capture, or both when a trigger event occurs.

This menu is accessed from the Acquisition badge.

To open the Save on Trigger menu:

1. Double-tap the **Acquisition** badge.
2. Tap the Save on Trigger **Configure** button.
3. Set the location, type of files, and waveform source to save.

To save Files when a trigger event occurs, select the **Save on Trigger** box in the Acquisition configuration menu.

### Save on Trigger menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Location</b>	The folder location to which to save the files. Use the Browse button to navigate to and select the folder. You can save files on the instrument or to an attached USB drive.
<b>Browse</b>	Opens the Browse Save On Location configuration menu. Use the configuration menu to navigate to and select a folder in which to save the files.
<b>File Name</b>	Use the default file name or enter a file name. Tap the arrow icon to list the file names of recently-saved files up to a maximum of 20.
<b>Files to Save</b>	Select the file type(s) to save (Waveform, Screen Capture, or both).
<b>Format</b>	Select the file format to which to save the waveform or screen capture.
<b>Source</b>	Select the signal source to save to waveform files. You can select All to save all displayed waveforms to individual files.

## Add Measurements configuration menu overview

Use this configuration menu to select measurements you want to take on waveforms and add the measurements to the Results bar.

To open the **Add Measurements** configuration menu, tap the **Add New... Measure** button in the **Analysis** controls area.

The **Add Measurements** configuration menu always opens on the **Standard** measurement tab. The listed tabs and measurements depend on the installed measurement options and the selected signal source.

To add a measurement, select the source, select the measurement, and either tap the **Add** button or double-tap the measurement. The measurement is added to the Results bar.

To change individual measurement settings, double-tap the Measurement badge to open a Measurement configuration menu. See [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145.

### Add Measurements menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Measurement tabs</b>	The tabs along the top organize measurements by their type. The Standard tab is the default set of measurements that are built in to the instrument. Other tabs are shown when you install measurement options.
<b>Measurement description</b> (graphic and text)	Shows a graphic and short description of a selected measurement. Use this information to verify that the selected measurement is correct for what you want to measure.
<b>Source</b>	Selects the measurement source. If the measurement requires more than one source (for example, Skew or Phase), the menu shows two source fields from which to select.
<b>Add button</b>	Adds the selected measurement as a measurement badge to the Results bar. You can also double-tap a listed measurement to add it to the Results bar.

### Standard tab measurement panels

Panel	Description
<b>Amplitude Measurements panel</b>	Tap the panel bar to list the available amplitude measurements. Touch and drag the list to scroll through all measurements. See <a href="#">Amplitude Measurements panel</a> on page 106.
<b>Timing Measurements panel</b>	Tap the panel bar to list the available time measurements. Touch and drag the list to scroll through all measurements. See <a href="#">Timing Measurements panel</a> on page 108.
<b>Jitter Measurements panel</b>	Tap the panel bar to list the available standard jitter measurements. See <a href="#">Jitter Measurements panel</a> on page 110.
	<b>NOTE.</b> If you have installed Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis (Option DJA), the Jitter Measurements panel is removed from the Standard measurement tab and is replaced with a Jitter tab at the top of the Add Measurements menu.

## Other tab measurements

Add Measurement tab	Description
Jitter	Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis measurements (Option DJA). Provides triggers and measurements for advanced jitter and eye analysis. See <a href="#">The Jitter tab (Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis Option DJA)</a> on page 111.

## The Standard measurements tab

The Standard tab lists the default set of amplitude, timing, and jitter measurements that are included with the instrument.

To open the Standard measurements tab, tap the **Add New...Measure** button. The Add Measurements configuration menu opens on the Standard tab by default.

To add a measurement to the Results bar:

1. Select the signal source.
2. Tap a measurement panel:
  - [Amplitude Measurements panel](#) on page 106
  - [Timing Measurements panel](#) on page 108
  - [Jitter Measurements panel](#) on page 110
3. Select a measurement. If a measurement requires two signal sources, select the sources in the Source 1 and Source 2 fields.
4. Tap **Add**. You can also double-tap a measurement to add it immediately to the Results bar.

**NOTE.** If you have installed Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis (Option DJA), all jitter measurements are in the **Jitter** tab. See [The Jitter tab \(Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis Option DJA\)](#) on page 111.

## Amplitude Measurements panel

The Amplitude Measurements panel lists available amplitude-related measurements that you can take on analog channel signals, math waveforms (time-domain), and reference waveforms. Amplitude measurements are not available for digital signals.

To open the Amplitude Measurements panel:

1. Tap **Add New... Measure** button.
2. Tap the **Amplitude Measurements** panel.

To add a measurement to the Results bar:

1. Select the signal source.
2. Select a measurement.
3. Tap **Add**. You can also double-tap a measurement to add it immediately to the Results bar.

### The Amplitude Measurements panel measurements.

Measurement	Description
<b>AC RMS</b>	The true Root Mean Square voltage, minus any DC component, of the waveform data points that are above the Mean signal level. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Amplitude</b>	The difference between the Top value and the Base value. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Area</b>	The area between the waveform and the Mean value, calculated by integrating the data points. The area above ground (0 V) is positive, while the area below ground is negative. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Base<sup>1</sup></b>	The most common data point value below the midpoint of the waveform, over the measurement region. Base is used as the 0% value whenever low reference values are calculated, such as in rise time or fall time measurements. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Maximum</b>	The maximum data point value. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or across the entire waveform record.
<b>Mean</b>	The arithmetic mean of all data points over the measurement region. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Minimum</b>	The minimum data point value. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Negative Overshoot<sup>1</sup></b>	The difference between the Minimum and Base values, divided by the Amplitude, and multiplied by 100 to express the measurement as a percentage of amplitude. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Peak-To-Peak</b>	The absolute difference between the Maximum and Minimum amplitudes in the measurement region. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Positive Overshoot<sup>1</sup></b>	The difference between the Maximum value and the Top value, divided by the Amplitude, and multiplied by 100 to express the measurement as a percentage of amplitude. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>RMS</b>	The true Root Mean Square (The square root of the mean (average) value of the squared function of the waveform data points.) You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.
<b>Top<sup>1</sup></b>	The most common data point value above the midpoint of the waveform over the measurement region. Base is used as the 100% reference value whenever high reference values are calculated, such as in rise time or fall time measurements. You can take this measurement on each cycle in the waveform record or on the entire waveform record.

See also. [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145

<sup>1</sup> Changing your Base Top Method in the Reference Levels panel of the Measurement configuration menu may change how this value is calculated.

## Timing Measurements panel

Use the Timing Measurements panel to add timing-related measurements to the Results bar. Timing measurements can be taken on time-domain analog, math, and reference waveforms. Timing measurements can also be taken on some digital channel signals.

To open the Timing Measurements panel:

1. Tap the **Add New... Measure** button.
2. Tap the **Timing Measurements** panel.

To add a measurement to the Results bar:

1. Select the signal source.
2. Select a measurement. If a measurement requires two signal sources, select the sources in the Source 1 and Source 2 fields.
3. Tap **Add**. You can also double-tap a measurement to add it immediately to the Results bar.

### Timing Measurements panel.

Measurement	Description
Burst Width <sup>2</sup>	The duration of a series of adjacent crossings of the Mid reference level. Bursts are separated by a specified idle time. The measurement is taken on each burst in a waveform record.
Data Rate <sup>2</sup>	Data Rate is the reciprocal of Unit Interval. The measurement is taken on each bit of the waveform record.
Delay	The time difference between the mid reference (default 50%) amplitude point of two different waveforms. You can specify the signal edges to measure in the measurement's Configuration menu. The measurement requires two sources.
Duration N-Periods <sup>2</sup>	The time required to complete N cycles. A cycle is the time between two adjacent (same direction) crossings of the mid reference level. The measurement is taken on each cycle in the waveform record.
Fall Time	The time required for the trailing edge of the first pulse in the measurement region to fall from the high reference value (default = 90%) to the low reference value (default = 10%). The measurement is taken on each cycle of the waveform record.
Falling Slew Rate	The rate of change (in volts/second) as an edge transitions from a high reference level to a low reference level. The measurement is taken on each cycle of the record in the measurement region.
Frequency <sup>2</sup>	The frequency of the waveform. Frequency is the reciprocal of Period (Frequency = 1/Period).
High Time	The time the signal remains above the Top reference level. The measurement is taken on each cycle in the waveform record.
Hold Time <sup>2</sup>	The time between the specified Mid reference level crossing on the clock signal to the closest Mid reference level crossing on the specified data signal. The measurement is taken on each specified clock edge in the waveform record.
Low Time	The time the signal remains below the Base reference level. The measurement is taken on each cycle in the waveform record.
Negative Duty Cycle <sup>2</sup>	The ratio of the negative pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage. The duty cycle is measured on the first cycle in the measurement region.
Negative Pulse Width <sup>2</sup>	The distance (time) between the mid reference (default 50%) amplitude points of a negative pulse. The measurement is taken on each cycle in the waveform record or measurement region.
Period <sup>2</sup>	The time between two adjacent crossings of the Mid reference level (one cycle) of the waveform. The measurement is taken on each cycle of the waveform record or measurement region.
Phase <sup>2</sup>	The time difference (phase shift) between the specified signal edges of waveform source 1 and waveform source 2. The measurement is expressed in degrees, where 360° comprise one waveform cycle. This measurement requires two sources. The measurement is taken on each cycle of the waveform record.
Positive Duty Cycle <sup>2</sup>	The ratio of the positive pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage. The duty cycle is measured on the first cycle in the measurement region.

<sup>2</sup> This measurement can also be taken on digital signals.

Measurement	Description
<b>Positive Pulse Width</b> <sup>2</sup>	The distance (time) between the mid reference (default 50%) amplitude points of a positive pulse. The measurement is made on the first pulse in the measurement region.
<b>Rise Time</b>	The time required for the leading edge of the first pulse in the measurement region to rise from the low reference value (default = 10%) to the high reference value (default = 90%). The measurement is taken on each cycle of the waveform record.
<b>Rising Slew Rate</b>	The rate of change (in volts/second) as an edge transitions from a low reference level to a high reference level. The measurement is taken on each cycle of the record in the measurement region.
<b>Setup Time</b> <sup>2</sup>	The time between the specified Mid reference level crossing on the data signal to the closest Mid reference level crossing on the specified clock signal. The measurement is made on each specified clock edge in the waveform record.
<b>Skew</b> <sup>2</sup>	The time between the specified Mid reference level crossing on one source to the closest Mid reference level crossing on the second source signal. The measurement is made on each cycle in the waveform record.
<b>Time Outside Level</b>	The time the specified signal remains above the Top reference level and/or below the Base reference level. The measurement is made on each occurrence in the waveform record.
<b>Unit Interval</b> <sup>2</sup>	The time difference between two successive bits. The measurement is taken on each bit of the waveform record.

See also. [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145

### Jitter Measurements panel

The Jitter Measurements panel lists the standard jitter-related measurements that you can add to the Results bar. These jitter measurements are part of the Standard measurements that are provided by default.

To open the Jitter Measurements panel:

1. Tap the **Add New...Measure** button.
2. Tap the **Jitter Measurements** panel.

To add a measurement to the Results bar:

1. Select the signal source.
2. Select a measurement.
3. Tap **Add**. You can also double-tap a measurement to add it immediately to the Results bar.

---

**NOTE.** If you have installed Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis (Option DJA), the jitter measurements are moved to the **Jitter** tab of the **Add Measurements** menu. See [The Jitter tab \(Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis Option DJA\)](#) on page 111.

---

### Jitter Measurements panel measurements.

Measurement	Description
<b>Phase Noise</b>	The RMS magnitude of all integrated jitter falling within a specified offset range of the fundamental clock frequency. This measurement is taken on the entire waveform record.
<b>TIE</b>	The difference in time between an edge in the source waveform and the corresponding edge in a recovered reference clock signal. The measurement is made on each waveform edge in the measurement region.

See also. [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145

### The Jitter tab (Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis Option DJA)

The Jitter tab lists advanced jitter, eye, amplitude, and timing measurements that you can add to the Results bar. The Jitter tab is only shown if you have purchased and installed Advanced Jitter and Eye Analysis (Option DJA).

To open the Jitter measurements tab:

1. Tap **Add New... Measure** button.
2. Tap the **Jitter** tab.

To add a measurement to the Results bar:

1. Select the signal source.
2. Select a measurement panel.
3. Select a measurement.
4. Tap **Add**. You can also double-tap a measurement to add it to the Results bar.

**Adding eye diagram plots for a jitter measurement.** To display an eye diagram plot for a jitter measurement, double-tap the jitter measurement badge for which you want to show an eye diagram. If available, tap the **Eye Diagram** plot button.

**Jitter Measurements panel (Opt DJA).**

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>DCD</b>	Duty cycle distortion. The peak-to-peak amplitude for the component of the deterministic jitter correlated with the signal polarity. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>DDJ</b>	Data dependent jitter. The peak-to-peak amplitude for the component of the deterministic jitter correlated with the date pattern in the waveform. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>DJ</b>	Deterministic jitter. The peak-to-peak amplitude of all timing errors that exhibit deterministic behavior. The measurement is taken across the entire record.
<b>DJ-δδ</b>	Dual-Dirac deterministic jitter. The deterministic jitter on a simplifying assumption that the histogram of all deterministic jitter can be modeled as a pair of equal-magnitude Dirac functions. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>F/2</b>	The peak-to-peak amplitude of the periodic jitter occurring at a rate of Fb (date rate) divided by two. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>F/4</b>	The peak-to-peak amplitude of the periodic jitter occurring at a rate of Fb (date rate) divided by four. The measurement is taken across the entire record.
<b>F/8</b>	The peak-to-peak amplitude of the periodic jitter occurring at a rate of Fb (date rate) divided by eight. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>J2</b>	The total jitter at a bit error rate of 2.5e-3 (TJ@2.5e-3). The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>J9</b>	The total jitter at a bit error rate of 2.5e-3 (TJ@2.5e-3). The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>Jitter Summary</b>	Adds multiple jitter measurements to the measurement badge, and displays Bathtub, TIE Spectrum trend plot, TIE Histogram, Eye Diagram plots on the screen.
<b>NPJ</b>	Nonperiodic jitter. The portion of the BUJ (Bound uncorrelated jitter) that is random. BJU excludes DDJ, DCD, and RJ. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>Phase Noise</b>	The RMS magnitude of all integrated jitter falling within a specified offset range of the fundamental clock frequency. This measurement is taken on the entire waveform record. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>PJ</b>	Periodic jitter. The peak-to-peak amplitude of the uncorrelated sinusoidal components of the deterministic jitter. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>RJ</b>	Random jitter. The RMS magnitude of all random timing errors following a Gaussian distribution. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>RJ-δδ</b>	Dual-Dirac random jitter. The random jitter on a simplifying assumption that the histogram of all deterministic jitter can be modeled as a pair of equal-magnitude Dirac functions. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>SRJ</b>	Sub-rate jitter. The composite jitter due to periodic components at 1/2, 1/4, and 1/8 of the data rate. The measurement is taken on the entire record.

Measurement	Description
TIE	Time Interval Error. The difference in time between an edge in the source waveform and the corresponding edge in a recovered reference clock signal. The measurement is taken on each waveform edge.
TJ@BER	Total error at a specified bit error rate. The predicated peak-to-peak amplitude of jitter that will only be exceeded with a probability equal to the bit error rate. The measurement is taken on the entire record.

**Eye Measurements panel (Opt DJA).**

Measurement	Description
Eye Height	The minimum vertical eye opening at the center of the recovered unit interval. The measurement is taken on the entire waveform record.
Eye High	The amplitude of a high (one) bit measured at a specified location within the recovered unit interval. The measurement is taken on each high bit in the waveform record.
Eye Low	The amplitude of a low (zero) bit measured at a specified location within the recovered unit interval. The measurement is taken on each low bit in the waveform record.
Eye Width	The minimum horizontal eye opening at the center of the recovered unit interval. The measurement is taken on the entire waveform record.
EyeHeight@BER	The predicted vertical eye opening that will be violated with a probability equal to the bit error rate. The measurement is taken on the entire waveform record.
EyeWidth@BER	The predicted horizontal eye opening that will be violated with a probability equal to the bit error rate. The measurement is taken on the entire waveform record.
Q-Factor	The ratio of the vertical eye opening to RMS vertical noise measured at a specified location in the recovered unit interval. The measurement is taken on the entire waveform record.

**Amplitude Measurements panel (Opt DJA).**

Measurement	Description
<b>AC Common Mode (Pk-Pk)</b>	The peak-to-peak of the common mode voltage of the two specified sources. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>Bit Amplitude</b>	The difference between the amplitudes of the 1 and 0 bits surrounding a transition. The amplitude is measured over a specified part of at the center of the recovered time interval. The measurement is taken on each transition bit of the entire record (Mean) or on the entire record (Mode).
<b>Bit High</b>	The amplitude of a 1 bit, measured over a specified percent of the center of the recovered time interval. The measurement is taken on each high bit of the entire record (Mean) or on the entire record (Mode).
<b>Bit Low</b>	The amplitude of a 0 bit, measured over a specified percent of the center of the recovered time interval. The measurement is taken on each low bit of the entire record (Mean) or on the entire record (Mode).
<b>DC Common Mode</b>	The arithmetic mean of the common mode voltage of two sources. The measurement is taken on the entire record.
<b>Differential Crossover</b>	The voltage level of a differential signal pair at the crossover point(s). The measurement is taken at each crossover point in the record.
<b>T/nT Ratio</b>	The ratio of a nontransition bit voltage (second and subsequent bit voltage after a transition) to its nearest preceding transition bit voltage (first bit voltage after the transition). Bit voltage is measured at the interpolated midpoint of the recovered unit interval. The measurement is taken on each nontransition bit in the record.

**Timing Measurements panel (Opt DJA).**

Measurement	Description
<b>SSC Freq Dev</b>	The spread spectrum clock frequency deviation. This measurement enables a time trend plot of the spread spectrum clock modulation profile. The measurement is taken on each cycle of the entire record.
<b>SSC Modulation Rate</b>	The modulation frequency of a spread spectrum clock. The measurement is taken on each cycle of the entire record.

See also. [Measurement configuration menu overview](#) on page 145

## Add Plot configuration menu

Use this configuration menu to select and plot the amplitude and time relationship of two (XY) or three (XYZ) signals, which can be sourced from channel, math, or reference waveforms, or plot a TIE measurement eye diagram.

These plots differ from the Measurement plots (added from a Measurement configuration menu), which plot that measurement's value, not the signal source value(s).

To open the **Add Plot** configuration menu, tap the **Add New... Plot** button.

To add a plot:

1. Select a plot type.
2. Select the signal source or sources.
3. Tap **Add**. You can also double tap a plot to add it to the screen. The plot is added to the screen.

### Add Plot menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Sources</b>	Sets the input sources for the plot. The number of source fields listed depends on the plot.
<b>XY, XYZ, Eye Diagram</b>	Select the plot type to add to the screen. <b>Eye Diagram</b> adds a TIE measurement badge to the Results bar and adds the eye diagram to the screen.
<b>Add</b>	Adds the selected plot to the screen. You can also double tap on a plot type to add it to the screen.

### Configuring plots

Each plot has a menu that lets you configure that plot's settings. See [Plot configuration menus](#) on page 216.

### Closing a plot view

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

## Add Results Table configuration menu

Use this configuration menu to add a table of all active measurements, or bus decode values, to the screen in a spreadsheet-like format.

To open the **Add Results Table** configuration menu, tap the **Add New... Results Table** button.

To add a result table to the screen:

1. Select a table type.
2. Tap **Add**. You can also double tap a plot to add it to the screen.

## Add Results Table menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Measurements</b>	Display a table of all the measurements in the Results bar.
<b>Bus Decode</b>	Display a table of the bus decode results.
<b>Add</b>	Displays the selected table type. You can add as many tables as you want on the screen.

## Results Tables operations overview

Results Tables (Measurement or Bus Decode) list all active measurements and their statistics, or bus decode activity, in a spreadsheet format that lets you quickly compare values or save the results to a report.

### Results Table operations.

- Double-tap anywhere on a results table to open its configuration menu.
- If you add or delete a measurement to the Results bar, that measurement is automatically added to or deleted from an existing Measurement Results table.
- If you add or delete a bus to the Settings bar, that bus is automatically added to or deleted from an existing Bus Decode Results table.
- Each bus in a Bus Decode Results table has its own tab. Tap a tab show the decode results for that bus.
- Selecting a Bus in the Bus Decode Table configuration menu does not select and display the tab for that bus.
- To scroll up and down in a results table, tap the table and use Multipurpose knob A to scroll and select table rows.
- To move a column, touch and drag the column title to a new position in the table.
- To add or remove a column from the table, double-tap the results table to open the table configuration menu and select from available columns to add or remove.
- To resize a column width, use the mouse to position the cursor on the column name border to change, then click and drag the column border to resize that column.
- To configure or delete a single measurement in a Measurement Results table, touch and hold on a table row to open a right-click menu that lets you configure or delete that measurement.
- You cannot sort the contents of a column.

**See also.** [Measurement Table configuration menu](#) on page 116

[Bus Decode Table configuration menu](#) on page 118

### Measurement Table configuration menu

Use this menu to select which statistics to show in the **Measurement Results** table, select the number of digits to show in each column, save a table, and so on.

To open the Measurement Table configuration menu, double-tap anywhere in a Measurement Results table.

### Measurement Table menu Column Visibility panel fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Label</b>	Adds a Label column to show the user-defined label for all measurements. If no user-defined labels exist, the column shows the default measurement names.
<b>Peak-to-Peak</b>	Adds a Peak-to-Peak column and shows a Pk-Pk readout for all relevant measurements.
Check boxes to select columns to display	Select or clear individual statistic check boxes to add or remove that column from the table.

### Measurement Table menu Column Resolution panel fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Measurement column resolution</b>	Sets the resolution (number of digits to display) for each column.
<b>Set to Defaults</b>	Sets all columns to show 5 digit readouts.

### Measurement Table menu Other panel fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Statistics</b>	Sets the amount of statistical information you want to display for each measurement.  <b>All Acquisitions</b> shows statistics for all acquisitions from the last action that cleared acquisition memory.  <b>Current Acquisition</b> shows the statistics for the current acquisition.  <b>Both</b> shows both the accumulated results and the current acquisition results.
<b>Cycle-to-Cycle Variation</b>	For measurements where this applies, this feature allows you to see the mean or average variation between measurements performed on each available cycle in the waveform.
<b>Row Height Optimized For</b>	Select Touch to increase table row height by ~75% for easier touch manipulation. Uses more space on the screen.  Select Mouse to decrease row height. Uses less space on the screen. Mouse is the default setting.
<b>Save Table</b>	Opens a menu with which to save the results table data to a file. See <a href="#">Save As configuration menu (Measurement Results Table)</a> on page 118.

## Save As configuration menu (Measurement Results Table)

Use the Save As configuration menu to set the location and file name to which to save the contents of a results table, as a comma-separated value (csv) format file.

To open the Save As configuration menu to save a results table to a file:

1. Double-tap anywhere in the Measurement Results table to open the Measurement Table configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Other** panel.
3. Tap **Save Table**.

### Save As menu, Measurement Results table fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Location</b>	Sets the location to which to save the file. The default value is the last location to which a file was saved.  Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new save location. Or double-tap on the file name to open the on-screen keyboard and enter a path.  Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recent file save locations, for the current save type, up to a maximum of 20 locations.
<b>Browse</b>	Tap to open the Browse Save As Location dialog, to navigate to and select the location to which to save the file. See <i>Browse Save As Location configuration menu</i> on page 191.
<b>File Name</b>	The file name assigned to the file. The default file name is Tek000. The file name increments on the next save (Tek001, Tek002, and so on).  Tap on the file name and use a keyboard to enter a new file name. Or double-tap on the file name to open the on-screen keyboard and enter a file name.
<b>Save as Type</b>	You can only save table results as comma separated values (.csv) files.

## Bus Decode Table configuration menu

Use this configuration menu to select which information to show in each Bus Decode Results table, or save a Bus Decode Results table to a file.

To open the Bus Decode Table configuration menu, double-tap anywhere in the Bus Decode Results table.

If there multiple bus decode results tables, tap the tab of the bus to configure and then double-tap anywhere in that Bus Decode Results table.

### Bus Decode Table menu, Column Visibility panel fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Bus</b>	Selects the bus results table to which you want to make column changes. The drop-down list shows all active bus tables by name. A bus must be present in the Waveform view before it is listed in the Bus field.  If there are multiple results tables (indicated by tabs along the top of the results table), you do not need to open a tab to make changes to that table. Double-tap the table and select the table to change from the Bus menu.
Check boxes for columns in table to display	Select or clear individual check boxes to add or remove that column from the table. The listed columns depend on the selected bus type.

### Bus Decode Table menu, Other panel fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Table</b>	Opens the Save As dialog to let you save the table data to a comma-separated values (.csv) file. See <a href="#">Save As configuration menu (Bus Decode Results table)</a> on page 119.

### Save As configuration menu (Bus Decode Results table)

Use this configuration menu to set the location and file name to which to save the contents of a results table, as a comma-separated value (csv) format file.

To open the Save As configuration menu:

1. Double-tap anywhere in the Bus Decode Results table to open the Bus Decode Results configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Other** panel.
3. Tap **Save Table**.

### Save As menu (Bus Decode Results table) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Location</b>	<p>Sets the location to which to save the file. The default value is the last location to which a file of this type was saved.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new save location. Or double-tap on the file name to open the on-screen keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recent file save locations, for the current save type, up to a maximum of 20 locations.</p>
<b>Browse</b>	Tap to open the Browse Save As Location configuration menu, to navigate to and select the location to which to save the file. See <a href="#">Browse Save As Location configuration menu</a> on page 191.
<b>File Name</b>	<p>The file name assigned to the file. The default value is either the user-entered name used to last save this file type, or a default name created by the instrument if this file type has not previously been saved with a custom file name. The default file name uses the format Tek000.</p> <p>Tap on the file name and use a keyboard to enter a new file name. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a file name.</p>
<b>Save as Type</b>	You can only save table results as comma separated values (.csv) files.

## Search configuration menu overview

Use the Search configuration menu to define conditions that you want to mark on a channel or waveform signal.

To open the Search configuration menu, double-tap a Search badge in the results bar.

If there are no Search badges on the Results bar, tap the **Add New... Search** button. A Search badge is added to the Settings bar, and the Search configuration menu opens to search type of Edge (default).

The search types and settings are similar to their corresponding trigger types (Edge, Pulse Width, Runt, and so on).

You can create multiple searches for the same waveform. Each occurrence of the search condition is marked with a triangle along the top of the waveform. Marks for each search are shown in a different color.

### Other search types

[Bus Search configuration menus](#) on page 120

[Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133

[Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134

[Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135

[Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137

[Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139

[Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140

[Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141

[Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

### Bus Search configuration menus

Use a Bus search to search for and mark bus-related events (Start, Stop, Missing Acq, Address, Data, and so on) on a bus waveform.

Select a link to view the configuration menu settings for a specific bus

[Bus Search configuration menu, Parallel bus](#) on page 121

[Bus Search configuration menu, I2C bus](#) on page 122

[Bus Search configuration menu, SPI bus](#) on page 123

[Bus Search configuration menu, RS232 bus](#) on page 123

[Bus Search configuration menu, CAN bus](#) on page 124

[Bus Search configuration menu, LIN bus](#) on page 125

[Bus Search configuration menu, FlexRay bus](#) on page 126

[Bus Search configuration menu, USB bus](#) on page 128

[Bus Search configuration menu, Ethernet bus](#) on page 130

[Bus Search configuration menu, Audio bus](#) on page 132

**Bus Search configuration menu, Parallel bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the parallel bus on which to search.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on how the parallel bus is defined.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, I<sup>2</sup>C bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the I <sup>2</sup> C bus on which to search.
<b>Mark When</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Direction</b>	Sets the transfer direction on which to search.  Only available when Mark When = Address or Address & Data.
<b>Addressing Mode</b>	Sets the slave device address length (7 bits or 10 bits long).  Only available when Mark When = Address or Address & Data.
<b>Address</b>	Sets the address pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Address Mode setting.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark When = Address or Address & Data.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to search (one to five bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Only available when Mark When = Data or Address & Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Bytes setting.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark When = Data or Address & Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the character to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the character.
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, SPI bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the SPI bus on which you want to search.
<b>Mark On</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Data Words</b>	Sets the number of data words (1 word = 8 bits) on which to search (one to sixteen words). Use the A knob to change the value. Only available when Mark On = Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Words setting.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, RS232 bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the RS232 bus on which to search.
<b>Mark When</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes (1 byte = 8 bits) on which to search (one to ten bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Only available when Mark When = Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Words setting.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark When = Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, CAN bus.**

<b>Field or control</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Source</b>	Select the CAN bus on which you want to search.
<b>Mark On</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Frame Type</b>	Sets the frame type on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Type of Frame.
<b>Direction</b>	Sets the transfer direction on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Identifier.
<b>Identifier Format</b>	Sets the identifier for standard (11-bit) or extended (29-bit for CAN 2.0B) length.  Only available when Mark On = Data or ID & Data.
<b>Identifier</b>	Sets the identifier pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Identifier Format setting.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Data or ID & Data.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to search (one to eight bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Only available when Mark On = Identifier or ID & Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Bytes setting.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Identifier or ID & Data.
<b>Mark When</b>	Sets the mark when condition.  Only available when Mark On = Data or ID & Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, LIN bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select to LIN bus on which you want to search.
<b>Mark On</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Identifier</b>	Sets the identifier pattern on which to search.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Identifier or Identifier & Data.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to search (one to four bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Only available when Mark On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Bytes setting.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>Mark When</b>	Sets the mark when condition.  When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b> , fields are displayed to set a Data Low and Data High boundary pattern for the specified search range.  Only available when Mark On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, FlexRay bus.**

<b>Field or control</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Source</b>	Select the FlexRay bus on which to search.
<b>Mark On</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Indicator Bits</b>	Select the defined indicator bits type on which to search from the drop-down list.  Only available when Mark On = Indicator Bits.
<b>Indicator Bits</b>	Enter the indicator bits on which to search.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Header Fields.
<b>Identifier</b>	Enter the frame identifier pattern on which to search.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Frame ID or Header Fields.
<b>Cycle Count</b>	Enter the cycle count pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Cycle Count or Header Fields.
<b>Payload Length</b>	Enter the payload length pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Header Fields.
<b>Header CRC</b>	Enter the header CRC pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Header Fields.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Enter the number of data bytes on which to search (one to sixteen bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Only available when Mark On = Data or Identifier & Data.

Field or control	Description
<b>Data</b>	<p>Enter the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Bytes setting. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Data or Identifier &amp; Data.</p>
<b>Byte Offset</b>	<p>Sets the byte offset (Don't Care or the number of bytes). Tap the field and use the A knob to change the value.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Data or Identifier &amp; Data.</p>
<b>Mark When</b>	<p>Sets the mark when condition.</p> <p>When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b>, fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified search range.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Frame ID, Cycle Count, Data, or Identifier &amp; Data.</p>
<b>Frame Type</b>	<p>Sets the end of frame type on which to trigger.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = End of Frame.</p>
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	<p>Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.</p> <p>Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).</p>
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	<p>Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.</p>
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	<p>Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.</p>

**Bus Search configuration menu, USB bus.**

<b>Field or control</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Source</b>	Select the USB bus on which to search.
<b>Mark On</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Handshake Type</b>	Sets the handshake packet type on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Handshake Packet.
<b>Packet Type</b>	Sets the special packet type on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Special Packet.
<b>Error Type</b>	Sets the error type on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Error.
<b>Address</b>	Sets the token packet address pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Token Packet and Token Type = all except SOF (0101).
<b>Token Type</b>	Sets the token packet type on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Token Packet.
<b>Endpoint</b>	Sets the token packet endpoint pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition. Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Token Packet and Token Type = all except SOF (0101).
<b>Frame Number</b>	Sets the frame number pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Token Packet and Token Type = SOF (0101).
<b>Data Packet Type</b>	Sets the data packet type on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Data Packet.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to search (one to sixteen bytes). Tap the field and use the A knob to change the value.  Only available when Mark On = Data Packet.
<b>Byte Offset</b>	Sets the byte offset (Don't Care or the number of bytes). Tap the field and use the A knob to change the value.  Only available when Mark On = Data Packet.

Field or control	Description
<b>Data</b>	<p>Sets the data packet pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Bytes setting. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Data Packet.</p>
<b>Mark When</b>	<p>Sets the mark when condition.</p> <p>When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b>, fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified search range.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Token Packet or Data Packet.</p>
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	<p>Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.</p> <p>Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).</p>
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, Ethernet bus.**

<b>Field or control</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Source</b>	Select the Ethernet bus on which to search.
<b>Mark On</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>MAC Address Destination, MAC Address Source</b>	<p>Sets the MAC destination and/or source address pattern on which to search.</p> <p>Tap a Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Mac Addresses.</p>
<b>Q-Tag</b>	<p>Sets the Q-tag pattern on which to search.</p> <p>Tap a Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Q-Tag Control Information.</p>
<b>MAC Length/Type</b>	<p>Enter the MAC length or type pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = MAC Length/Type</p>
<b>IP Protocol</b>	<p>Sets the IP protocol pattern on which to search.</p> <p>Tap a Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = IP Header.</p>
<b>Source, Destination Address</b>	<p>Sets the source and/or destination IP address pattern on which to search.</p> <p>Tap a Hex or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = IP Header.</p>
<b>Source Port, Destination Port</b>	<p>Sets the source and/or destination TCP header port pattern on which to search.</p> <p>Tap a Binary, Hex or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = TCP Header.</p>
<b>Sequence Number</b>	<p>Sets the TCP header sequence number pattern on which to search.</p> <p>Tap a Binary, Hex or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = TCP Header.</p>
<b>Ack Number</b>	<p>Sets the TCP header ack number pattern on which to search.</p> <p>Tap a Binary, Hex or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = TCP Header.</p>

Field or control	Description
<b>Data Bytes</b>	<p>Sets the number of client data bytes on which to search (one to sixteen bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Client Data.</p>
<b>Byte Offset</b>	<p>Sets the client data byte offset (Don't Care or the number of bytes). Tap the field and use the A knob to change the value.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Client Data.</p>
<b>Client Data</b>	<p>Sets the data pattern on which to search. The number of bits shown depends on the Data Bytes setting. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact trigger condition.</p> <p>Tap the Binary, Hex or ASCII field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = Client Data.</p>
<b>Mark When</b>	<p>Sets the mark when condition.</p> <p>When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b>, fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified search range.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Only available when Mark On = MAC Length/Type or Client Data.</p>
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	<p>Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.</p> <p>Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).</p>
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Bus Search configuration menu, Audio bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the Audio bus on which to search.
<b>Mark On</b>	Select the type of information on which to search.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to search. Use in conjunction with the Mark When field to specify the exact search condition.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Data.
<b>Word</b>	Sets the audio word channel on which to search.  Only available when Mark On = Data.
<b>Mark When</b>	Sets the mark when condition for the specified data pattern.  When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b> , fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified search range.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Only available when Mark On = Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Other search types.** [Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133

[Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134

[Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135

[Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137

[Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139

[Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140

[Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141

[Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

## Edge Search configuration menu

Use the Edge search to mark when the specified edge condition occurs on an analog, digital, math, or reference waveform.

Use the Edge Search configuration menu to:

- Create a new Edge search; tap the **Add New... Search** button and set the Search Type to **Edge**.
- Change the settings on an existing Edge search; double-tap an **Edge** Search badge and make necessary changes in the Search configuration menu.

### Edge Search configuration menu fields and controls .

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Edge</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Level</b>	Sets the amplitude level that the signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Set to 50%</b>	Sets the threshold at 50% of the measured signal transition range. 50% is calculated as (Top + Bottom)/2.
<b>Slope</b>	Sets the signal transition direction to detect. (rising, falling, or either direction).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

### Other search types.

[Bus Search configuration menus](#) on page 120

[Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134

[Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135

[Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137

[Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139

[Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140

[Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141

[Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

## Logic search configuration menu

Use the Logic search to mark when specified logic conditions occur on an analog, digital, math, or reference waveform.

To use the Logic Search menu:

- To create a new Logic search, tap the **Add New... Search** button and set the Search Type to **Logic** in the configuration menu.
- To change the settings on an existing Logic search, double-tap a Logic **Search** badge and make necessary changes.

### Logic Search configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Logic</b> .
<b>Use Clock Edge?</b>	Enables or disables finding logic patterns that occur on the specified clock edge.  Yes places marks on the clock waveform wherever the logic pattern occurs.  No places marks on the input signal waveform(s) wherever the logic pattern occurs.
<b>Logic Pattern: Define Inputs</b>	Opens the Logic Search-Define Inputs configuration menu where you define the logic state (High, Low, or Don't Care), and the signal threshold level that defines the logic state for each analog or digital signal. See <a href="#">Define Inputs</a> .
<b>Mark When</b>	Defines the waveform logic event to mark, when Use Clock Edge is set to No. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Goes True:</b> All conditions change to a true state.</li> <li>■ <b>Goes False:</b> All conditions change to a false state.</li> <li>■ <b>Is True &gt; Limit:</b> Condition remains true longer than a specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Is True &lt; Limit:</b> Condition remains true for less than a specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Is True = Limit:</b> Condition remains true for a specified time (within <math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b>Is True <math>\neq</math> Limit:</b> Condition does not remain true for a specified time (within <math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Clock Source</b>	Sets the signal to use as the clock. The clock source can be an analog, digital, math, or reference waveform.
<b>Clock Edge</b>	Sets the polarity of the clock edge (rising or falling) for evaluating the other menu conditions. The Logic menu also lets you set the clock edge to either edge.
<b>Clock Threshold</b>	Sets the threshold level that the clock signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition. The clock threshold value is independent of the input signal threshold(s).
<b>Define Logic</b>	Sets the logic condition that must occur with all inputs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>AND:</b> All conditions are true.</li> <li>■ <b>OR:</b> Any condition is true.</li> <li>■ <b>NAND:</b> One or more conditions are true.</li> <li>■ <b>NOR:</b> No conditions are true.</li> </ul>
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

### Other search types.

- [Bus Search configuration menu](#) on page 120
- [Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133
- [Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135
- [Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137
- [Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139
- [Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140
- [Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141
- [Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

### Logic Search - Define Inputs configuration menu

Use the Define Inputs menu to select the logic condition to search on, and the logic threshold value, for each channel.

To open the Logic Search-Define Inputs configuration menu:

1. Double-tap a **Logic** Search badge on the Settings bar.
2. Tap the **Logic Pattern > Define Inputs** invoker button.

#### Logic Search - Define Inputs configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
Ch(x) (analog channels) or D(x) (digital Channels)	<p>Use to select the signal sources logic condition on which to perform the logic search (<b>High</b>, <b>Low</b>, <b>Don't Care</b>).</p> <p>If a channel is a digital channel, tap the <b>+</b> symbol to open the list of digital inputs (D0-D7) from which to select individual logic conditions for the digital signals.</p> <p>To set the threshold levels for digital channels, double-tap the digital Channel badge to open its configuration menu.</p> <p>Use the <b>Threshold</b> field to set the signal level that must be exceeded for that signal to be true (logical 1).</p>
<b>Set All</b>	Sets all signal sources to detect a logic <b>High</b> , <b>Low</b> , or <b>Don't Care</b> condition.

### Pulse Width Search configuration menu

Use the Pulse Width search to mark a waveform whenever the specified pulse width condition occurs.

To use the Pulse Width Search menu:

- To create a new Pulse Width search, tap the **Add New... Search** button and set the Search Type to **Pulse Width** in the Search configuration menu.
- To change the settings on an existing Pulse Width search, double-tap a **Pulse Width** Search badge and make necessary changes.

**Pulse Width Search menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Pulse Width</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Mark When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>&lt; Limit:</b> A pulse width is less than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>&gt; Limit:</b> A pulse width is greater than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>= Limit:</b> A pulse width is equal to the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b># Limit:</b> A pulse width does not equal (is greater than or less than) the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b>Inside Range:</b> A pulse width is in the specified time range (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b>Outside Range:</b> A pulse width is outside of the specified time range (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Level</b>	Sets the amplitude level that the signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Set to 50%</b>	Sets the threshold at 50% of the measured signal transition range. 50% is calculated as (Top + Bottom)/2.
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.
<b>High Time Limit</b>	Sets the longest acceptable pulse width time period for the range condition.  Only available when Mark When = Inside Range or Outside Range.
<b>Low Time Limit</b>	Sets the shortest acceptable pulse width time period for the range condition.  Only available when Mark When = Inside Range or Outside Range.
<b>Polarity</b>	Sets the polarity of the pulse to detect (positive pulse only, negative pulse only, or a positive or negative pulse).
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

**Other search types.**

- [\*Bus Search configuration menu\* on page 120](#)
- [\*Edge Search configuration menu\* on page 133](#)
- [\*Logic search configuration menu\* on page 134](#)
- [\*Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu\* on page 137](#)
- [\*Runt Search configuration menu\* on page 139](#)
- [\*Setup and Hold Search configuration menu\* on page 140](#)
- [\*Timeout Search configuration menu\* on page 141](#)
- [\*Window Search configuration menu\* on page 143](#)

**Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu**

Use the Rise/Fall Time search to mark occurrences where the rise or fall time is less than, greater than, equal to, or not equal to a specified time limit.

To use the Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu:

- To create a new Rise/Fall Time search, tap the **Add New... Search** button and set the Search Type to **Rise/Fall Time** in the Search configuration menu.
- To change the settings on an existing Rise/Fall Time search, double-tap a **Rise/Fall Time** Search badge and make necessary changes.

### Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Rise/Fall Time</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Mark When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ &lt; Limit: A signal has a rise time less than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ &gt; Limit: A signal has a rise time greater than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ = Limit: A signal has a rise time that is equal to the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ ≠ Limit: A signal has a rise time that does not equal (is greater than or less than) the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.
<b>Slope</b>	Sets the signal transition direction to detect. (rising, falling, or either direction).
<b>Upper Threshold</b>	Sets the upper threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Lower Threshold</b>	Sets the lower threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

#### Other search types.

[Bus Search configuration menus](#) on page 120

[Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133

[Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134

[Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135

[Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139

[Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140

[Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141

[Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

## Runt Search configuration menu

Use the Runt search to mark a waveform where a pulse crosses one threshold but fails to cross a second threshold before recrossing the first threshold.

To use the Runt Search configuration menu:

- To create a new Runt search, tap the **Add New... Search** button and set the Search Type to **Runt** in the Search configuration menu. Use the rest of the menu fields and controls to define the search.
- To change the settings on an existing Runt search, double-tap a **Runt** Search badge and make necessary changes.

### Runt Search configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Runt</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Mark When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Occurs:</b> A runt signal event occurs.</li> <li>■ <b>&lt; Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width less than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>&gt; Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width greater than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>= Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width that is equal to the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b><math>\neq</math> Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width that does not equal (is greater than or less than) the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.  Only available when Mark When = < Limit, > Limit, = Limit, or $\neq$ Limit.
<b>Polarity</b>	Sets the polarity of the pulse to detect (positive pulse only, negative pulse only, or a positive or negative pulse).
<b>Upper Threshold</b>	Sets the upper threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Lower Threshold</b>	Sets the lower threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

### Other search types.

- [Bus Search configuration menu](#) on page 120
- [Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133
- [Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134
- [Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135
- [Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137
- [Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140
- [Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141
- [Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

### Setup and Hold Search configuration menu

Use the Setup and Hold search type to mark a waveform when a data signal changes state inside of a specified setup and hold time, relative to a specified clock signal.

To use the Setup and Hold Search menu:

- To create a new Setup and Hold search, tap the **Add New... Search** button and set the Search Type to **Setup & Hold** in the Search configuration menu.
- To change the settings on an existing Setup and Hold search, double-tap a **Setup & Hold** Search badge and make necessary changes.

#### Setup & Hold Search configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Setup &amp; Hold</b> .
<b>Clock Source</b>	Sets the signal to use as the clock. The clock source can be an analog, digital, math, or reference waveform.
<b>Clock Level</b>	Sets the threshold level that the clock signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition. The clock threshold value is independent of the input signal threshold(s).
<b>Clock Edge</b>	Sets the polarity of the clock edge (rising or falling) for evaluating the other menu conditions. The Logic menu also lets you set the clock edge to either edge.
<b>Data Sources</b>	Sets the data signal source(s). All selected sources must meet the specified setup and hold times. See <a href="#">Setup and Hold Search - Define Inputs configuration menu</a> on page 141.
<b>Setup Time</b>	Sets the length of time that data signal should be stable and not change before a clock edge occurs.
<b>Hold Time</b>	Sets the length of time that data signal should be stable and not change after a clock edge occurs.
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

### Other search types.

[Bus Search configuration menu](#) on page 120

[Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133

[Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134

[Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135

[Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137

[Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139

[Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141

[Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

### Setup and Hold Search - Define Inputs configuration menu

Use the Define Inputs menu to select the data signal source(s) and set their threshold level(s).

To open the Setup & Hold Search - Define Inputs menu:

1. Double-tap a **Setup & Hold** Search badge on the Results bar.
2. Tap the **Data Sources > Define Inputs** button.

#### Setup and Hold Search - Define Inputs configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Ch(x) (analog channels) or D(x) (digital Channels)</b>	<p>Use to add (<b>Include</b>) or exclude (<b>Don't Include</b>) the data signal(s) from available input channels and waveforms.</p> <p>If a channel is a digital channel, tap the + symbol to open the list of digital inputs (D0-D7) from which to select for that channel.</p> <p>To set the threshold levels for digital channels, double-tap the digital Channel badge to open its configuration menu.</p> <p>For analog channels, use the threshold field to set the data signal level that must be exceeded for the signal transition to be true.</p>
<b>Set All</b>	Use to <b>Include</b> or <b>Don't Include</b> all available channels and waveforms as data signals.

### Timeout Search configuration menu

Use the Timeout search to mark a waveform when it does not detect an expected pulse transition within a specified period of time, such as when a signal gets stuck either high or low.

To use the Timeout Search menu:

- To create a new Timeout search, tap the **Add New... Search** button and set the Search Type to **Timeout** in the Search configuration menu.
- To change the settings on an existing Timeout search, double-tap a **Timeout** Search badge and make necessary changes.

### Timeout Search menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Timeout</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Mark When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Stays High:</b> The signal stays above the specified threshold level longer than the specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Stays Low:</b> The signal stays below the specified threshold level longer than the specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Either:</b> The signal stays above or below the specified threshold level longer than the specified time.</li> </ul>
<b>Threshold</b>	Sets the amplitude level that the signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Set to 50%</b>	Sets the threshold at 50% of the measured signal transition range. 50% is calculated as (Top + Bottom)/2.
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

### Other search types.

[Bus Search configuration menus](#) on page 120

[Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133

[Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134

[Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135

[Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137

[Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139

[Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140

[Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

## Window Search configuration menu

Use the Window search to mark a waveform when the signal rises above an upper threshold level or falls below a lower threshold level (the 'window'), with or without a time limit constraint.

To use the Window Search menu:

- To change the settings on an existing Window search, double-tap a **Window** Search badge and make necessary changes.
- To create a new Window search, tap the **Add New Search** button and set the Search Type to **Window** in the Search configuration menu.

### Window Search menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Sets the display of the mark icons on or off. If you have multiple searches defined, the control turns off just the marks for the selected search.
<b>Search Type</b>	Set to <b>Window</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Mark When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Enters Window:</b> The signal outside a window enters the window defined by the upper and lower threshold settings.</li> <li>■ <b>Exits Window:</b> The signal exits the window defined by the upper and lower threshold settings.</li> <li>■ <b>Inside &gt; Limit:</b> The signal remains inside the window longer than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>Outside &gt; Limit:</b> The signal remains outside the window longer than the specified time limit.</li> </ul>
<b>Upper Threshold</b>	Sets the amplitude threshold value for the upper edge of the window.
<b>Lower Threshold</b>	Sets the amplitude threshold value for the lower edge of the window.
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.  Only available when Mark When = Inside > Limit or Outside > Limit.
<b>Threshold Crossing</b>  (Trigger When = Outside > Limit)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Upper:</b> A signal remains above the upper threshold level for longer than the specified time limit before crossing the upper threshold level to a lower level.</li> <li>■ <b>Lower:</b> A signal remains below the lower threshold level for longer than the specified time limit before crossing the lower threshold level to a higher level.</li> <li>■ <b>Either:</b> A signal remains outside (above or below) the two threshold levels for longer than the specified time limit before crossing either threshold level.</li> <li>■ <b>None:</b> A signal remains outside the two specified threshold levels for longer than a specified time limit.</li> </ul>
<b>Threshold Crossing</b>  (Trigger When = Inside > Limit)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Upper:</b> A signal remains between two thresholds for longer than the specified time limit before crossing through the upper threshold.</li> <li>■ <b>Lower:</b> A signal remains between two thresholds for longer than the specified time limit before crossing through the lower threshold.</li> <li>■ <b>Either:</b> A signal remains between two thresholds for longer than the specified time limit before crossing through either the upper or lower threshold.</li> <li>■ <b>None:</b> A signal remains between two threshold levels for longer than a specified time limit.</li> </ul>
<b>Copy Trigger Settings to Search</b>	Sets the search criteria to match the current oscilloscope trigger settings.
<b>Copy Search Settings to Trigger</b>	Sets the current oscilloscope trigger settings to match the search criteria.

### Other search types.

- [Bus Search configuration menu](#) on page 120
- [Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133
- [Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134
- [Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135
- [Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137
- [Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139
- [Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140
- [Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141

## Measurement configuration menu overview

Use this configuration menu to add statistics to a measurement badge readout, plot a measurement, and change measurement settings including source, scope (global or local), reference levels, gating, clock recovery, bandwidth filters, and results limits.

To open a Measurement configuration menu for a measurement, double-tap a Measurement badge in the Results bar. The configuration menu and panels only show fields and controls relevant to the selected measurement.

The menu opens on the measurement name panel (the name of the measurement), which provides controls to display additional statistics to the measurement badge, display plots of the measurement, and so on. The content of the measurement name panel depends on the measurement. The most common Measurement Name fields are listed in the following table.

### Measurement configuration menu fields, controls, and panels

Field, control, or panel	Description
<b>Measurement Statistics</b> (Measurement name panel)	A list of measurement statistics related to the measurement. You can add these statistics to a measurement badge by selecting the <b>Show Statistics in Badge</b> control.
<b>Show Statistics in Badge</b> (Measurement name panel)	Adds the listed statistical measurement readouts to the measurement badge readout.
<b>Plots</b> (Measurement name panel)	Buttons that open Plot views of the measurement. Available plots depend on the measurement. Plot types include Time Trend, Histogram, Spectrum, and Eye Diagram (for jitter measurements). To add a plot to the screen, tap the plot button.  See <a href="#">Add Plot configuration menu</a> on page 115.
<b>Configure panel</b>	Sets the source, label text, and other fields that are specific to each measurement type.  See <a href="#">Configure panel (Measurement configuration menu)</a> on page 147.
<b>Reference Levels panel</b>	Sets the reference levels and units used to take measurements, the scope of the reference level settings (global or local), and the method used to calculate the Top and Base waveform values.  See <a href="#">Reference Levels panel (Measurement Settings menu)</a> on page 148.
<b>Clock Recovery panel</b> (jitter measurements)	Sets the clock recovery settings for some jitter measurements.  See <a href="#">Clock Recovery panel (Measurement configuration menu)</a> on page 150.

Field, control, or panel	Description
<b>Gating panel</b>	Sets the measurement region (gate) used to take measurements. Select the scope of the gate setting (global or local), and the type of gating to use.  See <a href="#">Gating panel (Measurement configuration menu)</a> on page 155.
<b>Filter/Limit Results panel</b>	Sets the scope of the filtering setting (global or local), high and low pass filter settings, the range of measurement result limits, and the limit measurement population size.  See <a href="#">Filter/Limit Results panel (Measurement Settings menu)</a> on page 156.

### Measurement Name panel (Measurement configuration menu)

The Measurement Name panel (the name of the measurement) provides controls for adding display statistics to the measurement badge and opening plots of the measurement.

To open the measurement name panel, double-tap a Measurement badge. This is the default panel shown when you open a Measurement settings menu.

The content of the Measurement Name panel depends on the measurement.

Field or control	Description
<b>Measurement Statistics</b>	A list of measurement statistics. You can add these statistics to a measurement badge by selecting the <b>Show Statistics in Badge</b> control.
<b>Show Statistics in Badge</b>	Select to add the listed statistical measurement readouts to the measurement badge.
<b>Plots</b>	Adds a Plot view of the measurement value to the screen. Available plots depend on the measurement. Plot types include Time Trend, Histogram, Spectrum, and Eye Diagram (for jitter measurements).  Trend adds the trend plot to the Waveform view.

#### See also.

[Configure panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 147

[Reference Levels panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 148

[Clock Recovery panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 150

[Gating panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 155

[Filter/Limit Results panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 156

## Configure panel (Measurement configuration menu)

Use the Configure panel to set the measurement source(s), add a custom name (label) for the measurement, and other parameters.

To open the Configure panel:

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge to open the Measurement configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Configure** panel.

Not all items listed are shown for all measurements; The panel only shows fields and controls relevant to the selected measurement.

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Sets the signal source used to take the measurement. Tap the field to show the list of available sources. If the measurement requires more than one source, multiple Source fields are displayed.
<b>Label</b>	Sets the name of the measurement. You can use the default name, or double-tap in the field and change the label using a connected keyboard or the virtual keyboard.
<b>Signal Type</b>	Sets the signal type (Clock, Data, Auto) of the source signal for some measurements.
<b>Edge, Clock edge</b>	Sets the edge of the signal to use for starting the measurement.
<b>From Edge</b>	Sets the Source 1 waveform edge on which to start the measurement, for two-source measurements.
<b>To Edge</b>	Sets the Source 2 waveform edge on which to stop the measurement, for two-source measurements.
<b>Calculate One Measurement Per</b>	Sets the amount of waveform data to use to calculate one measurement; one measurement across the entire waveform record or one measurement for each cycle of the waveform in the record.
<b>Pattern Detection</b>	Auto attempts to detect the type of pattern and set
<b>Pattern Type</b>	Sets whether the source signal data is a Repeating pattern or an Arbitrary pattern type.
<b>Pattern Length</b>	Sets the pattern length to use when Pattern Type = Repeating.
<b>Window Length</b>	Sets the overall window length to use when Pattern Type = Arbitrary.

### Other measurement panels.

[Measurement Name panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 146

[Reference Levels panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 148

[Clock Recovery panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 150

[Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu](#) on page 154

[Gating panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 155

[Filter/Limit Results panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 156

### **Reference Levels panel (Measurement Settings menu)**

Use the Reference Levels panel to set the scope of the reference level settings (global or local), the reference levels (High, Mid, and Low), the units used to take measurements, and the method used to calculate the Top and Base waveform values. You can set the levels to be the same or different for rising and falling edges.

To open the Reference Levels panel:

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge.
2. Tap the **Reference Levels** panel.

### Reference Levels panel- fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Reference Levels</b>	<p>Global sets whether the reference levels defined in this measurement apply to all measurements that are set to global (the default setting).</p> <p>Local sets the Reference Level parameters to apply to just this measurement.</p>
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source signals used for each edge of the measurement.
<b>Set Levels In</b>	Sets the method used to set or calculate the High, Mid, and Low reference levels. Select % or Units and use the Multipurpose Knob to set custom reference values.
<b>Levels</b>	<p>Sets the reference levels as specified percentages of the Top and Base waveform measurement.</p> <p>To set custom reference values, tap <b>Custom</b>, tap a setting field, and use the Multipurpose Knob to set the different % (relative) or absolute values.</p> <p><b>High</b> and <b>Low</b> references are used to calculate rise and fall times. The default High reference is 90% and Low reference is 10%.</p> <p><b>Mid</b> reference is primarily used for measurements between edges such as pulse widths. The default level is 50%.</p>
<b>Base Top Method</b>	<p>Sets the method to calculate the waveform Base and Top values, which is then used to calculate the High, Mid, and Low reference levels.</p> <p><b>Auto</b> is the default method, and automatically determines the best Base Top method to use. Most commonly sets the Top Base method to Histogram Mode.</p> <p><b>MinMax</b> Uses the minimum and maximum values in the waveform record to determine the base and top amplitude. Useful on a waveform with low noise and free from excessive overshoot.</p> <p><b>Histogram Mean</b> uses histogram analysis to calculate the mean or average value using all values above and below the waveform midpoint. Top is set to the mean high value, and Base is set to the mean low value.</p> <p><b>Histogram Mode</b> uses histogram analysis to calculate the most common values above and below the waveform midpoint. Top is set to the common high value, and Base is set to the common low value.</p> <p><b>Histogram Eye Center</b> uses histogram analysis to determine the base top amplitude. Creates a histogram of the amplitudes in the center of each bit (unit interval) while ignoring the waveform during bit transitions. The histogram should have a peak at the nominal high level and another peak at the nominal low level.</p> <p><b>NOTE.</b> If you set the Base Top Method to other than Auto, and do not change the Reference Levels mode to Local, many existing measurements, as well as measurements that you add to the Results bar, will use the new Base Top Method values for taking measurements. This may result in measurement values that you are not expecting.</p>

Field or control	Description
Hysteresis	Sets the threshold margin to the reference level which the signal must cross to be recognized as changing; the margin is the relative reference level plus or minus half the hysteresis. Use hysteresis to filter out spurious events. Tap the field and use the Multipurpose Knob to change the value.

#### Other measurement settings panels.

[Measurement Name panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 146

[Configure panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 147

[Clock Recovery panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 150

[Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu](#) on page 154

[Gating panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 155

[Filter/Limit Results panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 156

#### Clock Recovery panel (Measurement configuration menu)

Clock recovery refers to the process of establishing a reference clock, the edges of which can be used as a basis for timing comparisons. Use the Clock Recovery panel to configure the clock recovery settings for measurements that require a clock signal.

To access the Clock Recovery panel:

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge on the Results bar that uses clock recovery (such as jitter measurements), to open the Meas configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Clock Recovery** panel.

### Measurement configuration menu, Clock Recovery panel.

Field or control	Description
<b>Clock Recovery</b>	<p><b>Global</b> sets whether the Clock Recovery settings defined in this panel apply to all measurements with clock recovery settings that are set to global (the default setting).</p> <p><b>Local</b> sets the Clock Recovery parameters to apply to just this measurement.</p>
<b>Method</b>	<p><b>PLL</b> simulates the behavior of the specified hardware Phase Locked Loop clock recovery circuit to derive the clock signal.</p> <p><b>Constant Clock</b> uses linear regression so that the recovered clock minimizes the mean squared sum of the Time Interval Error (TIE) for that waveform.</p> <p><b>Explicit Clock</b> derives the reference clock from a specified channel other than the one upon which the measurement is defined.</p>
<b>Standard</b>	<p>Sets the standard to use for the PLL model. Information for a selected standard is listed under the drop-down list.</p> <p>Only available when Method = PLL.</p>
<b>Mode</b>	<p><b>Mean</b> chooses both the frequency and the phase to minimize the mean squared error. Available when Method = Constant Clock.</p> <p><b>Median</b> chooses the phase so that the median error between the recovered and measured edges is zero. Only available when Method = Constant Clock.</p> <p><b>Fixed</b> uses the specified frequency but chooses the phase so that the median error between the recovered and measured edges is zero. Only available when Method = Constant Clock.</p> <p><b>Select Explicit Clock-Edge</b> method if you want to use the edges found in the selected clock source (possibly multiplied up by an integral number). If the Clock Multiplier is set to 1 (the default), only these edges will be used. If the Clock Multiplier is set to a number N other than 1, linear interpolation will be used between each pair of actual edges to create N-1 additional reference edges. The interpolated edge times, combined with the actual edges, give a total of N reference edge times per actual edge. Only available when Method = Explicit Clock.</p> <p><b>Select Explicit Clock-PLL</b> as the clock recovery method if you want to feed the edges from the selected clock source through a PLL rather than using them directly. The actual edges from the clock source will be used to drive a software PLL model, and the edge times coming out of the PLL will be used as the reference edges for the target measurement. If the Clock Multiplier is set to a number N other than 1, the output of the PLL will have N edges per actual edge. Only available when Method = Explicit Clock.</p>

Field or control	Description
<b>Calculate On</b>	<p><b>First Acq.</b> sets the clock-recovery algorithm to choose a new best-fit clock frequency and phase on just the first acquisition. Subsequent acquisitions will choose a best fit on clock phase but retain the clock frequency found in the first acquisition.</p> <p><b>Every Acq.</b> the clock-recovery algorithm to choose a new best-fit clock frequency and phase for each new oscilloscope acquisition.</p> <p>Clearing the measurement results will reset the clock recovery so that both frequency and phase are optimized on the subsequent acquisition.</p> <p>Only available when Method = Constant Clock and Mode = Mean or Median.</p>
<b>Clock Frequency</b>	<p>Sets the clock frequency to use in Fixed mode. The clock in the waveform is ignored; the instrument uses the specified frequency, with the clock phase determined by best fit.</p> <p><b>NOTE.</b> This method typically results in a closed eye.</p>
	<p>Only available when Method = Constant Clock and Mode = Fixed.</p>
<b>Loop BW</b>	<p>Sets the PLL loop bandwidth. Displays the Closed Loop bandwidth that has been configured based on the current standard.</p>
	<p>Only available when Method = PLL.</p>
<b>Clock Source</b>	<p>Sets the source for the explicit clock.</p>
	<p>Only available when Method = Explicit Clock.</p>
<b>Clock Edge</b>	<p>Set whether the rising, falling or both edges of the clock source should be considered.</p>
	<p>Only available when Method = Explicit Clock.</p>
<b>Clock Multiplier</b>	<p>Set the number of edges to be used.</p> <p>If the Clock Multiplier is set to 1 (the default), only these edges will be used. If the Clock Multiplier is set to a number N other than 1, linear interpolation will be used between each pair of actual edges to create N-1 additional reference edges. The interpolated edge times, combined with the actual edges, give a total of N reference edge times per actual edge.</p>
	<p>Only available when Method = Explicit Clock.</p>
<b>Clock Offset</b>	<p>Set to Auto or Manual.</p>
<b>Offset</b>	<p>Sets the clock offset amount relative to data.</p> <p>To compare the reference clock times to the edge times from the data source, some assumptions must be made about how they align. The default assumption is that each data source edge is associated with the reference clock edge to which it is nearest in time. This assumption may not be optimum, for example if the probes for the reference clock and data signal have different cable lengths.</p> <p>Only available when Clock Offset = Manual.</p>

Field or control	Description
<b>PLL Model</b>	<p>Select the PLL model type. The PLL control area provides control over the phase-locked loop used for clock recovery. You can choose the loop bandwidth and the loop order, and if a Type II loop is chosen, you can specify the damping factor.</p> <p>To set the loop bandwidth automatically, based on a serial standard, select PLL: Standard BW as the clock recovery method. From the Standard: b/s list box, select the standard that matches your data link. For example, choose "PCI-E: 2.5" to test a 2.5 Gbit/second PCI Express link. In this case, the PLL bandwidth will be set to 1.5 MHz, which is 1/1667 of the baud rate as specified in PCI Express standard.</p> <p>You can use the PLL Model list box to choose between Type I and Type II loop. A Type I loop has a transfer function that approaches zero frequency with a slope of 1/s and a Type II loop approaches zero frequency with a 1/s<sup>2</sup> slope (In much of the PLL literature, these terms are used interchangeably with First-Order and Second-Order loops. For a thorough discussion of loop type versus order, see Frequency Synthesis by Phase Lock, by William Egan).</p> <p>Only available when Method = Explicit Clock and Mode = Explicit Clock - PLL.</p>
<b>JTF BW</b>	<p>Displays or sets the Jitter Transfer Function bandwidth that has been configured based on the current standard.</p> <p>Only available when Method = Explicit Clock and Mode = Explicit Clock - PLL and PLL Model = Type II.</p>
<b>Damping</b>	<p>Sets the damping factor for the PLL. It is enabled only for Type II phase-locked loop.</p> <p>Only available when Method = Explicit Clock and Mode = Explicit Clock - PLL and PLL Model = Type II.</p>
<b>Advanced</b>	<p>Opens the Clock Recovery-Advanced Settings configuration menu to refine the recovered clock signal. See <a href="#">Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu</a> on page 154.</p> <p>Only available when Method = PLL.</p>

**About constant clock recovery.** In Constant Clock Recovery, the clock is assumed to be of the form  $A \cdot \sin(2\pi f t + \phi)$ , where the frequency ( $f$ ) and phase are treated as unknown constants. Once a source waveform has been acquired and the edges extracted, one or both of these constants are determined using linear regression, so that the recovered clock minimizes the mean squared sum of the Time Interval Error (TIE) for that waveform.

**About PLL loop BW versus JTF BW.** Phase locked loops are characterized according to their bandwidth (BW), and several different bandwidths are commonly used. The terminology used for these bandwidths is described here, since it varies somewhat across different industries.

- Loop BW (or Closed Loop BW) is the frequency at which the closed-loop gain has fallen to -3 dB (half power) relative to unity-gain. The closed-loop gain function has the character of a low-pass filter.
- JTF BW (Jitter Transfer Function BW or Error Function BW) is the frequency below which input jitter to a tracking loop is removed. The JTF BW has a high-pass filter characteristic.

For Type I loops, the Loop BW and the JTF BW are always equal. For Type II loops, these two bandwidths are different, and their ratio depends on the PLL damping factor. You can choose to specify either bandwidth, and the other is displayed for reference.

**PLL-based clock recovery.** PLL-based clock recovery is implemented using a software model of a hardware PLL circuit, sequentially processing waveform transitions and adjusting the clock period in a feedback loop. This approach means that the transition density of the input signal has subtle effects on the effective bandwidth and damping factor of the feedback loop, just as it does with actual hardware PLLs. The influence of transition density is only relevant for data signals, since clock signals (or data signals with a two bit pattern) have 100% transition density.

#### Other measurement settings panels.

[Measurement Name panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 146

[Configure panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 147

[Reference Levels panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 148

[Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu](#) on page 154

[Gating panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 155

[Filter/Limit Results panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 156

#### Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu

Sets advanced clock recovery settings such as defining a nominal data rate or basing clock recovery on a known data pattern.

To open the Clock Recovery-Advanced Settings configuration menu:

1. Double-tap a measurement that requires clock recovery information (such as jitter measurements).
2. Tap the **Clock Recovery** panel
3. Tap the **Advanced** button.

#### Clock Recovery-Advanced Settings configuration menu, fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Advanced Clock Recovery Method</b>	Sets the method used to recover a clock from the measured signal. Available selections are <b>None</b> (default), <b>Nominal Data Rate</b> and <b>Known Data Pattern</b> .
<b>Bit Rate</b>	Sets the clock bit rate. The <b>Bit Rate</b> field is only present when <b>Advanced Clock Recovery Method</b> is set to <b>Nominal Data Rate</b> .
<b>Pattern File</b>	Drop-down list with 20 most recent pattern files loaded onto the oscilloscope.  Available when Advanced Clock Recovery = Known Data Pattern.
<b>Browse</b>	Opens a standard file navigation window. Use to navigate to and select a pattern file.

#### See also.

[Measurement Name panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 146

[Configure panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 147

[Reference Levels panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 148

[Clock Recovery panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 150

[Gating panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 155

[Filter/Limit Results panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 156

## Gating panel (Measurement configuration menu)

Use Gating to confine a measurement to a certain part of a waveform.

To open the **Gating** panel:

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge in the Results bar to open the Measurement configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Gating** panel.

**Gating panel, fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Gating</b>	Sets whether this measurements gating settings are <b>Global</b> or <b>Local</b> . When <b>Global</b> is selected, changing anything in this panel causes the same change to all other measurements that also have <b>Global</b> selected.  When <b>Local</b> is selected, settings in this panel only effect this measurement.
<b>Gating Type</b>	Sets the gate type used to take measurements.  <b>None</b> : Measurements are taken across the entire record.  <b>Screen</b> : Measurements are taken on the portion of the waveform shown on the display. When zoom is on, the 'display' on which to measure is the zoom window.  <b>Cursors</b> : Measurements are taken on the portion of the waveform between the cursors.  <b>Logic</b> : Measurements are taken only when the logical state of a specified waveform is true.
<b>Source</b>	Sets the source to use for Logic or Search gates.  If Gating Type = <b>Logic</b> , the Source field lists all analog channels, math waveforms and reference waveforms.  If Gating Type = <b>Search</b> , the Source field lists all defined searches.
<b>Threshold</b>	Sets the threshold value for the Logic gate source to be considered a logic 1 value.
<b>Hysteresis</b>	Sets the Hysteresis value for the Logic gate source.
<b>Active</b>	Sets the logic state value for the Logic gate source.

**See also.**

[Measurement Name panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 146

[Configure panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 147

[Reference Levels panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 148

[Clock Recovery panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 150

[Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu](#) on page 154

[Filter/Limit Results panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 156

## Filter/Limit Results panel (Measurement Settings menu)

Use these settings to apply a High Pass and/or Low Pass filter to block specified frequency band components when taking measurements. Use the limit controls to set range of measurement values to measure, and the number of measurements to take (population).

To open the **Filter/Limit Results** panel:

1. Double-tap a Measurement badge.
2. Tap the **Filter/Limit Results** panel.

**Filter/Limit Results panel fields and controls.** Not all items listed in the table may be shown for all measurements; The panel only shows fields and controls relevant to the selected measurement.

Field or control	
<b>Filter Measurement Results</b>	Sets whether this measurement's filter and limits settings are <b>Global</b> or <b>Local</b> .  When set to <b>Global</b> (the default), changing anything in this panel causes the same change to all other measurement filter and limit settings that also have Global selected.  When set to <b>Local</b> , changing anything in this panel only effects this measurement.
<b>High Pass Filter</b>	Blocks the low frequency band and passes only the high frequency band of the waveform.  Select a Butterworth filter order (No Filter (default), 1st, 2nd, or 3rd) and enter the roll-off frequency in the field.
<b>FP Freq (F1)</b>	High Pass filter cut-off frequency at which the filter magnitude falls by 3 dB.
<b>Low Pass Filter</b>	Blocks the high frequency band and passes only the low frequency band of the waveform.  Select a Butterworth filter order (No Filter (default), 1st, 2nd, or 3rd) and enter the roll-off frequency in the field.
<b>LP Freq (F2)</b>	Low Pass filter cut-off frequency at which the filter magnitude falls by 3 dB.
<b>Limit Measurement Results</b>	Limit taking measurements results to those that are within the specified Min Value and Max value range.
<b>Limit Measurement Population</b>	Limit measurements to the specified number of measurements.

### Other measurement settings panels.

[Measurement Name panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 146

[Configure panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 147

[Reference Levels panel \(Measurement Settings menu\)](#) on page 148

[Clock Recovery panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 150

[Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings configuration menu](#) on page 154

[Gating panel \(Measurement configuration menu\)](#) on page 155

## Analog Channel configuration menu

Use the Analog Channel configuration menu to set up analog channel vertical settings, probe settings, deskew settings, external attenuation, and alternate units for analog channel inputs.

To open an analog Channel configuration menu, double-tap an analog Channel badge. The following text describes analog channel settings. For digital channel settings, see [Digital channel configuration menu](#) on page 183.

### Vertical Settings panel, fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Tap to toggle display of the channel On and Off.
<b>Vertical Scale</b>	Double-tap the field to set the scale using the multipurpose knob, a virtual keypad, or tap the up or down arrows to change the scale.
<b>Offset</b>	Double-tap the field to set the offset using the virtual keypad.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Tap to set the offset to 0.
<b>Position</b>	Double-tap the field to set the vertical position using the virtual keypad.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Tap to set the waveform zero volt level to the center of the slice or waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Double-tap the field to add a label to the channel display using the virtual keypad.
<b>Coupling</b>	Tap to set the input coupling to DC or AC.
<b>Termination</b>	Tap to set the input termination to $1\text{ M}\Omega$ or $50\ \Omega$ . If you are using a supported TekVPI probe, this value is automatically set by the probe and these controls are not available.
<b>Bandwidth Limit</b>	Tap to select the bandwidth limit from the drop-down list.
<b>Other settings panels</b>	
<b>Probe Setup</b>	<p>Use to see probe information, check the probe compensation status, compensate the probe, or restore the factory defaults.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Probe Setup panel (Channel configuration menu)</a> on page 158.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Probe Compensation configuration menu (analog channels Probe Setup panel)</a> on page 159.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Unsupported Probe dialog</a> on page 158.</p>
<b>Other</b>	<p>Use to adjust signal delay to align signal arrival at the oscilloscope between probes and/or cables.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Other panel (Channel configuration menu)</a> on page 159.</p>

## Probe Setup panel (Channel configuration menu)

Use the Channel configuration menu Probe Setup panel to see probe information, check the probe compensation status, compensate the probe, or restore the factory defaults.

To open the Probe Setup panel:

1. Double-tap an analog Channel badge on the Settings bar to open the Channel configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Probe Setup** panel.

**Probe Setup panel fields and controls.** Available fields and controls vary with the type of probe that is attached. For more information, consult the probe documentation.

Field or control	Description
Probe Information	View probe information such as probe type, serial number, and its attenuation.
Probe Compensation Status	View the probe compensation status: Default, Pass, or Fail.
Compensate Probe	Tap to display the probe compensation dialog. This is only available for probes that support automatic compensation.

### See also.

[Unsupported Probe dialog](#) on page 158

[Probe Compensation configuration menu \(analog channels Probe Setup panel\)](#) on page 159

[Other panel \(Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 159

[Deskew configuration menu \(Other panel, Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 160

## Unsupported Probe dialog

This dialog tells you that you have attached an unsupported probe.

To open the Unsupported Probe dialog:

1. Double-tap a Channel badge to open the channel configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Probe Setup** panel.
3. Read the Probe Information.

If you have attached an unsupported probe, remove the unsupported probe and attach a supported probe to the input channel.

### See also.

[Unsupported Probe dialog](#) on page 158

[Probe Compensation configuration menu \(analog channels Probe Setup panel\)](#) on page 159

[Other panel \(Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 159

[Deskew configuration menu \(Other panel, Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 160

## Probe Compensation configuration menu (analog channels Probe Setup panel)

Use this menu to compensate probes that support automatic frequency compensation. This menu is only available when a compensation-supported probe is installed on the channel.

To open the Probe Compensation dialog:

1. Double-tap the Channel badge on the Settings bar to open the channel configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Probe Setup** panel.
3. Tap **Compensate Probe**.

**Probe Compensation dialog.** Available fields and controls vary with the type of probe that is attached. For more information, consult the probe documentation. Read the information on the menu before starting the probe compensation process.

Field or control	Description
<b>Compensate Probe</b>	Tap to compensate the attached probe. Before compensating the probe, read the instructions in the dialog.
<b>Restore Factory Defaults</b>	Tap to restore the probe compensation factory defaults and remove the previous compensation results.
<b>Probe Compensation Status</b>	Probe compensation status can be Running, Passed, Failed or Default.
<b>OK</b>	Tap to close the dialog.

### See also.

[Unsupported Probe dialog](#) on page 158

[Probe Compensation configuration menu \(analog channels Probe Setup panel\)](#) on page 159

[Other panel \(Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 159

[Deskew configuration menu \(Other panel, Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 160

## Other panel (Channel configuration menu)

Use the Other panel to set the channel deskew, external attenuation, and alternate vertical scale units.

To open the analog Channel configuration menu Other panel:

1. Double-tap an analog Channel badge on the Settings bar to open the Channel configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Other** panel.

**Other panel fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Deskew</b>	Sets or displays the probe deskew value.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the probe deskew value to zero (0) seconds.
<b>Multi-Channel</b>	Opens a Deskew configuration menu that allows you to deskew multiple channels (two at a time).
<b>External Attenuation</b>	Double-tap the numeric fields to set the external attenuation using the virtual keypad.
<b>Set to Unity</b>	Sets the external attenuation to unity.
<b>Alternate Units</b>	Toggles Alternate Units On or Off. Use to set custom vertical measurement units. The vertical scale will show the entered measurement units.
<b>Units</b>	Double-tap to enter alternate units using the virtual keyboard. Only shown when Alternate Units = On.
<b>Ratio</b>	Double-tap the numeric fields to set the ratio using the virtual keypad. Only shown when Alternate Units = On.
<b>Set to Unity</b>	Sets the ratio to unity. Only shown when Alternate Units = On.

**See also.**[Unsupported Probe dialog](#) on page 158[Probe Compensation configuration menu \(analog channels Probe Setup panel\)](#) on page 159[Other panel \(Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 159[Deskew configuration menu \(Other panel, Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 160**Deskew configuration menu (Other panel, Channel configuration menu)**

Use the Deskew configuration menu to make display and measurement adjustments for analog probes that have differing propagation delays. This is especially important when using a current probe in conjunction with a voltage probe.

To open the Deskew configuration menu:

1. Double-tap an analog Channel badge on the Settings bar to open the Channel configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Other** panel.
3. Tap the **Multi-Channel** button.

Use the controls in the Deskew menu to set the deskew parameters to recommended values, based on the nominal propagation delay of supported probes. The oscilloscope automatically loads the nominal propagation delay values of TekVPI and TekProbe II probes (TekProbe II probes require use of a TPA-BNC adaptor).

---

**NOTE.** This deskew menu does not actively test and adjust the probe delay between channels; it uses the delay values stored in supported probes, or a custom propagation delay value that you enter, to set the propagation delay to zero between the reference channel probe and one or more other probes.

To actively adjust probe delay using a signal, see [Deskew analog input channels - quick visual method](#) on page 46 and [Deskew analog input channels - measurement method](#) on page 47.

---

**Deskew menu fields and controls.** Available fields and controls vary with the type of probe that is attached. For more information, consult the probe documentation.

Field or control	Description
<b>From Source</b>	Tap and select from the drop-down list the channel to deskew from (your reference channel for deskewing).
<b>To Source</b>	Tap and select from the drop-down list the channel to deskew to (the channel that you want to match the From Source reference channel).
<b>Probe</b>	If the oscilloscope recognizes the probe attached to the channel, the Probe field shows the nomenclature of the attached probe.  If the oscilloscope does not recognize the probe attached to the channel, the Probe field shows a drop-down list from which you can select the probe that is attached to the selected channel.  If the attached probe is not in the list, select Custom (at the bottom of the list) and enter the probe propagation delay in the Prop. Delay field.
<b>Prop. Delay</b>	Field in which you can enter the probe delay for an unsupported probe. Double-tap in the field and use the keypad to enter the propagation delay value.  This field is available when Probe = Custom.
<b>Propagation Delay</b>	This field lists the default propagation delay of the attached probe. A positive value shifts a channel to the left.
<b>OK, deskew</b>	Sets the oscilloscope to add or subtract the delay values of the To Source channel such that the delay between the two channels is as close to 0 as possible.

**See also.**

[Unsupported Probe dialog](#) on page 158

[Probe Compensation configuration menu \(analog channels Probe Setup panel\)](#) on page 159

[Other panel \(Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 159

[Deskew configuration menu \(Other panel, Channel configuration menu\)](#) on page 160

## AFG configuration menu

Use the AFG configuration menu to set the output signal parameters for the optional arbitrary/function generator. Use the AFG to simulate signals within a design or add noise to signals to perform margin testing.

To open the AFG configuration menu:

1. If Off, tap the **AFG** button on the Settings bar. When Output is set to On, the oscilloscope changes the AFG button to an AFG badge that shows the AFG settings.
2. If On, double-tap the AFG badge to open the AFG menu.

### Arbitrary/Function Generator overview

The function generator provides output of predefined waveforms up to 50 MHz. Choose between Sine, Square, Pulse, Ramp, DC, Noise, Sin(x)/x, Gaussian, Lorentz, Exponential Rise, Exponential Decay, Haversine, Cardiac and Arbitrary signals.

You can select a predefined waveform or load a saved .wfm-format waveform from storage (USB drive or network). You can also use a .CSV (spreadsheet) waveform file stored externally.

### Arbitrary/Function Generator menu fields and controls

Not all items listed in the table may be shown for all measurements. The configuration menu only shows fields and controls relevant to the selected Waveform Type.

The output connector is on the rear panel, labeled AFG Out.

Field or control	Description
<b>Output</b>	Tap to toggle the output On or Off.
<b>Waveform Type</b>	Tap to select an available waveform from the list.
<b>Load</b>	Tap to open the Directory configuration menu. Navigate to and select a waveform file to load into the AFG memory.  Only shown when Waveform Type = Arbitrary.
<b>Waveform File</b>	Shows the loaded waveform file path and name. Tap to select a waveform file to load into the AFG waveform memory from the drop-down list of the last 20 waveforms that have been loaded using the <b>Load</b> button.
<b>Symmetry</b>	Sets the symmetry of the ramp using the keypad or multipurpose knob.  Only shown when the Waveform Type = Ramp.
<b>Width</b>	Sets the width of the pulse using the keypad or multipurpose knob.  Only shown when the Waveform Type = Pulse.
<b>Duty Cycle</b>	Sets the duty cycle of the square wave using the keypad or multipurpose knob.  Only shown when the Waveform Type = Square.
<b>Frequency</b>	Sets the frequency of the waveform using the keypad or multipurpose knob. The frequency range is 0.1 Hz to 50 MHz, in increments of 0.1 Hz.
<b>Period</b>	Sets the period of the waveform using the keypad or multipurpose knob.
<b>Amplitude</b>	Sets the amplitude of the waveform using the keypad or multipurpose knob
<b>Offset</b>	Sets the offset of the waveform using the keypad or multipurpose knob.
<b>High Level</b>	Sets the High signal amplitude of the waveform using the keypad or multipurpose knob

Field or control	Description
<b>Low Level</b>	Sets the low signal amplitude of the waveform using the keypad or multipurpose knob.
<b>Load Impedance</b>	Tap to select either <b>50 Ω</b> or <b>High Z</b> (1 MΩ) output load impedance.
<b>Add Noise</b>	Tap the check box to toggle noise on and off. Set the amount of noise to add to the output signal using the keypad or the multipurpose controls.

### AFG output amplitude ranges by impedance (peak to peak)

Waveform	50 Ω	High Z
<b>Sine</b>	10 mV to 2.5 V	20 mV to 5 V
<b>Square</b>	10 mV to 2.5 V	20 mV to 5 V
<b>Pulse</b>	10 mV to 2.5 V	20 mV to 5 V
<b>Ramp</b>	10 mV to 2.5 V	20 mV to 5 V
<b>DC</b>	0 V to $\pm$ 1.25 V	0 V to $\pm$ 2.5 V
<b>Noise</b>	10 mV to 2.5 V	20 mV to 5 V
<b>Sine(x)/x</b>	10 mV to 1.5 V	20 mV to 3 V
<b>Gaussian</b>	10 mV to 1.25 V	20 mV to 2.5 V
<b>Lorentz</b>	10 mV to 1.2 V	20 mV to 2.4 V
<b>Exponential Rise</b>	10 mV to 1.25 V	20 mV to 2.5 V
<b>Exponential Decay</b>	10 mV to 1.25 V	20 mV to 2.5 V
<b>Haversine</b>	10 mV to 1.25 V	20 mV to 2.5 V
<b>Cardiac</b>	10 mV to 2.5 V	20 mV to 5 V
<b>Arbitrary</b>	10 mV to 2.5 V	20 mV to 5 V

## Bus configuration menu

Use the Bus menu to select the bus type to display, configure the input sources, and set how to display the bus on the screen.

To open the Bus configuration menu:

- For an existing bus, double-tap the **Bus** badge in the Settings bar.
- To add a new Bus badge on the Settings bar, tap the **Add New Bus** button. this adds the Bus badge to the Settings bar and opens the . Bus configuration menu.

## Bus configuration menu - fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Toggles bus display on or off.
<b>Label</b>	Enter label text in this field. The default label is the name of the bus type.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. Default is 0 (center of graticule).
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform to 0 (center graticule).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Select a bus from the drop down list. The Parallel bus type comes standard on the instrument. Serial buses require purchase and installation of serial bus triggering and analysis options. See <a href="#">Serial bus and trigger options</a> on page 9.
Source configuration	A set of fields and controls that set the bus signal input parameters. Shown fields depend on the selected bus type. See the individual bus configuration help topics for information on their settings.
<b>Display format</b>	Enables showing just the decoded bus or both the bus and its digital waveforms.
<b>Decode format</b>	Sets how decoded data information is shown in the bus. Select from listed formats. Available formats depend on the bus type.

## Bus type configuration menus

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

### Audio serial bus configuration menu

Use the Audio bus menu to set up and display Audio Type I2S, Left Justified (LJ), Right Justified (RJ), or TDM Audio serial bus waveforms. The Audio bus type requires option 5-SRAUDIO (installed at factory) or SUP5-SRAUDIO (upgrade).

To use the Audio serial bus menu:

- To change the settings on an existing Audio serial bus waveform, double-tap the **Bus** waveform badge and make the necessary changes.
- To create a new Audio bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar and open the Bus configuration menu. Set the **Bus Type** to **Audio**.

### Audio serial bus menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>Audio</b> .
<b>Audio Type</b>	Sets the digital audio signal type. Select from the drop-down list.
<b>Bit Order</b>	Set the waveform to decode with most-significant (MS) bit first or least-significant (LS) bit first.
<b>Bit Clock</b>	Set the signal source, logic level threshold, and polarity for the Bit Clock signal.
<b>Word Select</b>	Set the signal source, logic level threshold, and normal or invert signal setting for the Word signal.
<b>Data</b>	Set the signal source, logic level threshold, and logic definition (active high or low) for the Data signal.
<b>Word Size</b> (Audio Type = I2S, LJ, or RJ)	Set the number of bits used in a Word for the selected audio type (8, 12, 16, 18, 20, 24, 28, or 32-bits).
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information.
<b>TDM-specific settings</b>	
<b>Frame Sync</b>	Set the signal source, logic level threshold, and polarity for the frame sync signal.
<b>Data Bits per Channel</b>	Set the number of data bits per audio channel.
<b>Clock Bits per Channel</b>	Set the number of clock bits per audio channel.
<b>Channels per Frame</b>	Set the number of audio channels per data frame.
<b>Bit Delay</b>	Sets the bit delay (number of bits).

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as CAN, USB, I2C, FlexRay, and so on, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

## CAN serial bus configuration menu

Use the CAN bus menu to set up and display a CAN (Controller Area Network) serial bus waveform. The CAN bus type requires option 5-SRAUTO (installed at factory) or SUP5-SRAUTO (upgrade).

To use the CAN serial bus configuration menu:

- To create a new CAN bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **CAN**.
- To change the settings on an existing CAN serial bus waveform, double-tap the **Bus** waveform badge on the Settings bar for the CAN bus to open the configuration menu.

## CAN serial bus menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>CAN</b> to set up and display a CAN bus waveform.
<b>Source</b>	Set the signal source from available analog and digital channels.
<b>Threshold</b>	Set the threshold level to define a logic high level.
<b>Signal Type</b>	Select the type of CAN signal you are measuring.
<b>Bit Rate</b>	Select the bit rate of your CAN bus serial data.  To enter a custom bit rate, tap Custom and enter the custom bit rate in the Custom Rate input box.
<b>Sample Point</b>	Sets the sample point from 5% to 95% of the position within the bit period or the unit interval.
<b>Display Format</b>	Bus sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information.  Bus and Waveform sets the waveform view to show both the decoded bus and the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex and Binary.

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as RS232, LIN, I2C, FlexRay, and so on, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

### See also.

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

## Ethernet serial bus menu

Use the Ethernet bus menu to set up and display an Ethernet 10BaseT or 100BaseT serial bus waveform. The Ethernet bus type requires option 5-SRENET (installed at factory) or SUP5-SRENET (upgrade).

To use the Ethernet serial bus menu:

- To create a new Ethernet bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **Ethernet**.
- To change the settings on an existing Ethernet serial bus waveform, double-tap the Ethernet **Bus** waveform badge to open the configuration menu.

### Ethernet serial bus menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>Ethernet</b> .
<b>Speed</b>	Sets the network signal speed.
<b>Signal Type</b>	Sets the signal type to Single Ended or Differential.
<b>Source</b>	Sets the signal source for Differential. Only available when Signal Type = Diff.
<b>D+ Input, D- Input</b>	Defines the signal sources and threshold values for the Single Ended data+ and - signals.  Only available when Signal Type = Single Ended.
<b>High Threshold</b>	Sets the threshold value for a logic 1 value.  Only available when Signal Type = Diff.
<b>Low Threshold</b>	Sets the threshold value for a logic 0 value.  Only available when Signal Type = Diff.
<b>IPv4</b>	Set to Yes if the Ethernet signal being measured uses Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4).
<b>Q-(VLAN)</b>	Set to Yes if the Ethernet signal being measured uses IEEE 802.1Q virtual LANs.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex, Binary, Mixed ASCII, and Mixed Hex.

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as CAN, LIN, I2C, FlexRay, and so on, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

### FlexRay serial bus configuration menu

Use the Flexray bus menu to set up and display a Flexray automotive network serial bus waveform. The Flexray bus type requires option 5-SRAUTO (installed at factory) or SUP5-SRAUTO (upgrade).

To use the FlexRay serial bus menu:

- To create a new FlexRay bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **FlexRay**.
- To change the settings on an existing FlexRay serial bus waveform, double-tap the **Bus** waveform badge and make necessary changes.

### FlexRay serial bus menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text using an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>FlexRay</b> .
<b>Signal Type</b>	Select the FlexRay signal type being measured.
<b>Channel Type</b>	Set to A or B channel.
<b>Source</b>	Select the FlexRay signal source.
<b>Threshold</b>	Sets the threshold value for the TX or RX signal type.
<b>High Threshold, Low Threshold</b>	Sets the high and low threshold values for the BM Inverted and Bdif/BP signal types.
<b>Bit Rate</b>	Select a bit rate. To set a custom bit rate, select Custom and enter a value in the Custom Rate field.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex and Binary.

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as CAN, LIN, Ethernet, and so on, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

#### See also.

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

## I<sup>2</sup>C serial bus configuration menu

Use the I<sup>2</sup>C bus menu to set up and display an I<sup>2</sup>C (Inter-Integrated Circuit) serial bus waveform. The I<sup>2</sup>C bus type requires option 5-SREMBD (installed at factory) or SUP5-SREMBD (upgrade).

To use the I<sup>2</sup>C serial bus menu:

- To create a new I<sup>2</sup>C bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **I<sup>2</sup>C**.
- To change the settings on an existing I<sup>2</sup>C serial bus waveform, double-tap the I<sup>2</sup>C **Bus** waveform badge and make necessary changes in the configuration menu.

### I<sup>2</sup>C serial bus menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>I<sup>2</sup>C</b> .
<b>SCLK Input</b>	Sets the source and threshold level for the Serial Clock Line signal.
<b>SDA Input</b>	Sets the source and threshold level for the Serial Data signal.
<b>Include R/W bit in Address</b>	Select <b>Yes</b> to display 7-bit addresses as eight bits, where the eighth bit (LSB) is the R/W bit, or display 10-bit addresses as 11 bits, where the third bit is the R/W bit.  Select <b>No</b> to display 7-bit addresses as seven bits, and 10-bit addresses as ten bits.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex and Binary.

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as CAN, LIN, SPI, FlexRay, and so on, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the **Bus Type** menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

**LIN serial bus configuration menu**

Use this menu to set up and display a LIN (Local Interconnect Network) serial bus waveform. The Lin bus type requires option 5-SRAUTO (installed at factory) or SUP5-SRAUTO (upgrade).

To use the LIN serial bus menu:

- To create a new LIN bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **LIN**.
- To change the settings on an existing LIN serial bus waveform, double-tap the **LIN Bus** waveform badge and make necessary changes.

**LIN serial bus menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>LIN</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Set the signal source from available analog or digital channels.
<b>Threshold</b>	Set the threshold level to define a logic high level.
<b>Polarity</b>	Select the polarity to match the LIN bus being acquired.
<b>LIN Standard</b>	Select the standard to match the LIN bus being acquired.
<b>Bit rate</b>	Sets the bit rate.  To enter a custom bit rate, tap Custom and enter the custom bit rate in the Custom Rate input box.
<b>Include Parity Bits with ID</b>	Set to Yes to include parity bits with the ID.
<b>Sample Point</b>	Sets the sample point from 5% to 95% of the position within the bit period or the unit interval.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex, Binary, and Mixed.

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as CAN, Audio, I2C, FlexRay, and so on, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

## Parallel Bus configuration menu

Use this menu to set up and display a parallel bus waveform. The parallel bus type is included with the oscilloscope.

To create a new parallel bus, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Double tap on the bus badge to open the configuration menu. The Bus menu opens to parallel by default.

To change the settings on an existing parallel bus, double-tap the parallel bus badge to open the configuration menu.

### Parallel bus configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to Parallel to define a parallel bus.
<b>Clocked Data</b>	Toggles Yes or No to use a clock signal to recover the data bits from the bus inputs.
<b>Clock Source</b>	Sets the source for the bus clock signal. The source can be an analog or digital channel.  Only available when Clocked Data is set to Yes.
<b>Polarity</b>	Sets the clock signal edge to use for timing reference.  Only available when Clocked Data is set to Yes.
<b>Threshold</b>	Sets the threshold value to determine high logic value.  Only available when Clocked Data is set to Yes.
<b>Define Inputs</b>	Opens a Parallel Bus - Define Inputs configuration menu to set the signal sources and the bit order (MSB to LSB) for the bus. See <a href="#">Parallel Bus - Define Inputs menu</a> on page 175.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex and Binary.

**Other bus types.** Serial bus types, such as CAN, Ethernet, USB, and FlexRay, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

**Parallel Bus - Define Inputs menu**

Use this menu to select the signal sources and order for the parallel bus waveform

To access the Parallel Bus - Define Inputs menu, double-tap a Parallel Bus badge to open the configuration menu, and tap the **Define Inputs** button.

**Parallel Bus - Define Inputs menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Parallel bus definition list</b>	<p>Lists the signal source and thresholds of selected channels or waveforms. The MSB is at the top of the list.</p> <p>To add a signal to the Parallel bus definition list, tap a source button in the Sources list. The button moves from the Sources list to the bottom of the bus list.</p> <p>Use the arrow buttons to the right of the field to move a selected signal up or down in the list.</p> <p>To remove a signal from the Parallel bus (and return it to the Sources list), tap on the signal source button.</p> <p>To change the threshold value for individual channels, tap in a selected Threshold field and use the assigned multipurpose knob, or double-tap the field to open the keypad and enter values.</p>
<b>Sources</b>	<p>Lists all available sources to use for a parallel bus. To add a source to the Parallel bus definition list, tap a source button. The button moves from the Sources list to the bottom of the bus list.</p>
<b>Set All Thresholds</b>	<p>Sets all thresholds in the Parallel bus definition list to the specified value. Enter a value and tap <b>Apply</b> to set the values.</p>

**RS232 serial bus menu**

Use this menu to set up and display an RS232 serial bus waveform. The RS232 bus type requires option 5-SRCOMP (installed at factory) or SUP5-SRCOMP (upgrade).

To use the RS232 serial bus menu:

- To create a new RS232 bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **RS232**.
- To change the settings on an existing RS232 serial bus waveform, double-tap the RS232 **Bus** waveform badge to open the configuration menu and make necessary changes.

**RS232 serial bus menu fields and controls.**

<b>Field or control</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>RS232</b> .
<b>Bit Rate</b>	Sets the data bit rate.  To enter a custom bit rate, tap Custom and enter the custom bit rate in the Custom Rate input box.
<b>Source</b>	Set the signal source from available analog or digital channels.
<b>Threshold</b>	Set the threshold level to define a logic high level.
<b>Polarity</b>	Select the polarity to match the RS232 bus being acquired. Use Normal polarity for RS-232 signals, and Inverted polarity for RS-422, RS-485, and UART buses.
<b>Data Bits</b>	Set the number of bits that define a data packet for your RS232 bus.
<b>Parity</b>	Set the parity to match the RS232 bus being acquired.
<b>Packet View</b>	Set to On to show decoded packet level information on the bus waveform.
<b>End of packet</b>	select the appropriate end of packet value to match the RS232 bus being acquired.  Available when Packet View = On.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex, Binary, and ASCII.

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as CAN, USB, I2C, and FlexRay, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

### SPI serial bus configuration menu

Use the SPI bus menu to set up and display an SPI (Serial Peripheral Interface) synchronous serial bus waveform. The SPI bus type requires option 5-SREMBD (installed at factory) or SUP5-SREMBD (upgrade).

To use the SPI serial bus menu:

- To create a new SPI bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **SPI**.
- To change the settings on an existing SPI serial bus waveform, double-tap the **Bus** waveform badge to open the configuration menu, and make necessary changes.

**SPI serial bus menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>SPI</b> .
<b>Framing</b>	Set to Slave Select (SS) or Idle framing modes.
<b>SCLK Input</b>	Select the channel source and threshold level for the Serial Clock signal (output from master).  Set the Polarity to rising or falling edge of the clock signal used by the master device to start transferring bits.
<b>SS Input</b>	Select the channel source and threshold level for the Slave Select signal to start communications with the slave device.  Set the Polarity to use Active High or Active Low logic for the SS signal.  Available when Framing = SS.
<b>SDA Input</b>	Select the channel source and threshold level for the Serial Data signal (bidirectional).  Set the Polarity to use Active High or Active Low logic for the SDA signal.
<b>Word Size</b>	Enter the word size, in bits. Common word sizes are 8, 16, and 32.
<b>Bit Order</b>	Set to most significant bit first (MS) or least significant bit first (LS).
<b>Idle Time (Framing = )</b>	Set the idle frame time.  Available when Framing = Idle.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex and Binary.

**Other bus types.** Other serial bus types, such as CAN, LIN, I<sup>2</sup>C, and FlexRay, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I<sup>2</sup>C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[USB serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 179

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

## USB serial bus configuration menu

Use the USB bus menu to set up and display an USB 2.0 (Universal Serial Bus) waveform. The USB bus type requires option 5-SRUSB2 (installed at factory) or SUP5-SRUSB2 (upgrade).

To use the USB serial bus menu:

- To create a new USB bus waveform, tap the **Add New Bus** button on the Settings bar. Open the bus configuration menu by double clicking on the badge. Set the **Bus Type** to **USB**.
- To change the settings on an existing USB serial bus waveform, double-tap the **Bus** waveform badge on the Settings bar to open the configuration menu, and make necessary changes.

**USB serial bus menu fields and controls.**

<b>Field or control</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Display</b>	Turns on or off displaying the bus on the Waveform view.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the bus. The default label is the selected bus type.  To enter label text, double-tap the field and enter label using the virtual keyboard, or tap the field and enter text from an attached keyboard.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the bus waveform. The default position is vertically centered in a slice (in Stacked mode), or center screen in Overlay mode. The unit of position is screen divisions.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position to 0 divisions (centered vertically in a slice or on the screen).
<b>Bus Type</b>	Set to <b>USB</b> .
<b>Speed</b>	Set the speed to match the USB bus you are acquiring.  Selecting High Speed (480 Mbps) sets the Signal Type to Differential.
<b>Signal type</b>	Set to match the USB signal you are acquiring (Single Ended or Differential). Use a differential probe to acquire the differential USB signal.  Selecting High Speed (480 Mbps) sets the Signal Type to Differential.  Both Single Ended and Diff can be used to measure Full (12 Mbps) and Low (1.2 Mbps) speed USB signals.
<b>Source</b>	Select the channel source for the signal from a differential probe.  Only available when Signal Type = Diff.
<b>High Threshold</b>	Set the high threshold level for the differential signal.
<b>Low Threshold</b>	Set the low threshold level for the differential signal.
<b>D+ Input</b>	Select the channel source and set the threshold level for the Data+ signal.  Only available when Signal Type = Single Ended.
<b>D- Input</b>	Select the channel source and set the threshold level for the Data- signal.  Only available when Signal Type = Single Ended.
<b>Display Format</b>	Sets the waveform view to show just the decoded bus information, or the decoded bus plus the source signal waveforms.
<b>Decode Format</b>	Sets the decode format used to display the bus information. Formats are Hex and Binary.

**Other bus types.** Serial bus types, such as CAN, LIN, I2C, and FlexRay, are available as purchasable options. Once purchased and installed, the new bus types are shown in the Bus Type menu. The serial bus options also add corresponding bus trigger capabilities to the **Trigger** menu.

[Audio serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 164

[CAN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 166

[Ethernet serial bus menu](#) on page 168

[FlexRay serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 169

[I2C serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 171

[LIN serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 172

[Parallel Bus configuration menu](#) on page 173

[RS232 serial bus menu](#) on page 175

[SPI serial bus configuration menu](#) on page 177

**See also.**

[Bus Trigger configuration](#) on page 232

## Cursor configuration menu

Cursors are on-screen lines (bars) that you position in a Waveform or Plot views to take manual measurements on signals. They appear as horizontal and/or as vertical lines.

To open the Cursors configuration menu:

1. Double-tap a cursor readout or cursor line, or
2. Touch and hold a cursor readout or cursor line and select **Configure Cursors** from the right-click menu.

To display cursors on the screen :

1. Tap the **Add New... Cursors** button of the display, or
2. Push the **Cursors** front-panel button to toggle cursors on or off.

### Cursor configuration menu fields and controls

Some fields or controls are only available when certain other controls are selected.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Tap to toggle the cursor display On or Off.
<b>Cursor Type</b>	<p>Tap to select the cursor type from the drop-down list.</p> <p><b>Waveform</b> cursors measure vertical amplitude and horizontal time parameters simultaneously at the point the cursor crosses a waveform.</p> <p><b>V Bars</b> are vertical cursors that measure horizontal parameters (typically time). They are not associated with the waveform, but simply show the cursor time position in the waveform record.</p> <p><b>H Bars</b> are horizontal cursors that measure amplitude (typically in volts or amperes). They are not associated with the waveform, but simply show the cursor amplitude position in the vertical scale.</p> <p><b>V&amp;H Bars</b> cursors measure vertical and horizontal parameters simultaneously. They are not associated with the waveform, but simply show the cursor time and amplitude position.</p>
<b>Source Waveform</b>	<p>Tap to select the source waveform (the waveform on which to display the cursors).</p> <p><b>Same</b> places both cursors on the same waveform.</p> <p><b>Split</b> allows each cursor to be on a different waveform.</p> <p>Only available when Cursor Type = Waveform.</p>
<b>Source</b>	<p>Tap to select the source waveform from the drop-down list. <b>Selected Waveform</b> automatically moves the waveform cursors to the selected source.</p> <p>Or select a specific source from the drop-down list.</p> <p>Only available when Source Waveform = Same.</p>
<b>Cursor A Source, Cursor B Source</b>	<p>Tap to select the waveform sources for Cursor A and B.</p> <p>Only available when Source Waveform = Split.</p>
<b>Cursor A X-Position</b>	<p>Tap to set a specific x-axis position for Cursor A using the multipurpose knob, or double-tap to set the position using the keypad.</p>
<b>Cursor B X-Position</b>	<p>Tap to set a specific x-axis position for Cursor B using the multipurpose knob, or double-tap to set the X-Position using the keypad.</p>
<b>Cursor Mode</b>	<p>Tap to select the cursor mode.</p> <p><b>Independent</b> mode sets multipurpose knobs A and B to move each cursor separately.</p> <p><b>Linked</b> mode sets multipurpose knob A to move both cursors at the same time. Knob B will still move cursor B independently of knob A.</p>

## Date and Time configuration menu

Use this menu to set the date, time format, and time zone.

To open the Date and Time configuration menu, double-tap on the Date/Time badge in the lower-right corner of the oscilloscope display.

### Date and Time configuration menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Tap to toggle display of the date and time On or Off.  When turned off, double-tap on the blank area below the Run/Stop button, in the lower-right corner of the oscilloscope display, to open the configuration menu and set display to On.
<b>Time Format</b>	Tap to select either 12 Hour or 24 Hour time format.
<b>Time Zone</b>	Tap and select the desired time zone from the drop-down list.
<b>Automatically adjust clock for Daylight Saving Time</b>	Sets the oscilloscope to automatically change the time to account for Daylight Saving Time changes.

---

**NOTE.** You cannot set a specific time; the time is preset at the factory.

---

## Digital channel configuration menu

Use the Digital channel menu to enable individual digital channels, set their thresholds, and add labels.

To open the Digital channel configuration menu, double-tap a Digital channel badge. You can also double-tap on the digital channel handles to open the menu.

### Digital channel settings fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Tap to toggle display of the channel On and Off.
<b>Height</b>	Sets the relative height of the digital waveform on the screen.  Only available when Waveform View mode = Overlay.
<b>D7-D0 Bit</b>	Tap to toggle individual channels (bits) on or off and remove them from the display.
<b>D7-D0 Threshold</b>	Sets threshold level values for individual data channels.
<b>D7-D0 Label</b>	Enter label text for individual data channels. The label is shown to the right of the corresponding digital channel.
<b>Turn All Off</b>	Turns off the digital channel and removes the Digital channel badge from the bar.
<b>Set All Thresholds</b>	Use to set all data channels to the same threshold value. Enter a value in the field and tap the button.

## See also

[Analog channel configuration menu](#)

## DVM configuration menu

Use this menu to set up the optional digital voltmeter (DVM) function to use probes to measure AC, DC, or AC+DC voltages.

To open the digital voltmeter menu:

1. If the DVM is Off, tap the **DVM** badge on the Settings bar. This adds a DVM badge to the top of the Results Bar, using the source that was selected the last time the DVM was added to the Results bar.
2. If the DVM is On, double-tap the **DVM** badge to open its configuration menu.

**NOTE.** Selecting a source in the DVM configuration menu does not automatically turn on (display) the source channel if the source channel is not already on.

### DVM configuration menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Tap to toggle the DVM badge On and Off.
<b>Autorange</b>	Tap to toggle autoranging On and Off. Autorange is not available when the oscilloscope is triggering on the same channel that is being measured.
<b>Source</b>	Tap to select the channel to measure from the drop-down list. The DVM can only measure analog channels.
<b>Mode</b>	Tap to select measuring DC, AC RMS, or DC+AC RMS measurement modes.
<b>Show Basic Statistics in Badge</b>	Tap to toggle showing DVM measurement statistics in the DVM badge.

## Menu bar overview

The Menu bar provides access to file, utility, and help functions.

### The Menu bar

Field or control	Description
<b>File</b>	<p>Provides typical system file management operations such as opening, saving, moving, and renaming files.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Recall configuration menu (File menu)</a> on page 186.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Save As configuration menu (File menu)</a> on page 188.</p> <p>See <a href="#">File Utilities configuration (File menu)</a> on page 193.</p> <p><b>Autoset</b> executes an immediate Autoset operation. See <a href="#">Quickly display a waveform (Autoset)</a> on page 49.</p> <p><b>Default Setup</b> immediately restores the oscilloscope to factory default settings. See <a href="#">Using Default Setup</a> on page 72.</p> <p><b>Shutdown</b> powers off the oscilloscope.</p>
<b>Edit</b>	<p>Provides a menu to Undo or Redo the last operation.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Undo, Redo (Edit menu)</a> on page 195.</p>
<b>Utility</b>	<p>Use to set user preferences, configure input, output, and network settings, run self tests, verify calibration status and run signal path compensation, and erase nonvolatile memory.</p> <p>See <a href="#">User Preferences (Utility menu)</a> on page 195.</p> <p>See <a href="#">I/O (Utility menu)</a> on page 197.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Self Test configuration menu (Utility menu)</a> on page 201.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Calibration configuration menu (Utility menu)</a> on page 202.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Security configuration menu (Utility menu)</a> on page 202.</p>
<b>Help</b>	<p>Opens the Help viewer, provides a tutorial to teach touch screen fundamentals, and displays current instrument software and option license information.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Help... (Help menu)</a> on page 204.</p> <p>See <a href="#">User Interface Tutorial (Help menu)</a> on page 204.</p> <p>See <a href="#">About (Help menu)</a> on page 204.</p>

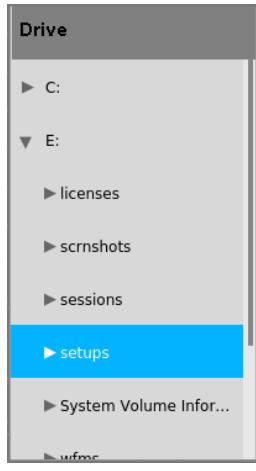
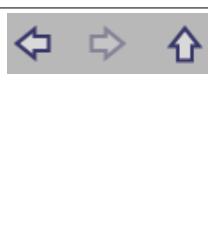
### Recall configuration menu (File menu)

Use this menu to recall (load) reference waveforms, instrument setups, and sessions (setup plus waveforms).

To open the file Recall configuration menu:

1. Tap **File** on the menu bar.
2. Tap **Recall** to open the Recall configuration menu.

### Recall configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Look in:</b>	<p>Shows the current directory path to the location of a file.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new save location. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recent file save locations, up to a maximum of 20 locations.</p>
<b>File type to open (tabs)</b>	<p>Tabs on the left let you set which type of file to recall (Waveform, Setup, or Session).</p> <p>Selecting a file type sets the file extensions in the Files of Type field to the correct value.</p>
	<p>The Drive column lists the directory structure, opening at the root (/) level. Use to quickly navigate to a location.</p> <p>Tap to list the contents of the directory in the Name pane.</p> <p>Double-tap an item to display the directory and any subdirectories under it. Double-tap again to close that directory structure.</p> <p>Drag the list up and down to show more entries.</p>
	<p>Use the arrow buttons to navigate the file directory.</p> <p>The left arrow navigates back to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Right arrow navigates forward to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Up arrow navigates up one level from the current folder.</p>
	<p>Use to create a new directory (folder) at the current location. Opens the new directory after it is created.</p>
<b>File name</b>	Lists the selected file name.
<b>Files of type</b>	Use to select the file format you want to open. The drop-down list shows all file extension types that the instrument can read for the selected file type.
<b>Cancel</b>	Cancels the file open action and closes the configuration menu.
<b>Recall</b>	<p>Recalls the selected file.</p> <p>Recalling a waveform file adds a Reference waveform badge to the Settings bar and displays the waveform as it fits in the current Horizontal setting.</p> <p>Recalling a Setup or Session immediately sets the oscilloscope to the settings in the file and displays any waveforms that were part of the recalled session.</p>

**USB port drive names and locations.**

Drive name	USB port location
C	User-accessible memory on the oscilloscope.
<b>Front panel</b>	
E	USB 3.0 (left)
F	USB 2.0 (center)
G	USB 2.0 (right)
<b>Rear panel</b>	
H	USB 2.0 (top)
I	USB 2.0 (bottom)
J	USB 3.0 (top)
K	USB 3.0 (bottom)

**Save As configuration menu (File menu)**

Use this menu to configure saving screen captures, waveforms, oscilloscope setups, reports, and session files.

To access the Save As configuration menu, tap **File** on the menu bar and select **Save As....**

**NOTE.** Selecting *File > Save* the first time after powering up the oscilloscope opens the Save As configuration menu. This lets you set or verify the save locations for all types of information you can save.

Once the Save As configuration menu has been opened and closed, the next time you select *Save* causes the instrument to automatically save the file type last selected in the Save As configuration menu. This lets you quickly save files with few steps.

**Saving files with the front-panel User button.** Pushing the front-panel **User** button automatically saves the file type last selected in the Save As configuration menu. If no saves have been performed since the instrument power-up, pushing the User button opens the Save As configuration menu. Select the type of save operation you want to perform and tap **OK**. After that, pushing the User button automatically saves the file type.

**NOTE.** The User button is not assigned a specific save type; it saves whatever save action was last selected in the Save As configuration menu.

**Save As configuration menu fields and controls.** The following fields and controls are common to all Save As actions.

Field or control	Description
<b>File save type</b>	Tabs on the left let you set which type of file to save (Screen Capture, Waveform, Setup, Report, or Session). Selecting a file type sets the file extensions in the Save As Type field to the correct value.
<b>Save Location</b>	<p>Lists the location where the file will be saved. The default value is the last location to which a file was saved.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new save location. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recent file save locations for the current save type.</p>
<b>Browse</b>	Tap to open the Browse Save As Location configuration menu, to navigate to and select the location to which to save the file. See <i>Browse Save As Location configuration menu</i> on page 191 .
<b>File Name</b>	<p>The file name assigned to the file. The default value is either the user-entered name used to last save this file type, or a numeric value calculated by the instrument if this file type has not previously been saved with a custom file name. The default value is Tek000.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow on the right edge of the field to display and select from a list of recently-saved file names.</p> <p>Tap on the file name and use a keyboard to enter a new file name. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a file name.</p>
<b>Auto Increment File Name</b>	Select to enable auto-incrementing of the file name. Auto increment adds a number count to the end of the file name, and increments it on each subsequent saving of the same file name.
<b>Count</b>	Sets the increment count start number. Default is 000.
<b>Save As Type</b>	<p>Lists the available formats to which you can save files. The available save formats are set by the type of file being saved.</p> <p>Tap the field and select the save format.</p>
<b>Cancel</b>	Cancels the file save action and closes the configuration menu.
<b>OK</b>	Saves the file to the specified location, closes the Save As configuration menu, and displays a confirmation message.

**Screen Capture tab fields and controls.** The following settings are specific for saving a screen capture

Field or control	Description
<b>File save type</b>	Tap the Screen Capture tab to save a screen image to a file. Selecting Screen Capture sets the file extensions in the Save As Type field to available graphic file formats.
<b>Save As Type</b>	<p>Lists the available formats to which you can save files. The available save formats are set by the type of file being saved.</p> <p>Tap the field and select the graphic save format.</p>

**Waveform tab fields and controls.** The following settings are specific for saving a waveform.

Field or control	Description
<b>File save type</b>	Tap the Waveform tab to save waveform(s) to a file. Selecting Waveform sets the file extensions in the Save As Type field to available waveform file formats.
<b>Save As Type</b>	<p>Lists the available formats to which you can save files. The available save formats are set by the type of file being saved.</p> <p>Tap the field and select the graphic save format.</p>
<b>Source</b>	<p>Sets the waveform source to save. You can save a single waveform, or save all active (displayed) waveforms.</p> <p>Waveform file names include the source channel or waveform appended to the end of the file name.</p>

**Setup tab fields and controls.** The following settings are specific for saving an instrument setup.

Field or control	Description
<b>File save type</b>	Tap the Setup tab to save the instrument setup and measurement settings to a file. Selecting Setup sets the file extension in the Save As Type field to .set.
<b>Include Reference Waveforms</b>	Include the instrument waveforms.

**Report tab fields and controls.** The following settings are specific for saving an instrument report.

A report can include information on instrument settings, measurement results, screen images, individual measurement configuration, source input settings, and error and warning information for measurements. Reports are either a PDF file or a single file Web page.

Field or control	Description
<b>File save type</b>	Tap the Report tab to save a report file. Selecting Report sets the file extensions in the Save as Type field to available report file formats.
<b>Save As Type</b>	<p>Lists the available formats to which you can save files. The available save formats are set by the type of file being saved.</p> <p>Tap the field and select the report save format (PDF or Single File Web Pages).</p>
<b>Append Report</b>	Appends a report to an existing report file.
<b>Comments</b>	Add comments to clarify the contents or purpose of the report, or specifics of the signals being measured.
<b>Include Images and Annotations</b>	Add Waveform and Plot images to the report.
<b>Include Setup Configuration</b>	Add instrument and measurement configuration information to the report.
<b>Include Error/Warnings Log</b>	Add any error or warning logs to the report.

**Session tab fields and controls.** The following settings are specific for saving an instrument session.

A session is a zipped file that contains an instrument setup file and all acquired waveform data. Use session file contents to move analysis activities to a PC and free up the instrument for others to use.

Field or control	Description
<b>File save type</b>	Tap the Session tab to enable saving a session file. Selecting Session sets the file extensions in the Save As Type field to .tss.
<b>Save As Type</b>	A session file can only be saved to format .tss.

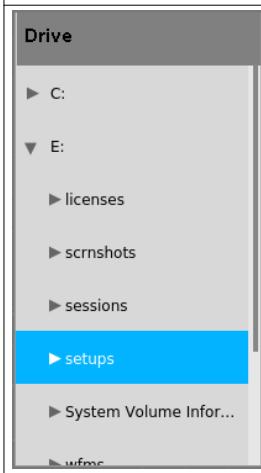
### Browse Save As Location configuration menu

Use this menu to select a new file location to save files.

To access the Browse Save As Location configuration menu:

1. Select **File > Save As....**
2. In the Save As configuration menu, tap the **Browse** button.

### Browse Save As Location configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>File path field</b>	<p>Shows the current directory.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new path. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recently accessed file save paths, for the current save type, up to a maximum of 20 paths.</p>
	<p>The Drive column lists the directory structure, opening at the root level. Use to quickly navigate to a location.</p> <p>Tap to list the contents of the directory in the Name pane.</p> <p>Double-tap an item, or tap the small arrow to the left of the directory, to display the subdirectories under it. Double-tap again to close that directory structure.</p> <p>Drag the list up and down to show more entries.</p>
	<p>Use the arrow buttons to navigate the file directory.</p> <p>The left arrow navigates back to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Right arrow navigates forward to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Up arrow navigates up one level from the current folder.</p>
	<p>Use to create a new directory (folder) at the current location. Opens the new directory after it is created.</p>
<b>Cancel</b>	<p>Cancels the file path change, closes the configuration menu, and returns to the Save As configuration menu. No file path change occurs.</p>
<b>OK</b>	<p>Closes the configuration menu, returns to the Save As configuration menu, and updates the Save Location field with the path from the Browse configuration menu.</p>

**USB port drive names and locations.**

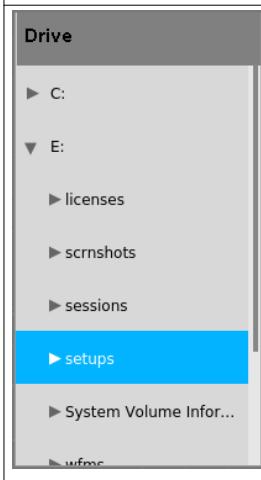
Drive name	USB port location
C	User-accessible memory on the oscilloscope.
<b>Front panel</b>	
E	USB 3.0 (left)
F	USB 2.0 (center)
G	USB 2.0 (right)
<b>Rear panel</b>	
H	USB 2.0 (top)
I	USB 2.0 (bottom)
J	USB 3.0 (top)
K	USB 3.0 (bottom)

**File Utilities configuration (File menu)**

Use this menu to copy, paste, delete, and rename files, and unmount memory devices from USB ports.

To access the File Utilities configuration menu, select **File > File Utilities...** from the Menu bar.

### File Utilities configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>File path field</b>	<p>Shows the current directory.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new save location. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recent file save locations, for the current save type, up to a maximum of 20 locations.</p>
	<p>The Drive column lists the directory structure, opening at the root level. Use to quickly navigate to a location.</p> <p>Tap to list the contents of the directory in the Name pane.</p> <p>Double-tap an item to display the directory and any subdirectories under it. Double-tap again to close that directory structure.</p> <p>Drag the list up and down to show more entries.</p>
	<p>Use the arrow buttons to navigate the file directory.</p> <p>The left arrow navigates back to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Right arrow navigates forward to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Up arrow navigates up one level from the current folder.</p>
	<p>Use to create a new directory (folder) at the current location. Opens the new directory after it is created.</p>
<b>Copy</b>	Copies the selected file in the filename pane to memory.
<b>Paste</b>	Pastes the file from the last Copy action in the current File Utilities session into the current location.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the selected file or folder.
<b>Rename</b>	Renames the selected file or folder.
<b>Unmount</b>	Closes the file writing session on the attached device to let you disconnect the device from the USB port. Select the drive port letter and tap Unmount. You can now remove the USB device from the port.

### USB port drive names and locations.

Drive name	USB port location
C	User-accessible memory on the oscilloscope.
<b>Front panel</b>	
E	USB 3.0 (left)
F	USB 2.0 (center)
G	USB 2.0 (right)
<b>Rear panel</b>	
H	USB 2.0 (top)
I	USB 2.0 (bottom)
J	USB 3.0 (top)
K	USB 3.0 (bottom)

### Undo, Redo (Edit menu)

The Edit menu lets you Undo or Redo recent actions. Tap Undo or Redo. Not all oscilloscope actions can be undone. If the Undo or Redo menu items are grayed out, then the last action cannot be undone or redone.

### User Preferences (Utility menu)

Use this menu to set global display, measurement, jitter and eye analysis settings, and other user preferences.

To open the User Preferences menu:

1. Tap the **Utility** menu.
2. Tap **User Preferences** to open the configuration menu.
3. Tap a panel.

### Display panel fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
Colors	<p>Tap and select either Normal or Inverted colors.</p> <p>Inverted makes the waveform background white, with graticule marking in black. Inverted does not change the Menu bar, Results bar, or Settings bar colors.</p>
Default Waveform View Display Mode	Tap and select the default waveform view display mode, either Overlay or Stacked.
Backlight	<p>Tap to select the intensity of the backlight.</p> <p><b>NOTE.</b> Performing an Autoset resets the backlight value to High.</p>
Auto-Dim	Select On to automatically dim the screen backlight after a specified time.
Time	<p>Sets the amount of time to wait before the display is dimmed. Tap in the field and use the knob to change the time value, or double-tap to open the virtual keypad and set a time value.</p> <p>Only available when Auto-Dim is On.</p>

**Measurements panel fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Shared Reference Levels</b>	<p>Tap to select either Global or Per Source reference levels.</p> <p><b>Global</b> applies the same reference levels to all measurement sources.</p> <p><b>Per Source</b> allows selection of a different reference levels for all measurement sources.</p>
<b>Calculate Reference Levels</b>	<p>Tap to select how often to calculate reference levels.</p> <p><b>First Acq</b> only calculates the reference levels on the first acquisition and re-uses them for all subsequent acquisitions. Pushing the Clear front-panel button, or making measurement changes (adding, deleting, or reconfiguring) also clears the reference levels which are then recalculated on the next acquisition.</p> <p><b>Every Acq</b> calculates the reference levels with every acquisition.</p>
<b>Measurement Interpolation</b>	<p>Interpolation defines how the waveform is drawn between waveform record data points. Tap and select the measurement interpolation method.</p> <p><b>Auto</b> selects the best interpolation method.</p> <p><b>Sin(x)/x</b> interpolation computes record points using a curve fit between the actual samples acquired.</p> <p><b>Linear</b> interpolation computes record points between actual acquired samples by using a straight line fit.</p>
<b>Measurement Annotations</b>	<p>Annotations show the exact segment of the waveform from which the measurement is derived. The annotation types consist of horizontal bars, vertical bars, or cross-hatch marks.</p> <p><b>Auto</b> sets annotations to display if valid for the measurement. To view annotations for a measurement, select that measurement badge. If annotations are valid for that measurement, they are added to the waveform source for that measurement.</p> <p><b>Off</b> turns off display of measurement annotations.</p>

**Jitter and Eye Analysis panel fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Calculate Reference Levels</b>	Tap to select calculating the reference levels on the first acquisition or on every acquisition.
<b>Horizontal Measurement Units</b>	Tap to select horizontal measurement units of seconds or unit intervals.
<b>Jitter Separation Model</b>	Tap to select the jitter separation model (Spectral Only Spectral + BUJ).

### Other panel fields and controls.

Field or control	
<b>Right Clicks via Touch</b>	Turns On or Off the ability to use touch and hold method to open right-click menus on badges and other screen items.
<b>Time</b>	Sets the time it takes to respond to a touch and hold before opening a right-click menu.

### I/O (Utility menu)

Use this configuration menu to set up a LAN, USB Device Port, Socket Server, and AUX OUT signal parameters.

To open the I/O menu:

1. Tap the **Utility** menu.
2. Tap **I/O....**

#### Entering and applying LAN network changes.

When first opening the I/O menu LAN panel, the Network Address is set to **Auto** (default setting) and the **Apply Changes** button is grayed out (inactive) in the LAN panel.

When you select any editable input box and start entering data, the **Apply Changes** button becomes active, and the characters being entered are bolded and italicized. Bold italicized text means that the values have not been applied to the oscilloscope settings.

When you tap the **Apply Changes** button, all changes are saved (takes about 10 seconds), the text is changed to normal font (nonbold, nonitalic), and the **Apply Changes** button becomes inactive.

If you tap outside the I/O menu before you tap the Apply Changes button, the menu closes and none of your changes are saved.

**LAN panel fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>LAN Status</b>	A readout that indicates the status of the LAN connection, either a Green circle with the word Normal or a Red circle with an error message.
<b>Host Name</b>	The instrument host name is displayed. To change the name, double-tap and enter a name in the virtual keyboard.
<b>Network Address</b>	Tap to select Manual or Automatic mode. In Automatic mode, the current Instrument IP Address, Gateway IP Address, Subnet Mask, and DNS IP Address are displayed.
<b>Domain Name</b>	The instrument domain name is displayed. To change the name, double-tap and enter a name in the virtual keyboard.
<b>Instrument IP Address</b>	Tap and use the multipurpose knobs to enter the address. Use the A knob to select the digit, and the B knob to change the value.  Only available to edit when Network Address = Manual
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Tap and use the multipurpose knobs to enter the mask. Use the A knob to select the digit, and the B knob to change the value.  Only available to edit when Network Address = Manual
<b>Service Name</b>	The instrument service name is displayed. To change the name, double-tap and enter a name in the virtual keyboard.
<b>Gateway IP Address</b>	Tap and use the multipurpose knobs to enter the address. Use the A knob to select the digit, and the B knob to change the value.  Only available to edit when Network Address = Manual
<b>DNS IP Address</b>	Tap and use the multipurpose knobs to enter the address. Use the A knob to select the digit, and the B knob to change the value.  Only available to edit when Network Address = Manual
<b>MAC Address</b>	A readout of the instrument MAC Address. This field is not editable.
<b>e*Scope HTTP Port</b>	A readout of the instrument e*Scope HTTP port number. This field is not editable.
<b>Test Connection</b>	Tap to test the connection. If the connection test is successful, then <b>OK</b> is displayed. If the test is unsuccessful, then <b>No Response</b> is displayed.
<b>LAN Reset</b>	Tap to display the <a href="#">LAN Reset configuration menu (Utility &gt; I/O menu)</a> on page 200.
<b>Apply Changes</b>	Apply changes made on this panel to the instrument.  <b>NOTE.</b> No changes are made to instrument settings until you tap the Apply Changes button.

**USB Device Port fields and controls.** Use the USB Device Port panel to enable or disable USB ports and set the GPIB Talk/Listen address. Use USB ports to connect a USB memory device, keyboard, or for direct PC control of the oscilloscope using USBTMC protocol.

Field or control	Description
<b>USB Device Port</b>	Tap to toggle all USB device ports On and Off.
<b>USBTMC Configuration</b>	Displays the USBTMC configuration information.
<b>GPIB Talk/Listen Address</b>	Double-tap and enter the address using the virtual keypad.

**Socket Server panel fields or controls.** Use the following socket server settings to set up and use a socket server between your oscilloscope and a remote terminal or computer.

Field or control	Description
<b>Socket Server</b>	Tap to toggle the socket server On or Off.
<b>Protocol</b>	Tap to select a protocol, either None or Terminal.  A communication session run by a user at a keyboard typically uses a terminal protocol. An automated session might handle its own communications without such protocol from the oscilloscope.
<b>Port</b>	Enter the port number using the multipurpose knob or virtual keypad.

**AUX Out panel fields and controls.** Use the following settings to select the signal that is output on the rear-panel AUX Out signal connector.

Field or control	Description
<b>AUX Out Signal</b>	Tap to select the signal type to send to the AUX Out connector.  <b>Trigger</b> sends a pulse for each trigger occurrence.  <b>Reference Clock</b> outputs the instrument's reference signal, whether generated internally or supplied from the REF In connector.  <b>AFG Sync</b> sends a pulse that is synchronized to the AFG output signal.
<b>Polarity</b>	Tap to select the polarity of the trigger signal (positive or negative pulse per trigger event). The polarity control is only present for the Trigger output.

### Using Telnet to communicate with the oscilloscope .

- After you have set up the socket server parameters, the computer is now ready to communicate with the oscilloscope. If you are running an MS Windows PC, you could run its default client Telnet, which has a command interface. One way to do this is by typing Telnet in the Run window. The Telnet window will open on the PC.

**NOTE.** On MS Windows 10, you must first install Telnet.

- Start a terminal session between your computer and your oscilloscope by typing in an open command with the oscilloscope's LAN address and port number.

You can obtain the LAN address by pushing the Ethernet & LXI lower menu button and the resulting LAN Settings side menu button to view the resulting Ethernet and LXI Settings screen. You can obtain the port # by pushing Socket Server on the lower menu and viewing Current Port on the side menu.

For example, if the oscilloscope IP address was 123.45.67.89 and the port # was the default of 4000, you could open a session by writing into the MS Windows Telnet screen: o 123.45.67.89 4000.

The oscilloscope will send a help screen to the computer when it has finished connecting.

- You can now type in a standard query, such as, \*idn?.

The Telnet session window will respond by displaying a character string describing your instrument.

You can type in more queries and view more results using this Telnet session window. You can find the syntax for relevant commands, queries and related status codes in the Programmer Manual that is available at the Tektronix website.

**NOTE.** Do not use the computer's backspace key during an MS Windows Telnet session with the oscilloscope.

### LAN Reset configuration menu (Utility > I/O menu)

Use this menu to reset the Local Area Network (LAN) settings to the listed default settings.

To open the LAN Reset dialog:

- Tap **Utility** in the Menu bar.
- Tap **I/O...**
- Tap the **LAN Reset** button to open the LAN Reset configuration menu.
- Tap **OK** to reset the LAN settings.
- Tap **Cancel** to close the dialog without taking any action, and return to the I/O configuration menu.

#### LAN Reset default settings.

Function	Setting
Network address	Automatic
DHCP	Enabled
BOOTP	Enabled
mDNS & DNS-SD	Enabled
e* Scope Password Protection	Disabled
LXI Password Protection	Disabled
e* Scope and LXI Password	Empty string (default)

**See also.**

[I/O \(Utility menu\)](#) on page 197

**Self Test configuration menu (Utility menu)**

Use this menu to view power-on diagnostic results, run self tests, and verify 250K termination control on input channels.

To open the Self Test configuration menu:

1. Tap **Utility** in the Menu bar
2. Tap **Self Test...**.

To close the Self Test menu, tap anywhere outside of the menu.

---

**NOTE.** Remove all input signals before running the self test.

---

**Self Test configuration menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Results</b>	The status of the overall test and each individual test is displayed.
<b>Test Mode</b>	<p>Tap and select the test loop mode from the drop-down:</p> <p><b>Run N Loops</b> runs all self tests the specified number of times, then stops.</p> <p><b>Run Until Failing</b> continuously runs tests until a failure occurs, then stops.</p> <p><b>Run Always</b> continuously runs tests without stopping for failures. You must tap the Abort Self Test button to stop testing.</p> <p><b>Loop on Failure</b> continuously runs tests until a failure occurs, then continuously runs the failed self test. The status of the failed test stays at Running. You must tap the Abort Self Test button to stop testing.</p> <p>Changing the Test Mode does not stop any ongoing self tests. You must abort a test run before the new test mode will be run.</p>
<b>N =</b>	Enter the number of times to run (loop) the Run N Loops test.
<b>Run Self Test / Abort Self Test</b>	<p>Tap to run all standard power-on self tests. While tests are running, the button changes to Abort Self Test. When self tests are stopped, the button reverts to Run Self Test.</p> <p>Tap the Abort Self Test button anytime to stop testing.</p>

**250K Ohm Termination Verification dialog.** Tap a button to verify that 250K Ohm termination can be enabled or disabled for a channel. Closing the dialog restores normal termination setting of applicable probes.

## Calibration configuration menu (Utility menu)

Use this menu to perform a signal path compensation or view the factory calibration status.

To open the Calibration configuration menu:

1. Tap **Utility** in the Menu bar
2. Tap **Calibration...** .

**Calibration configuration menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Factory Adjustment Status</b>	This area at the top of the menu lists the instrument calibration status. Factory Adjustment Status should be Calibrated.  If an instrument becomes uncalibrated, this displays an Uncalibrated status and a red Warning message bar is shown at the top of the screen in the Menu bar area. Contact your nearest Tektronix Service Center for assistance.
<b>SPC Status</b>	Indicates the status of the last SPC run (Pass or Failed). Also indicates how long ago the last SPC was run.
<b>Run SPC</b>	Signal path Compensation (SPC) corrects for internal DC inaccuracies caused by temperature variations and/or long-term drift in circuits.  <b>NOTE.</b> SPC takes 5 or more minutes per channel to run.  Allow the instrument to warm up for 20 minutes before running SPC.  Remove all probes, cables, and adapters from the input connectors before running SPC.  Tap Run SPC to run signal path compensation. The compensation can take up to five minutes per channel.

## Security configuration menu (Utility menu)

If you have acquired confidential data, use TekSecure® to securely erase the oscilloscope memory before you return the oscilloscope to general use.

To open the Security menu:

1. Tap **Utility** in the Menu bar.
2. Tap **Security...** .

To erase nonvolatile memory, tap **Run TekSecure**. It will take approximately seven minutes to erase the memory.

---

**NOTE.** Save any important waveform, screen capture, instrument setup, report, and session files to external memory before running TekSecure. All such files will be erased.

---

**NOTE.** You cannot stop the TekSecure process once it is started.

---

**NOTE.** TekSecure does not erase calibration constants or instrument firmware.

---

## TekSecure Erase Memory

Use this menu to securely erase the oscilloscope nonvolatile memory (TekSecure®).

To open the Security menu and run TekSecure:

1. Tap **Utility** in the Menu bar.
2. Tap **Security...**
3. Tap Run TekSecure to run the TekSecure memory erase. It will take approximately seven minutes to erase the memory.
4. To exit the dialog without running TekSecure, tap outside of the configuration menu.

---

**NOTE.** Save any important waveform, screen capture, instrument setup, report, and session files to external memory before running TekSecure.

---

**NOTE.** You cannot stop the TekSecure process once it is started.

---

**NOTE.** TekSecure does not erase calibration constants or instrument firmware.

---

## Demo (Utility menu)

Use this menu to access demonstrations of key oscilloscope features.

To open the Demo configuration menu, select **Utility > Demo...** in the Menu bar.

**Demo menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
Demo overview pane	The upper half of the menu shows an overview of the demonstration available in the selected panel. This pane may also contain a screen shot showing the waveforms and capability being demonstrated.
<b>Connection Details</b>	Tap this button to open a dialog box that shows how to connect the oscilloscope to a signal source to perform the selected demonstration.
<b>Recall Demo Session</b>	Tap this button to load the session file for the selected demonstration.
Demo panels	Each panel provides a demonstration of oscilloscope capabilities within a category. The categories are Miscellaneous and Serial Bus.  Each panel will have two or more demonstration buttons in them. Selecting a button updates the upper half of the menu to show the relevant content (and image if available) for the selected demonstration.

## Help... (Help menu)

Tap this item to open the 5 Series MSO Help viewer. This Help viewer is similar in operation to a traditional Microsoft Windows help viewer.

## User Interface Tutorial (Help menu)

Tap this menu item to run a screen tutorial to learn the basics of the touch screen user interface.

To start the tutorial animation, tap **Help > User Interface Tutorial**. While the tutorial is running, you do not have access to any scope actions.

The tutorial closes automatically when it completes. You can also close the tutorial anytime by tapping on the Close button in the text box.

## About (Help menu)

Use the About configuration menu to show instrument information and installed options, and to install or uninstall analysis or feature options.

To open the About menu:

1. Tap **Help** on the menu bar.
2. Select **About** from the menu to open the About configuration menu.

### About configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>System information</b>	Provides system-related information such as model, bandwidth, serial number, Host ID, and installed firmware version. Provide this information when communicating with Tektronix to purchase option licenses or communicate with Customer Support.
<b>Probes Detected</b>	<p>Lists probes connected to the instrument. TekVPI probes will list the probe model, serial number, and installed probe firmware version.</p> <p>Non-TekVPI probes may show their attenuation factor.</p> <p><b>NOTE.</b> Connecting or disconnecting probes while the About menu is open does not update the Probes Detected list. The Probes Detected list is not dynamic.</p>
<b>Installed Options</b>	Lists installed options. Click on an item in the list to show details of the option in the Option Details area below the list.
<b>Option Details</b>	Lists details of the option selected in the list, including license type, when the license was checked out, when it was installed on the instrument, and the date the license expires.
<b>Remove License</b>	Opens the Location to Save the Exit Key dialog. Use this to uninstall a floating license option for use by others. See <a href="#">Location to Save Exit Key configuration menu</a> on page 205.
<b>Install License</b>	Tap this button to open the Browse License Files dialog to navigate to and select an option license file to install. See <a href="#">Browse License Files menu (Help &gt; About)</a> on page 207.

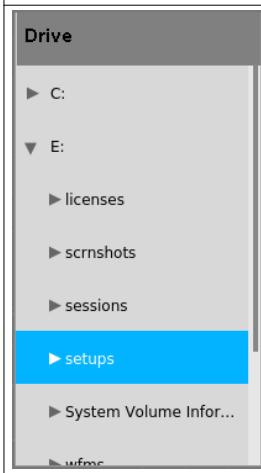
## Location to Save Exit Key configuration menu

Use this menu to navigate to and set the location to save the option license key when you uninstall the license.

To access the Location to Save Exit Key menu:

1. Tap **Help** on the menu bar.
2. Select **About** from the menu.
3. Tap a license in the list that you want to uninstall (return the license).
4. Tap the **Remove License** button to open the Location to Save Exit Key configuration menu.

**Location to Save Exit Key configuration menu fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Look in</b>	<p>Shows the current directory path at which to save the exit key file.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new path. Or double-tap on the file name to open the on-screen keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recently accessed paths, up to a maximum of 20.</p>
	<p>The Drive column lists the directory structure, opening at the root level. Installed USB memory devices are listed. Use to quickly navigate to a location.</p> <p>Tap to list the contents of the directory in the Files pane.</p> <p>Double-tap an item, or tap the small arrow to the left of the directory, to display the subdirectories under it. Double-tap again to close that directory structure.</p> <p>Drag the list up and down to show more entries.</p> <p>You can also use the files Name column to navigate to and select a folder in which to save the file.</p>
	<p>Use the arrow buttons to navigate the directory structure.</p> <p>The left arrow navigates back to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Right arrow navigates forward to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Up arrow navigates up one level from the current folder.</p>
	<p>Use to create a new directory (folder) at the current location.</p> <p>Opens the new directory after it is created.</p>
<b>File Name</b>	<p>Lists the selected license file name to return (uninstall).</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of uninstalled license files, up to a maximum of 20.</p>
<b>Files of Type</b>	<p>Use to select the file format you want to open.</p> <p>Tap the field to show a list of all file extension types that the instrument can read for the selected file type. The Name field (where folder and files are listed) only lists files of the specified type.</p>
<b>Cancel</b>	<p>Cancels the license uninstall process, closes the configuration menu without saving any changes that were made, and returns to the About configuration menu.</p>
<b>Create</b>	<p>Closes the configuration menu and saves the license information to the specified location.</p>

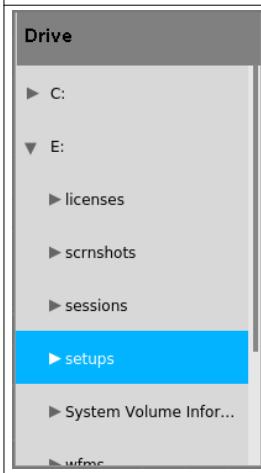
### Browse License Files menu (Help > About)

Use this menu to select and install an option license file to enable new functions.

To access the Browse License Files menu:

1. Tap **Help > About...** on the menu bar.
2. Tap **Install License** button to open the Browse License Files configuration menu.

### Browse License Files configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Look in</b>	<p>Shows the current directory path and file name.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new path. Or double-tap on the file name to open the on-screen keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recently accessed files, up to a maximum of 20.</p>
	<p>The Drive column lists the directory structure, opening at the root level. Installed USB memory devices are listed. Use to quickly navigate to a location.</p> <p>Tap to list the contents of the directory in the files listing.</p> <p>Double-tap an item, or tap the small arrow to the left of the directory, to display the subdirectories under it. Double-tap again to close that directory structure.</p> <p>Drag the list up and down to show more entries.</p>
	<p>Use the arrow buttons to navigate the directory structure.</p> <p>The left arrow navigates back to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Right arrow navigates forward to the previously visited folder.</p>
	<p>Use to create a new directory (folder) at the current location.</p> <p>Opens the new directory after it is created.</p>
<b>File Name</b>	<p>Lists the selected file name.</p> <p>Tap on the file name and use a keyboard to enter a new file name. Or double-tap on the file name to open the on-screen keyboard and enter the new name.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recently accessed files, up to a maximum of 20.</p>
<b>Files of Type</b>	<p>Use to select the file format you want to open.</p> <p>Tap the field to show a list of all file extension types that the instrument can read for the selected file type. The files pane only lists files of the specified type.</p>
<b>Cancel</b>	<p>Cancels the configuration menu changes, closes the menu, and returns to the prior menu without making any changes.</p>
<b>Open</b>	<p>Closes the configuration menu, returns to the About configuration menu, and installs the license. Follow any instructions that may be shown during the installation.</p>

## Horizontal configuration menu

Use this menu to select the horizontal mode, set horizontal parameters, and enable trigger delay.

To open the **Horizontal** configuration menu, double-tap the **Horizontal** badge in the Settings bar.

### Horizontal configuration menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Horizontal Mode</b>	<p>Tap to select either Automatic or Manual horizontal mode.</p> <p>In <b>Automatic</b> mode you can set the <b>Minimum Sample Rate</b> and <b>Horizontal Scale</b>.</p> <p>In <b>Manual</b> mode you can set the Sample Rate and Record Length. Horizontal Scale is a dependent variable calculated from the sample rate and record length.</p>
<b>FastAcq</b>	<p>Tap to toggle <b>FastAcq</b> mode On or Off.</p> <p><b>FastAcq</b> provides high-speed waveform capture. It is helpful in finding elusive signal anomalies. Fast Acq mode reduces the dead time between waveform acquisitions, enabling the capture and display of transient events such as glitches and runt pulses. Fast Acq mode can also display waveform phenomena at an intensity that reflects their rate of occurrence.</p>
<b>FastAcq Palette</b>	<p>Tap and select the desired FastAcq Palette from the drop-down list.</p> <p><b>Temperature</b> uses color-grading to indicate frequency of occurrence, with hot colors like red/yellow indicating frequently occurring waveform data points, and colder colors like blue/green indicating rarely occurring data points.</p> <p><b>Spectral</b> uses color-grading to indicate frequency of occurrence with, colder colors like blue indicating frequently occurring waveform data points, and hot colors like red indicating rarely occurring data points.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> uses the default channel color (like yellow for channel one) along with gray-scale to indicate frequency of occurrence where frequently occurring events are bright.</p> <p><b>Inverted</b> uses the default channel color (like yellow for channel one) along with gray-scale, but inverts color intensity such that events that occur less frequently are brighter.</p> <p>Only available when FastAcq is On.</p>
<b>Minimum Sample Rate</b>	<p>Sets the minimum sample rate for acquisitions. Changing horizontal scale will not reduce the sample rate below this value. This can result in partial waveform records at lower frequencies, but at the same time would provide more sample points for a few cycles of the signal.</p> <p>Available when Horizontal Mode = Automatic and Fast Acq = Off.</p> <p>This setting can be overridden if <b>Allow Horizontal Scale to Override Min Sample Rate</b> is selected.</p>
<b>Allow Horizontal Scale to Override Min Sample Rate</b>	<p>Select to set the oscilloscope to automatically change the sample rate to acquire a full waveform record. Changes to the sample rate are shown in the Horizontal badge readout, not in the Minimum Sample rate field of the menu.</p> <p>Only available when Horizontal Mode = Automatic and Fast Acq = Off.</p>

Field or control	Description
<b>Maximum Record Length</b>	<p>Tap and select the Maximum Record Length from the drop-down list.</p> <p>Record length is dependent on the Scale setting. If changing the scale causes the record length to exceed the maximum record length Limit, the sample rate is decreased to the next available setting to keep the record length below the set maximum.</p> <p>Only available when Horizontal Mode = Automatic and FastAcq = On.</p>
<b>Allow Horizontal Scale to Override Max Record Length</b>	<p>Select to set the oscilloscope to automatically change the record length to acquire a full waveform record. Changes to the sample rate are shown in the Horizontal badge readout, not in the Minimum Sample rate field of the menu.</p> <p>Only available when Horizontal Mode = Automatic and FastAcq = On.</p>
<b>Horizontal Scale</b>	<p>Tap to set the Horizontal Scale using the assigned multipurpose knob, double-tap to set the scale using the virtual keypad, or tap the up and down arrows. You can also use the front-panel Horizontal Scale knob to change this value.</p> <p>The horizontal scale determines the size of the acquisition window relative to the waveform. You can scale the window to contain a single waveform edge, a single cycle, several cycles, or thousands of cycles.</p>
<b>Delay</b>	<p>Delay positions the trigger event to a specified time relative to the center of the waveform record. Use delay to focus on events that occur before (pretrigger) or after the trigger point (posttrigger).</p>
<b>Position</b>	<p>Tap to set the trigger Position using the assigned multipurpose knob or double-tap to set the Position using the virtual keypad.</p> <p>When horizontal Delay is on, the time from the trigger point to the horizontal reference (center of waveform record) is the horizontal delay. The horizontal position determines the number of pretrigger and posttrigger samples in the waveform record.</p> <p>When horizontal delay is off, the trigger point and the horizontal reference are at the same time in the middle of the waveform record.</p>
<b>Set to 0 s</b>	<p>Tap to set the delay position to 0 s (center of the waveform record).</p> <p>Only available when Delay = On.</p>
<b>Set to 10%</b>	<p>Tap to set the trigger delay to 10% of the waveform record.</p> <p>Only available when Delay = Off.</p>
<b>Sample Rate Changes Affect</b>	<p>Tap to allow changes to the Sample Rate to affect either the Horizontal Scale or the Record Length.</p> <p>Only available when Horizontal Mode = Manual.</p>

Field or control	Description
<b>Sample Rate</b>	Tap to set the Sample Rate using the assigned multipurpose knob, double-tap to set the rate using the virtual keypad, or tap the up and down arrows. This keeps the oscilloscope at the specified sample rate regardless of the horizontal or record length settings. This limits the available horizontal scale settings to those that can be used with the specified sample rate.  Only available when Horizontal Mode = Manual.
<b>Record Length</b>	Tap to set the Record Length using the assigned multipurpose knob, double-tap to set the length using the virtual keypad, or tap the up and down arrows.  Only available when Horizontal Mode = Manual.

## Math configuration menu overview

Math waveforms are created by combining and/or mathematically transforming source waveforms into a new waveform for analysis. Use this menu to create math waveforms (basic or advanced) or add an FFT (Fast Fourier Transform) waveform to the screen.

To access a Math configuration menu, double-tap a **Math** waveform badge on the Settings bar. If no Math badge is present, tap the **Add New Math** button to add a Math waveform and open the configuration menu.

Use the following links to access information on the Math waveform menus and settings.

[Math configuration menu](#) on page 211

[Equation Editor \(Math configuration menu\)](#) on page 213

[Add Filter menu \(math Equation Editor\)](#) on page 214

[Add Variable menu \(math Equation Editor\)](#) on page 215

### Math configuration menu

Use this menu to set math waveform parameters, create basic and advanced math waveforms, or add an FFT (Fast Fourier Transformation) plot to analyze frequency components of a waveform.

To access the Math menu, double-tap a **Math** waveform badge. If no Math badge is present, tap the **Add New Math** button to add a math waveform and open the menu.

### Math configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns the math waveform or FFT plot On or Off.
<b>Vertical Scale</b>	Sets the vertical graticule scale units. Tap the arrows to change the value, tap and use the assigned multipurpose knob to change values, or double-tap to open the virtual keypad to enter a specific value.  Only available when Auto Scale is disabled (unchecked) and Math Type = Basic or Advanced.
<b>Auto Scale</b>	Toggles Auto Scale mode on or off. Auto Scale calculates the vertical scale and position to center and display the entire waveform.  Available when Math Type = Basic or Advanced.
<b>Label</b>	Enter a label for the math waveform.
<b>Position</b>	Sets the vertical position of the math waveform.  Available when Math Type = Basic or Advanced.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the vertical position of the math waveform to zero (vertical center of a slice (Stacked mode) or the screen (Overlay mode)).  Available when Math Type = Basic or Advanced.
<b>Units</b>	Sets user-specified units to display on vertical scale readouts and measurement badges.
<b>Average</b>	Toggles averaging the waveform On and Off. Use averaging to reduce noise on the waveform.
<b>Number of Averages</b>	Sets the number of waveform acquisitions to average. Tap and use the assigned multipurpose knob to set the value.  Available when Average = On.
<b>Math Type</b>	Sets the type of math waveform to display.  <b>Basic</b> creates a math waveform by adding, subtracting, multiplying, or dividing two analog waveforms.  <b>FFT</b> opens an FFT view of the specified signal to display the frequency components of that signal. Double-tap on the FFT view to open its configuration menu. See <a href="#">Math FFT plot configuration menu (Math waveform)</a> on page 218.  <b>Advanced</b> displays a drop-down from which to select the 20 last-accessed equations created by the Equation Editor. This mode also provides access to the Equation Editor.
<b>Source, Source1, Source 2</b>	Defines the signal source or sources for a Basic or FFT math waveform.  Basic and FFT math waveforms are created from analog channels only (Ch, Math, or Ref).  Available when Math Type = Basic or FFT.
Basic math operation list	Located between the Source 1 and Source 2 fields. A drop-down list to select a basic math operation (add, subtract, multiply, divide) to apply to the two sources.  Available when Math Type = Basic.

Field or control	Description
<b>Math n =</b>	<p>Lists the last-accessed advanced equation. Tap the down arrow to display a list of the last-accessed equations (up to a maximum of 20) created by the Equation Editor. Select an equation to display that math waveform.</p> <p>Tap <b>Edit</b> to open the Equation Editor to edit the displayed equation. You can also double-tap on an equation in this field and directly edit the equation using the virtual keyboard. See <a href="#">Equation Editor (Math configuration menu)</a> on page 213.</p> <p>Available when Math Type = Advanced</p>
<b>Edit</b>	<p>Opens the Equation Editor to create advanced math waveforms from analog channels, reference, math waveform, measurement, filter, and variable sources.</p> <p>Tap the <b>Edit</b> button to open the Equation Editor. See <a href="#">Equation Editor (Math configuration menu)</a> on page 213.</p> <p>Available when Math Type = Advanced</p>

#### Math waveform guidelines.

- Digital channels are not valid in math waveforms.
- You can take measurements on math waveforms in the same way as on channel waveforms.
- Math waveforms derive their horizontal scale and position from the sources in their math expressions. Adjusting these controls for the source waveforms also adjusts the math waveform.
- You can Zoom on math waveforms.

#### Equation Editor (Math configuration menu)

Use the Equation Editor to build your advanced math waveform expression using sources, operators, constants, measurements, variables, filters, and functions.

To access the math Equation Editor:

1. Double-tap a **Math** waveform badge. If no Math badge is present, tap the **Add New Math** button to add a Math waveform and open the configuration menu.
2. Set Math Type to **Advanced**.
3. Tap **Edit** to open the Equation Editor.

### Equation Editor menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Sources</b>	Lists all available sources that you can add to an equation. Tap a source icon to add it to the cursor position in the Math $x =$ input box. Drag the sources field up or down to scroll through selections. If a source column is empty, there are no active or defined sources for that category.
<b>Add Filter</b>	Tap to open the Add Filter menu, to create a filter definition to add to the Filters source column in the Equation Editor menu. See <a href="#">Add Filter menu (math Equation Editor)</a> on page 214.
<b>Add Variable</b>	Tap to open the Add Variable menu, to add a defined variable to the Variables source column in the Equation Editor menu. See <a href="#">Add Variable menu (math Equation Editor)</a> on page 215.
<b>Functions</b>	Select the math functions to apply to your signal or signals.
<b>Keypad</b>	Use to enter numeric, basic math operations, and logic conditions.
<b>Clear</b>	Clears the math equation field.
<b>Arrows</b>	Use to move the cursor position in the Math equation field.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the selected part of the equation (recommend using a mouse to most easily select equation text).
<b>Backspace</b>	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.
<b>Apply</b>	Tap to apply the math expression to create the waveform. The math expression will populate to the Math $x =$ input box in the Math configuration menu and also appears in the Math badge on the Settings bar.
<b>Cancel</b>	Closes the editor menu, does not update the equation list if you made any changes from the last time you Apply'd or OK'd an equation.
<b>OK</b>	Applies the equation to the math waveform, closed the Advanced Editor window, and adds the equation to the available equation list.

### Equation editor guidelines.

- Math definitions are not applied if the sources are not valid.
- Syntax or other equation or source errors display a short error message on the Math configuration menu.
- Use parentheses to group terms in the expression to control execution order, for example,  $5*(Ch1 + Ch2)$ .

### Add Filter menu (math Equation Editor)

Use the Add Filter menu to add a high pass, low pass, or arbitrary filter expression to the Filters column of the Equation Editor Sources table.

To access the Add Filter menu:

1. Double-tap a Math waveform badge on the Settings bar. If no Math badge is present, tap the **Add New Math** button to add a Math waveform and open the configuration menu.
2. Set Math Type to **Advanced**.
3. Tap **Edit** to open the Equation Editor.
4. Tap **Add Filter** to open the Add Filter menu.

### Add Filter menu fields and controls .

Field or control	Description
<b>Filter Type</b>	Sets the filter type: <b>High Pass</b> , <b>Low Pass</b> , or <b>ArbFlt</b> (arbitrary filter). ArbFlt requires you to load a FLR-format filter file.  If loading a filter file, tap Load to navigate to and select the FLR file to load.
<b>Cutoff Frequency</b>	Sets the filter cutoff frequency as a predefined fraction of the sample rate (SR).  Default is 0.25 * SR.
<b>Label</b>	Shows the filter selections as A:B, where A is the filter type (HP or LP) and B is cutoff frequency setting.  Arbitrary filter files use the file name as the label.

### Add Variable menu (math Equation Editor)

Use the Add Variable menu to add a defined variable source to the Equation Editor Sources table, which you can then add to your math waveform expression.

To open the Add Variable menu:

1. Double-tap a Math waveform badge on the Settings bar. If no Math badge is present, tap the **Add New Math** button to add a Math waveform and open the configuration menu.
2. Set Math Type to **Advanced**.
3. Tap **Edit** to open the Equation Editor menu.
4. Tap **Add Variable** to open the Add Variable menu.

### Add Variable menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Variable Type</b>	Selects a predefined variable to add to the Variables column of the Equation Editor.  <b>Sample Rate</b> creates a variable with the value of the current sample rate.  <b>Sample Interval</b> creates a variable with the value of the current sample interval (1/sample rate)  <b>Record Length</b> creates a variable with the value of the current record length.
<b>Cancel</b>	Closes the menu without adding a variable to the <b>Equation Editor</b> Variables column.
<b>OK</b>	Closes the menu and adds the current variable selection to the Variables column of the <b>Equation Editor's Sources</b> table.

## Font Color menu (Text Settings configuration)

Use this menu to change the label color. Touch and hold on note or label text, select **Format Text** in the right-click menu, and select **Color** to open this menu. Click on a color to change the text color.

## Text Settings configuration menu (Note and Waveform labels text)

Use this menu to change and format existing Note or Waveform labels (font type and size, color, bold, italic, and underline).

Prerequisite: There is note or waveform label on the screen.

To open the **Text Settings** configuration menu, double-tap on the Note or Waveform label. You can also touch and hold on the note/label text and select **Format Text** from the right-click menu.

To delete a Note or label, touch and hold on the note/label and select **Delete** from the right-click menu.

### Text Settings configuration menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Text</b>	Double-tap and enter the desired text using the virtual keyboard.
<b>Font</b>	Tap and select the desired font from the drop-down list.
<b>Size</b>	Tap and select the desired font size from the drop-down list.
<b>Color</b>	Tap and select the desired font color from the color palette.
<b>B</b>	Tap to toggle text bolding On or Off.
<b>I</b>	Tap to toggle text italics On or Off.
<b>U</b>	Tap to toggle text underlining On or Off.

## Plot configuration menus

Use plot configuration menus to change settings of a displayed plot. Double-tap a plot view to open its configuration menu.

Use the following links to access information on a specific Plot configuration menu.

[Eye Diagram plot configuration menu](#) on page 217

[Math FFT plot configuration menu \(Math waveform\)](#) on page 218

[Histogram plot configuration menu](#) on page 220

[Bathtub plot configuration menu](#) on page 222

[Spectrum plot configuration menu](#) on page 223

[Trend Plot configuration menu](#) on page 224

[Plot XY configuration menu](#) on page 225

[XYZ plot configuration menu](#) on page 225

## Eye Diagram plot configuration menu

Use this menu to change settings of a displayed Eye Diagram plot.

To open the Eye Diagram plot menu, double-tap anywhere in the **Eye Diagram** plot view.

**Settings panel (Eye Diagram plot configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>AutoScale</b>	Toggles AutoScale on or off. Turn AutoScale off to manually set the X and Y-axis range to view an area of interest.  When AutoScale is off, a small Zoom window appears in the plot. Drag the blue vertical bar in the Zoom window to view that area in the main Plot view. Use the Zoom and Pan front-panel knobs to change the zoom area and position.
<b>X-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the X-Axis scales.  Only available when AutoScale is off (unchecked).
<b>Y-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the Y-Axis scales.  Only available when AutoScale is off (unchecked).
<b>Gridlines</b>	Selects which gridlines to show in the plot. Select the grid style that meets your measurement needs.

**Save panel fields and controls.**

Use the Save panel controls to save the plot image or data to a file, for inclusion in reports or further analysis in other applications.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Plot Image</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot image. Enter a file name in the File Name field. Select the image file format (PNG, BMP, or JPG).  Tap OK to save the plot image.
<b>Save Plot Data</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot data. Enter a file name in the File Name field.  Tap OK to save the plot data as a comma-separated values (.csv) file.

**Closing a plot view.**

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

## Math FFT plot configuration menu (Math waveform)

Use the Math FFT plot menu to change settings of a displayed FFT plot, including source, FFT window type, plot type, and gating.

To open the FFT plot configuration menu, double-tap anywhere in the **Math FFT Plot** view.

### Plot Settings panel (Math FFT plot configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Auto Scale</b>	Toggles auto scaling of the plot on or off. When AutoScale is off, a small Zoom window appears in the plot. Drag the blue zoom area box in the small Zoom window to view that area in the main Plot view.  Use the Zoom and Pan front-panel knobs to change the zoom area and horizontal position.
<b>Gridlines</b>	Sets which gridlines to show in the plot (Horizontal, Vertical, or Both).
<b>X-Axis Scale</b>	Sets the horizontal frequency scale to either Log or Linear.  A <b>Log</b> scale is useful when the frequency component magnitudes cover a wide dynamic range, letting you show both lesser and greater-magnitude frequency components on the same display.  A <b>Linear</b> scale is useful when the frequency component magnitudes are all close in value, allowing direct comparison of their magnitudes.
<b>Y-Axis Scale</b>	Sets the vertical amplitude scale to either Log (dBm) or Linear.  A <b>Log dB</b> scale is useful when the frequency component magnitudes cover a wide dynamic range, letting you show both lesser and greater magnitude frequency components on the same display.  A <b>Linear</b> scale is useful when the frequency component magnitudes are all close in value, enabling direct comparison of their magnitudes.
<b>X-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the X-Axis scale. These values also define the horizontal zoom area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.
<b>Y-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the Y-Axis scale. These values also define the vertical zoom area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.

### FFT Settings panel (Math FFT plot configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
FFT Type	<p><b>Magnitude</b> plots the magnitude values of the frequency components.</p> <p><b>Phase</b> plots the phase of the signal as a function of frequency.</p>
Window	Sets the FFT window type to use for the waveform plot. See the <i>FFT windows</i> table after this table.
Gating	<p>Sets the region of the waveform to analyze for the FFT plot.</p> <p><b>None</b> uses the entire waveform record to create the FFT plot.</p> <p><b>Screen</b> uses the part of the waveform record displayed on the screen (such as in Zoom mode) to create the FFT plot.</p> <p><b>Cursors</b> uses the waveform data between the cursors to create the FFT plot.</p>
Vertical Units	<p>Sets the vertical scale to Degrees, Radians, or Group Delay.</p> <p><b>NOTE.</b> The Vertical Units set when FFT Type = Phase override the Y-Axis scale setting in the Plot Settings panel.</p> <p>Only available when FTT Type set to Phase.</p>
Phase Wrap	<p>When checked, the phase trace is unwrapped where the trace jumps more than the number of degrees set in the adjacent field.</p> <p>Only available when FTT Type set to Phase.</p>
Squelch	<p>When checked, the phase trace excludes points that have a voltage smaller than the specified voltage. The squelch voltage should be set to the expected noise voltage level. Minimum value is 100 mV, and increments in units of 100 mV.</p> <p>When unchecked, the phase trace includes all values.</p> <p>Only available when FTT Type set to Phase.</p>

### Save panel (Math FFT plot configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
Save Plot Image	Opens the <a href="#">Save As</a> configuration menu to specify the location and name at which to save an image file of the Plot view.
Save Plot Data	Opens the <a href="#">Save As</a> configuration menu to specify the location and name at which to save the Plot view data to a CSV file.

**FFT windows.** Each FFT window is a trade-off between frequency resolution and magnitude accuracy. What you want to measure and your source signal characteristics help determine which window to use. Use the following guidelines to select the best window.

FFT window	Characteristics	Best for measuring
Hanning	Better frequency, poorer magnitude accuracy than Rectangular. Hanning has slightly poorer frequency resolution than Hamming.	Sine, periodic, and narrow-band random noise. Transients or bursts where the signal levels before and after the event are significantly different.
Rectangle	Best frequency, worst magnitude resolution. This is essentially the same as no window.	Transients or bursts where the signal levels before and after the event are nearly equal. Equal-amplitude sine waves with frequencies that are very close.
Hamming	Better frequency, poorer magnitude accuracy than Rectangular. Hamming has slightly better frequency resolution than Hanning.	Sine, periodic, and narrow-band random noise. Transients or bursts where the signal levels before and after the event are significantly different.
Blackman-Harris	Best magnitude, worst frequency resolution.	Predominantly single frequency signals to look for higher order harmonics.

You can also determine the best window empirically by first selecting the Rectangular window, and then selecting (in the following order) the Hamming, Hanning, and Blackman-Harris windows until the frequency components merge. Use the window just prior to where the frequencies emerge for the best compromise between resolution and amplitude accuracy.

#### Closing a plot view.

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

#### Histogram plot configuration menu

Use this menu to change settings of a displayed Histogram plot.

To open the Histogram plot configuration menu, double-tap anywhere in a **Histogram** Plot view.

### Settings panel (Histogram plot configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>AutoScale</b>	Toggles AutoScale on or off. Turn AutoScale off to set the X and Y-axis range to view an area of interest.  When AutoScale is off, the Plot view zoom mode enables and a small Zoom window appears in the plot. Drag the blue zoom area box in the small Zoom window to view that area in the main Plot view. Use the Zoom and Pan front-panel knobs to change the zoom area and horizontal position.
<b>Gridlines</b>	Selects which gridlines to show in the plot.
<b>X-Axis Number of Bins</b>	Sets the resolution by the number of bins into which the X axis is divided.
<b>X-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the X-Axis scales.  These values also define the horizontal area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.
<b>Y-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the Y-Axis scales.  These values also define the vertical area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.
<b>Y-Axis Scale</b>	Sets the Y axis scale to Linear or Log.  A <b>Log</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes cover a wide dynamic range, letting you show both lesser- and greater-magnitude components on the same display.  A <b>Linear</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes are all close in value, allowing direct comparison of their magnitudes.

### Save panel fields and controls.

Use the Save panel controls to save the plot image or data to a file, for inclusion in reports or further analysis in other applications.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Plot Image</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot image. Enter a file name in the File Name field. Select the image file format (PNG, BMP, or JPG).  Tap OK to save the plot image.
<b>Save Plot Data</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot data. Enter a file name in the File Name field.  Tap OK to save the plot data as a comma-separated values (.csv) file.

### Closing a plot view.

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

## Bathtub plot configuration menu

Use this menu to change settings of a displayed jitter versus BER (bathtub) plot.

To open the Bathtub plot configuration menu, double-tap anywhere in the **Bathtub** plot view.

To close a plot view, tap the X in the upper right corner of the view. Deleting the Measurement badge that opened the plot also closes the plot.

### Settings panel (Bathtub plot configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Autoscale</b>	Toggles auto scaling of the plot on or off.  When AutoScale is off, a small Zoom window appears in the plot. Drag the blue zoom area box in the small Zoom window to view that area in the main Plot view. Use the Zoom and Pan front-panel knobs to change the zoom area and horizontal position.
<b>Gridlines</b>	Sets which gridlines to show in the plot (Horizontal, Vertical, or Both).
<b>X-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the X-Axis scales, in unit intervals.  These values also define the horizontal area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.
<b>Y-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the Y-Axis scales, in BER units.  These values also define the vertical area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.
<b>Y-Axis scale</b>	Sets the Y axis scale to Linear (default) or Log.  A <b>Log</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes cover a wide dynamic range, letting you show both lesser- and greater-magnitude components on the same display.  A <b>Linear</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes are all close in value, allowing direct comparison of their magnitudes.

### Save panel fields and controls.

Use the Save panel controls to save the plot image or data to a file, for inclusion in reports or further analysis in other applications.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Plot Image</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot image. Enter a file name in the File Name field. Select the image file format (PNG, BMP, or JPG).  Tap OK to save the plot image.
<b>Save Plot Data</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot data. Enter a file name in the File Name field.  Tap OK to save the plot data as a comma-separated values (.csv) file.

### Closing a plot view.

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

### Spectrum plot configuration menu

Use this menu to change settings of a displayed Spectrum plot.

To open the Spectrum plot configuration menu, double-tap anywhere in the **Spectrum** plot view.

### Settings panel (Spectrum plot configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>AutoScale</b>	Toggles Autoscale on or off. Turn AutoScale off to set the X and Y-axis range to view an area of interest.  When AutoScale is off, a small Zoom window appears in the plot. Drag the blue zoom area box in the small Zoom window to view that area in the main Plot view. Use the Zoom and Pan front-panel knobs to change the zoom area and horizontal position.
<b>Gridlines</b>	Sets which gridlines to show in the plot. Use the grid style best suited to your measurement needs.
<b>X-Axis Scale</b>	Sets the X axis scale to Linear or Log.  A <b>Log</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes cover a wide dynamic range, letting you show both lesser- and greater-magnitude components on the same display.  A <b>Linear</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes are all close in value, allowing direct comparison of their magnitudes.
<b>Y-Axis Scale</b>	Sets the Y axis scale to Linear or Log.  A <b>Log</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes cover a wide dynamic range, letting you show both lesser- and greater-magnitude components on the same display.  A <b>Linear</b> scale is useful when the component magnitudes are all close in value, allowing direct comparison of their magnitudes.
<b>Dynamic Range</b>	Sets the vertical scale dynamic range.  Available when Y-Axis Scale is set to Log.
<b>X-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the X-Axis scales.  These values also define the horizontal area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.
<b>Y-Axis From, To</b>	Sets the beginning and end scale range to display in the plot for the Y-Axis scales.  These values also define the vertical area shown in the small Zoom window.  Available when AutoScale is off.

### Save panel fields and controls.

Use the Save panel controls to save the plot image or data to a file, for inclusion in reports or further analysis in other applications.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Plot Image</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot image. Enter a file name in the File Name field. Select the image file format (PNG, BMP, or JPG).  Tap OK to save the plot image.
<b>Save Plot Data</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot data. Enter a file name in the File Name field.  Tap OK to save the plot data as a comma-separated values (.csv) file.

### Closing a plot view.

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

### Trend Plot configuration menu

Use the Trend configuration menu to set trend waveform vertical scale and position, as well as add a label.

To open the Trend configuration menu, double-tap the **Trend** badge in the Settings bar. You can also double-tap the Trend Plot handle.

### Trend configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Toggles displaying the Trend plot on or off.
<b>Vertical Scale</b>	Shows the vertical scale setting (when Auto Scale is on), or sets the vertical scale (when Auto Scale is off).  Use the up and own arrow buttons to set the vertical scale value when Auto Scale is turned off. You can also use the multipurpose knob or screen keypad to change the value.
<b>Auto Scale</b>	Enables or disables the AutoScale mode. Auto Scale uses the signal data to dynamically set the vertical scale units.
<b>Label</b>	Adds a label to the Trend waveform (appears next to the Trend plot handle).
<b>Position</b>	Shows the vertical position setting (when Auto Scale is on), or sets the vertical position (when Auto Scale is off).
<b>Set to 0</b>	Tap the Set to 0 button to set the trend plot to the center of the graticule.

**Deleting a trend plot.** To delete a Trend plot, touch and hold the **Trend** badge to open the right-click menu, and select **Delete Trend**. Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

## Plot XY configuration menu

Use this menu to change settings of a displayed XY plot.

To open the XY plot menu, double-tap anywhere in the **XY** Plot view.

### Settings panel (Plot XY configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>X-Axis</b>	Sets the source for the X-axis signal.
<b>Y-Axis</b>	Sets the source for the Y-axis signal.

- Use the vertical scale and position controls of the waveform connected to the X- and Y-axis sources to set horizontal scale and position of the XY waveform.
- XY format is particularly useful for studying phase relationships between two similar signals, creating Lissajous Patterns.
- XY format is a dot-only display, although it can have persistence. The Vector style selection has no effect when you select XY format.

### Save panel fields and controls.

Use the Save panel controls to save the plot image or data to a file, for inclusion in reports or further analysis in other applications.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Plot Image</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot image. Enter a file name in the File Name field. Select the image file format (PNG, BMP, or JPG).  Tap OK to save the plot image.
<b>Save Plot Data</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot data. Enter a file name in the File Name field.  Tap OK to save the plot data as a comma-separated values (.csv) file.

### Closing a plot view.

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

## XYZ plot configuration menu

Use this menu to change settings of a displayed XYZ plot.

To open the XYZ plot menu, double-tap anywhere in the **XYZ** plot view.

### Settings panel (Plot XYZ configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>X-Axis</b>	Sets the source for the X-axis signal.
<b>Y-Axis</b>	Sets the source for the Y-axis signal.
<b>Z-Axis</b>	Sets the source for the Z-axis signal.

- XYZ format compares the voltage levels of the X and Y channel waveform records point-by-point, as in XY format. The displayed waveform intensity is modulated by the Z channel waveform amplitude.
- XYZ format is a dot-only display, although it can have persistence. The Vector style selection has no effect when you select XYZ format.

**Save panel fields and controls.**

Use the Save panel controls to save the plot image or data to a file, for inclusion in reports or further analysis in other applications.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Plot Image</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot image. Enter a file name in the File Name field. Select the image file format (PNG, BMP, or JPG).  Tap OK to save the plot image.
<b>Save Plot Data</b>	Tap to open the Save As menu. Navigate to the location where you want to save the plot data. Enter a file name in the File Name field.  Tap OK to save the plot data as a comma-separated values (.csv) file.

**Closing a plot view.**

To close (delete) a Plot view, tap the **X** in the upper right corner of the view.

Deleting the Measurement badge that enabled the plot also closes the plot.

**Save As configuration menu (plot Save panel, Save Plot Image button)**

Use this menu to specify the name and location at which to save an image file for the selected plot.

To access the Save As configuration menu to save an image of a plot to a file:

1. Double-tap anywhere in a Plot view top open the plot configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Save** panel.
3. Tap the **Save Plot Image** button.

### Save As configuration menu (plot Save panel, Save Plot Image button) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Location</b>	<p>Lists the location where the file will be saved. The default value is the last location to which a file was saved.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new save location. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recent file save locations for the current save type.</p>
<b>Browse</b>	Opens the <i>Browse Save As Location</i> configuration menu to navigate to and select a location at which to save the file.
<b>File name</b>	<p>The file name assigned to the file. The default value is either the user-entered name used to last save this file type, or a numeric value calculated by the instrument if this file type has not previously been saved with a custom file name. The default value is Tek000.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow on the right edge of the field to display and select from a list of recently-saved file names.</p> <p>Tap on the file name and use a keyboard to enter a new file name. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a file name.</p>
<b>Save As Type</b>	<p>Lists the available graphic formats to which you can save files.</p> <p>Tap the field and select the graphic save format.</p>
<b>Cancel</b>	Cancels the file save action and closes the configuration menu.
<b>OK</b>	Saves the file to the specified location, closes the Save As menu, and displays a confirmation message.

### Save As configuration menu (plot Save panel, Save Plot Data button)

Use this menu to specify the name and location at which to save a comma separated value (csv) file of the data for a specific plot.

To access the Save As configuration menu for plots:

1. Double-tap anywhere in a Plot view top open the plot configuration menu.
2. Tap the **Save** panel.
3. Tap the **Save Plot Data** button.

**Save As configuration menu (plot Save panel, Save Plot Data button) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Save Location</b>	<p>Lists the location where the file will be saved. The default value is the last location to which a file was saved.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new save location. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recent file save locations for the current save type.</p>
<b>Browse</b>	Opens the <i>Browse Save As Location</i> configuration menu to navigate to and select a location at which to save the file.
<b>File name</b>	<p>The file name assigned to the file. The default value is either the user-entered name used to last save this file type, or a numeric value calculated by the instrument if this file type has not previously been saved with a custom file name. The default value is Tek000.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow on the right edge of the field to display and select from a list of recently-saved file names.</p> <p>Tap on the file name and use a keyboard to enter a new file name. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a file name.</p>
<b>Cancel</b>	Cancels the file save action and closes the configuration menu.
<b>OK</b>	Saves the file to the specified location, closes the Save As menu, and displays a confirmation message.

## Reference waveform configuration menu

Use this menu to configure display settings for a reference waveform.

To open a reference waveform configuration menu, double-tap a **Ref** badge on the Settings bar.

### Reference waveform configuration menu fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Display</b>	Turns On or Off displaying the waveform.
<b>Vertical Scale</b>	Set the vertical scale by using the assigned multipurpose knob, a virtual keypad, or tap the up or down arrows.
<b>Label</b>	<p>Adds a label to the waveform. Tap and enter text using a keyboard, or double-tap to open the virtual keyboard. The label text is the same color as the waveform.</p> <p>Once you have entered the label, close the menu and double-tap the label text to open the Text Settings menu to change the font color, size, and other characteristics.</p>
<b>Units</b>	Set the units label that you want to display on the vertical scale.
<b>Position</b>	Set the vertical position of the waveform using the assigned multipurpose knob or the virtual keypad.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Tap to set the vertical position to 0 (vertical center of the graticule).

Field or control	Description
<b>Reference File</b>	Shows the path and file name of the current Reference waveform.  Double-tap the field to open the on-screen keyboard to enter or edit the path to open a different waveform file.  Tap the down arrow icon to list the 20 most recently accessed reference waveform files.
<b>Browse</b>	Opens the Browse Waveform File dialog. Use this dialog to navigate to and select a waveform file to load. See <a href="#">Recall configuration menu (Ref waveform configuration menu)</a> on page 229.
<b>Sample Rate, Record Length</b>	Readout-only text that show the sample rate and record length values of the reference waveform.
<b>Deskew</b>	Changes the horizontal position of the reference waveform. Use this function to align the reference waveform to meet your measurement needs.
<b>Set to 0</b>	Sets the reference waveform deskew value to zero.

### Recall configuration menu (Ref waveform configuration menu)

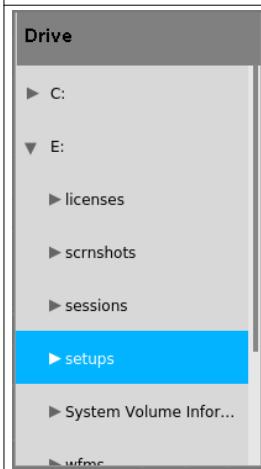
Use this menu to locate and load a reference waveform file.

Prerequisite: a Ref badge must be present on the Settings bar. See [Add a math, reference, or bus waveform](#) on page 59.

To open the Recall configuration menu:

1. Double-tap a **Ref** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Tap **Browse** to open the Recall configuration menu.

**Recall configuration menu (Ref configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Look in</b>	<p>Shows the current directory path and file name.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new path. Or double-tap on the file name to open the virtual keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recently accessed files, up to a maximum of 20.</p>
	<p>The Drive column lists the directory structure. Use to quickly navigate to a location.</p> <p>Tap to list the contents of the directory in the file list area.</p> <p>Double-tap an item, or tap the small arrow to the left of the directory, to display the subdirectories under it. Double-tap again to close that directory structure.</p> <p>If there is a scroll bar, drag the list up and down to show more entries.</p>
	<p>Use the arrow buttons to navigate the directory structure.</p> <p>The left arrow navigates back to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Right arrow navigates forward to the previously visited folder.</p> <p>The Up arrow navigates up one level from the current folder.</p>
	<p>Use to create a new directory (folder) at the current location.</p> <p>Opens the new directory after it is created.</p>
<b>File Name</b>	<p>Lists the selected file name.</p> <p>Tap on the file path and use a keyboard to enter a new path. Or double-tap on the file name to open the on-screen keyboard and enter a path.</p> <p>Tap the down arrow icon on the right end of the field to open a list of recently accessed files, up to a maximum of 20.</p>
<b>Files of Type</b>	<p>Use to select the file format you want to open. Tap the field to show a list of all file extension types that the instrument can read for the selected file type. The files column only lists files of the specified type.</p>
<b>Cancel</b>	<p>Cancels any changes, closes the menu, and returns to the prior menu without loading a file.</p>
<b>OK</b>	<p>Closes the dialog, returns to the prior menu, and loads and displays the specified file.</p>

## Search configuration menu

Use the Search configuration menu to define conditions that you want to search for on a channel or waveform signal. Each occurrence of the search condition is marked on the signal with a triangle along the top of the waveform slice or view.

To open the Search menu, double-tap on a **Search** badge in the Results bar.

See the following links for information on the search type menus.

[Bus Search configuration menu](#) on page 120

[Edge Search configuration menu](#) on page 133

[Logic search configuration menu](#) on page 134

[Pulse Width Search configuration menu](#) on page 135

[Rise/Fall Time Search configuration menu](#) on page 137

[Runt Search configuration menu](#) on page 139

[Setup and Hold Search configuration menu](#) on page 140

[Timeout Search configuration menu](#) on page 141

[Window Search configuration menu](#) on page 143

## Trigger configuration menu overview

Use the Trigger menu to define the channel or waveform signal conditions on which to trigger the oscilloscope. The trigger event establishes the time-reference point in the waveform record. All waveform record data is located in time with respect to the trigger point.

To access the Trigger menu, double-tap the Trigger badge on the Settings bar. The Trigger menu opens to show the current trigger settings.

Use the following links to see more information on specific trigger types.

- [Bus Trigger Menu](#)
- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Logic Trigger](#)
- [Pulse Width Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise/Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Sequence Trigger menu](#)
- [Setup & Hold Trigger menu](#)
- [Timeout Trigger menu](#)
- [Window Trigger menu](#)

## Bus Trigger configuration

Use the Bus trigger to trigger on bus-related events (Start, Stop, Missing Ack, Address, Data, and so on).

To open the Bus trigger menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Bus**.
3. Select the bus on which to trigger.

---

**NOTE.** You must add a bus to the Waveform view before you can trigger on it. [Add a math, reference, or bus waveform](#) on page 59.

---

Use the following links to access bus trigger settings information.

[Bus Trigger Settings panel \(Trigger configuration menu\) - Parallel bus](#) on page 232

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - I2C bus](#) on page 233

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - SPI bus](#) on page 234

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - RS232 bus](#) on page 234

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - CAN bus](#) on page 235

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - LIN bus](#) on page 236

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - FlexRay bus](#) on page 237

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - USB bus](#) on page 239

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - Ethernet bus](#) on page 241

[Bus Trigger Settings panel - Audio bus](#) on page 243

**Bus Trigger Settings panel (Trigger configuration menu) - Parallel bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on how the parallel bus is defined.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change. Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

**Bus Trigger Settings panel - I<sup>2</sup>C bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the I <sup>2</sup> C bus on which to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Direction</b>	Sets the transfer direction on which to trigger (Read, Write, Either).  Available when Trigger On = Address.
<b>Addressing Mode</b>	Sets the slave device address length (7 bits or 10 bits long).  Available when Trigger On = Address or Address & Data.
<b>Address</b>	Sets the address pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Address Mode</b> setting.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Address or Address & Data.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to trigger (one to five bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Address & Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Bytes</b> setting.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Address & Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

**Bus Trigger Settings panel - SPI bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>SPI</b> bus on which you want to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Data Words</b>	Sets the number of data words (1 word = 8 bits) on which to trigger (one to sixteen bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Available when Trigger On = Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Words</b> setting.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

**Bus Trigger Settings panel - RS232 bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>RS232</b> bus on which to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes (1 byte = 8 bits) on which to trigger (one to ten bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Available when Trigger On = Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Words</b> setting.  Tap the Binary, Hex, or ASCII field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

## Bus Trigger Settings panel - CAN bus.

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>CAN</b> bus on which you want to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Frame Type</b>	Sets the frame type on which to trigger.  Available when Trigger On = Type of Frame.
<b>Direction</b>	Sets the transfer direction on which to trigger (Read, Write, Either).  Available when Trigger On = Identifier.
<b>Identifier Format</b>	Sets the identifier for standard (11-bit) or extended (29-bit for CAN 2.0B) length.  Available when Trigger On = Identifier or ID & Data.
<b>Identifier</b>	Sets the identifier pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Identifier Format</b> setting.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Identifier or ID & Data.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to trigger (one to eight bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Available when Trigger On = Data or ID & Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Bytes</b> setting.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Data or ID & Data.
<b>Trigger When</b>	Sets the trigger when condition.  Available when Trigger On = Data or ID & Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls on page 244</a> .

**Bus Trigger Settings panel - LIN bus.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>LIN bus</b> on which to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Identifier</b>	Sets the identifier pattern on which to trigger.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> , <b>Hex</b> , or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Identifier or Identifier & Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Bytes</b> setting.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>Trigger When</b>	Sets the trigger when condition.  When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b> , fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified trigger type.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to trigger (one to eight bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Error Type</b>	Sets the LIN error type on which to trigger.  Available when Trigger On = Error.
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

## Bus Trigger Settings panel - FlexRay bus.

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>FlexRay</b> bus on which to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Indicator Bits</b>	Select the indicator bits type on which to trigger.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Indicator Bits or Header Fields.
<b>Identifier</b>	Sets the frame identifier pattern on which to trigger.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> , <b>Hex</b> , or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Frame ID, Header Fields, or Identifier & Data.
<b>Cycle Count</b>	Sets the cycle count pattern on which to trigger. Use in conjunction with the <b>Trigger When</b> field to specify the exact trigger condition.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> , <b>Hex</b> , or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Cycle Count or Header Fields.
<b>Payload Length</b>	Tap the <b>Binary</b> , <b>Hex</b> , or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Header Fields.
<b>Header CRC</b>	Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Header Fields.
<b>Data Bytes</b>	Sets the number of data bytes on which to trigger (one to sixteen bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>Data</b>	Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Bytes</b> setting. Use in conjunction with the <b>Trigger When</b> field to specify the exact trigger condition.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Identifier & Data.
<b>Byte Offset</b>	Sets the byte offset ( <b>Don't Care</b> or the number of bytes). Tap the input box and use the A knob to change the value.  Available when Trigger On = Data or Identifier & Data.

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger When</b>	Sets the trigger when condition.  When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b> , fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified trigger type.  Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Frame ID, Cycle Count, Data, or Identifier & Data.
<b>Frame Type</b>	Sets the end of frame type on which to trigger (Static, Dynamic (DTS), ALL).  Available when Trigger On = End of Frame.
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.  Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

## Bus Trigger Settings panel - USB bus.

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>USB</b> bus on which to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Handshake Type</b>	Sets the handshake packet type on which to trigger.  Available when Trigger On = Handshake Packet.
<b>Packet Type</b>	Sets the special packet type on which to trigger.  Available when Trigger On = Special Packet.
<b>Error Type</b>	Sets the error type on which to trigger.  Available when Trigger On = Error.
<b>Address</b>	Sets the token packet address pattern on which to trigger. Use in conjunction with the <b>Trigger When</b> field to specify the exact trigger condition.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> , <b>Hex</b> , or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Token Packet and Token Type = all except SOF (0101).
<b>Address Low, Address High</b>	Sets the boundary address conditions when testing for in-range or out of range conditions.  Available when Trigger On = Token Packet and Trigger When = Inside Range or Outside Range.
<b>Data Low, Data High</b>	Sets the boundary data conditions when testing for in-range or out of range conditions.  Available when Trigger On = Data Packet and Trigger When = Inside Range or Outside Range.
<b>Token Type</b>	Sets the token packet type on which to trigger.  Available when Trigger On = Token Packet.
<b>Endpoint</b>	Sets the token packet endpoint pattern on which to trigger.  Use in conjunction with the <b>Trigger When</b> field to specify the exact trigger condition. Tap the <b>Binary</b> , <b>Hex</b> , or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Token Packet and Token Type = all except SOF (0101).
<b>Frame Number</b>	Sets the frame number pattern on which to trigger. Use in conjunction with the <b>Trigger When</b> field to specify the exact trigger condition.  Tap the <b>Binary</b> , <b>Hex</b> , or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.  Available when Trigger On = Token Packet and Token Type = SOF (0101).
<b>Data Packet Type</b>	Sets the data packet type on which to trigger.  Available when Trigger On = Data Packet.

Field or control	Description
<b>Data Bytes</b>	<p>Sets the number of data bytes on which to trigger (one to two bytes). Tap the field and use the A knob to change the value.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Data Packet.</p>
<b>Byte Offset</b>	<p>Sets the byte offset (<b>Don't Care</b> or the number of bytes). Tap the field and use the A knob to change the value.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Data Packet.</p>
<b>Data</b>	<p>Sets the data packet pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Bytes</b> setting. Use in conjunction with the Trigger When field to specify the exact trigger condition.</p> <p>Tap the <b>Binary</b>, <b>Hex</b>, or <b>ASCII</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Data Packet and Trigger When = anything but Inside Range or Outside Range.</p>
<b>Trigger When</b>	<p>Sets the trigger when condition.</p> <p>When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b>, fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified trigger type.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Token Packet or Data Packet.</p>
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	<p>Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.</p> <p>Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).</p>
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

## Bus Trigger Settings panel - Ethernet bus.

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>Ethernet</b> bus on which to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>MAC Address Destination, Source</b>	<p>Sets the MAC destination and/or source address pattern on which to trigger.</p> <p>Tap a <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = MAC Addresses.</p>
<b>MAC Length/Type</b>	<p>Sets the MAC length/type pattern on which to trigger.</p> <p>Tap a <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = MAC Length / Type.</p>
<b>MAC Length/Type Low, MAC Length/Type High</b>	<p>Sets the boundary MAC length type conditions when testing for in-range or out of range conditions.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = MAC Length / Type and Trigger When = Inside Range or Outside Range.</p>
<b>IP Protocol</b>	<p>Sets the IP protocol pattern on which to trigger.</p> <p>Tap a <b>Binary</b> or <b>Hex</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = IP Header.</p>
<b>Source, Destination Address</b>	<p>Sets the source and/or destination IP address pattern on which to trigger.</p> <p>Tap a <b>Hex</b> or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = IP Header.</p>
<b>Source Port, Destination Port</b>	<p>Sets the source and/or destination TCP header port pattern on which to trigger.</p> <p>Tap a <b>Binary</b>, <b>Hex</b> or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = TCP Header.</p>
<b>Sequence Number</b>	<p>Sets the TCP header sequence number pattern on which to trigger.</p> <p>Tap a <b>Binary</b>, <b>Hex</b> or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = TCP Header.</p>
<b>Ack Number</b>	<p>Sets the TCP header ack number pattern on which to trigger.</p> <p>Tap a <b>Binary</b>, <b>Hex</b> or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = TCP Header.</p>

Field or control	Description
<b>Data Bytes</b>	<p>Sets the number of client data bytes on which to trigger (one to sixteen bytes). Use the A knob to change the value.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Client Data.</p>
<b>Byte Offset</b>	<p>Sets the client data byte offset (Don't Care or the number of bytes). Tap the field and use the A knob to change the value.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Client Data.</p>
<b>Client Data</b>	<p>Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Bytes</b> setting. Use in conjunction with the Trigger When field to specify the exact trigger condition.</p> <p>Tap the <b>Binary</b>, <b>Hex</b> or <b>ASCII</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Client Data.</p>
<b>Client Data Low, Client Data High</b>	<p>Sets the boundary data values when testing for in-range or out of range conditions. The number of bits shown depends on the <b>Data Bytes</b> setting. Use in conjunction with the Trigger When field to specify the exact trigger condition.</p> <p>Tap the <b>Binary</b>, <b>Hex</b> or <b>ASCII</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Client Data and Trigger When = Inside Range or Outside Range.</p>
<b>Trigger When</b>	<p>Sets the trigger when condition.</p> <p>When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b>, fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified trigger type.</p> <p>Tap the Binary or Hex field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = MAC Length/Type or Client Data.</p>
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	<p>Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.</p> <p>Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).</p>
<b>Mode &amp; Hold off panel</b>	See <a href="#">Mode &amp; Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls</a> on page 244.

## Bus Trigger Settings panel - Audio bus.

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Select the <b>Audio</b> bus on which to trigger.
<b>Trigger On</b>	Select the type of information on which to trigger.
<b>Data</b>	<p>Sets the data pattern on which to trigger. Use in conjunction with the <b>Trigger When</b> field to specify the exact trigger condition.</p> <p>Tap the <b>Binary</b>, <b>Hex</b>, or <b>Decimal</b> field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Data.</p>
<b>Word</b>	<p>Sets the audio word channel on which to trigger (Either, Left, Right).</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Data.</p>
<b>Trigger When</b>	<p>Sets the trigger when condition for the specified data pattern.</p> <p>When set to <b>Inside Range</b> or <b>Outside Range</b>, fields are displayed to set a high and low boundary pattern for the specified trigger type.</p> <p>Tap the Binary, Hex, or Decimal field and use the A and B knobs to select and change the values.</p> <p>Available when Trigger On = Data.</p>
<b>A, B knob controls</b>	<p>Use the A knob to select (highlight) the digit(s) to change.</p> <p>Use the B knob to change the value of the digit(s).</p>

### Mode & Holdoff panel (Bus Trigger configuration panel) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

## Other trigger types.

- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Logic Trigger](#)
- [Pulse Width Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise/Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Sequence Trigger menu](#)
- [Setup & Hold Trigger menu](#)
- [Timeout Trigger menu](#)
- [Window Trigger menu](#)

## Edge Trigger configuration menu

Use the Edge Trigger menu to trigger the oscilloscope when a signal rises and/or falls through a specified level.

To open the Edge trigger menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Edge**.

### Settings panel (Edge Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Type</b>	Set to <b>Edge</b> .
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Coupling</b>	<p>Set the conditioning to apply to the source signal trigger circuit from the source signal.</p> <p><b>DC</b> coupling passes all input signals directly to the trigger circuitry.</p> <p><b>HF Reject</b> coupling attenuates signals above 50 kHz before passing the signal to the trigger circuitry.</p> <p><b>LF Reject</b> coupling attenuates signals below 50 kHz before passing the signal to the trigger circuitry.</p> <p><b>Noise Reject</b> coupling provides stable triggering by increasing the trigger hysteresis. Increased hysteresis reduces the trigger sensitivity to noise so may require greater signal amplitude.</p>
<b>Level</b>	Sets the amplitude level that the signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Set to 50%</b>	Sets the threshold at 50% of the measured signal transition range. 50% is calculated as (Top + Bottom)/2.
<b>Slope</b>	Sets the signal transition direction to detect. (rising, falling, or either direction).

**Mode & Holdoff panel (Edge Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

### Other trigger types.

- [\*Bus Trigger Menu\*](#)
- [\*Logic Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Pulse Width Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Rise Fall Time Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Runt Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Sequence Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Setup and Hold Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Timeout Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Window Trigger menu\*](#)

### Logic Trigger configuration menu

Use the Logic trigger to trigger the oscilloscope when the specified logic conditions occur on any combination of analog and digital inputs. The logic conditions include the state of each input, the condition to test (inputs go true, false, or are within a time limit), and the Boolean function of the inputs.

To open the Logic Trigger menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Logic**.

**Settings panel (Logic Trigger configuration menu) - fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Use Clock Edge?</b>	Enables or disables finding logic patterns that occur on the specified clock edge.
<b>Logic Pattern Define Inputs</b>	Opens the <b>Logic Trigger - Define Inputs</b> menu where you define the logic state ( <b>High</b> , <b>Low</b> , or <b>Don't Care</b> ), and the signal threshold level that defines the logic state (high or low), for each analog or digital signal. See <i>Logic Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu</i> on page 250.
<b>Trigger When</b> (Use Clock Edge = No)	Defines the waveform condition on which to trigger. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Goes True:</b> All conditions change to a true state.</li> <li>■ <b>Goes False:</b> All conditions change to a false state.</li> <li>■ <b>Is True &gt; Limit:</b> Condition remains true longer than a specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Is True &lt; Limit:</b> Condition remains true for less than a specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Is True = Limit:</b> Condition remains true for a specified time (within <math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b>Is True <math>\neq</math> Limit:</b> Condition does not remain true for a specified time (within <math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Clock Source</b> (Use Clock Edge = Yes)	Sets the signal to use as the clock. The clock signal can be a digital, analog, or math waveform
<b>Clock Edge</b> (Use Clock Edge = Yes)	Sets the signal transition edge (rising, falling, or either) for evaluating the logic condition at that clock transition.
<b>Clock Threshold</b> (Use Clock Edge = Yes)	Sets the threshold level that the clock signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition. The clock threshold value is independent of the input signal threshold(s).
<b>Define Logic</b>	Sets the logic condition that must occur with all inputs to cause a trigger event. Sets the logic condition that must occur with all inputs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>AND:</b> All conditions are true.</li> <li>■ <b>OR:</b> Any condition is true.</li> <li>■ <b>NAND:</b> One or more conditions are true.</li> <li>■ <b>NOR:</b> No conditions are true.</li> </ul>

### Mode & Holdoff panel (Logic Trigger configuration menu) - fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

### Other trigger types.

- [Bus Trigger Menu](#)
- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Pulse Width Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Sequence Trigger menu](#)
- [Setup and Hold Trigger menu](#)
- [Timeout Trigger menu](#)
- [Window Trigger menu](#)

### Logic Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu

Use this menu to set the signal sources, logic states, and threshold levels to use for the Logic trigger.

To open the Logic Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set **Trigger Type** to **Logic** (if it is not already set to this).
3. Tap the **Logic Pattern Define Inputs** button.

#### Logic Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Chx (analog channels) or Dx (digital channels)</b>	<p>Use to select the signal sources logic condition on which to perform the logic search (<b>High</b>, <b>Low</b>, <b>Don't Care</b>). Tap to select.</p> <p>If a channel is a digital channel, tap the + symbol to open the list of digital inputs (D0-D7) from which to select individual logic conditions for the digital signals.</p> <p>Use the <b>Threshold</b> field to set the signal level that must be exceeded for that signal to be true (logical 1).</p>
<b>Set All</b>	Sets all signal sources to detect a logic <b>High</b> , <b>Low</b> , or <b>Don't Care</b> condition.

### Pulse Width Trigger configuration menu

Use the Pulse Width Trigger to trigger on specific pulse width conditions, including when a pulse width is within or outside a range of specified times. Pulse Width triggers are often used to troubleshoot digital signals.

To open the Pulse Width trigger configuration menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Pulse Width**.

**Settings panel (Pulse Width Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Trigger When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ &lt; Limit: A pulse width is less than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ &gt; Limit: A pulse width is greater than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ = Limit: A pulse width is equal to the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <math>\neq</math> Limit: A pulse width does not equal (is greater than or less than) the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ Inside Range: A pulse width is in the specified time range (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ Outside Range: A pulse width is outside of the specified time range (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Level</b>	Sets the amplitude level that the signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Set to 50%</b>	Sets the threshold at 50% of the measured signal transition range. 50% is calculated as (Top + Bottom)/2.
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.
<b>High Time Limit</b> (Trigger When = Inside Range or Outside Range)	Sets the longest acceptable pulse width time period for the range condition.
<b>Low Time Limit</b> (Trigger When = Inside Range or Outside Range)	Sets the shortest acceptable pulse width time period for the range condition.
<b>Polarity</b>	Sets the polarity of the pulse to detect (positive pulse only, negative pulse only, or a positive or negative pulse).
<b>Logic Qualification</b>	Set to On to enable logic qualification to further refine the trigger condition by setting the required logic conditions on the source signals to generate a trigger event.
<b>Define Inputs</b>	Opens the Logic Qualification - Define Inputs dialog. Use this dialog to set the logic state, threshold levels, and logic operation of the input signals. See <a href="#">Logic Qualification - Define Inputs configuration menu</a> on page 267. Available when Logic Qualification = On.

**Mode & Holdoff panel (Pulse Width Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

### Other trigger types.

- [Bus Trigger Menu](#)
- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Logic Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Sequence Trigger menu](#)
- [Setup and Hold Trigger menu](#)
- [Timeout Trigger menu](#)
- [Window Trigger menu](#)

### Rise/Fall Time Trigger configuration menu

Use the Rise/Fall Time trigger to trigger when the rise or fall time of a signal is less than, greater than, equal to, or not equal to a specified time limit.

To open the Rise/Fall Time trigger configuration menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Rise/Fall Time**.

#### Settings panel (Rise/Fall Time Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Trigger When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>&lt; Limit</b>: A signal has a rise time less than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>&gt; Limit</b>: A signal has a rise time greater than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>= Limit</b>: A signal has a rise time that is equal to the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b><math>\neq</math> Limit</b>: A signal has a rise time that does not equal (is greater than or less than) the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.
<b>Slope</b>	Sets the signal transition direction to detect. (rising, falling, or either direction).
<b>Upper Threshold</b>	Sets the upper threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Lower Threshold</b>	Sets the lower threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Logic Qualification</b>	When set to On enables logic qualification to further refine the trigger condition by setting the required logic conditions on the source signals to generate a trigger event.
<b>Define Inputs</b>	Opens the <b>Logic Qualification - Define Inputs</b> configuration menu. Use this menu to set the logic state, threshold levels, and logic operation of the input signals. See <a href="#">Logic Qualification - Define Inputs configuration menu</a> on page 267. Available when Logic Qualification = On.

**Mode & Holdoff panel (Rise/Fall Time Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

### Other trigger types.

- [\*Bus Trigger Menu\*](#)
- [\*Edge Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Logic Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Pulse Width Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Runt Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Sequence Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Setup and Hold Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Timeout Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Window Trigger menu\*](#)

### Runt Trigger configuration menu

Use the Runt trigger to trigger on waveforms where a short pulse crosses one threshold but fails to cross a second threshold before recrossing the first.

To open the Runt trigger configuration menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Runt**.

**Settings panel (Runt Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Trigger When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Occurs:</b> A runt signal event occurs.</li> <li>■ <b>&lt; Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width less than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>&gt; Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width greater than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>= Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width that is equal to the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> <li>■ <b><math>\neq</math> Limit:</b> A runt signal event occurs that has a pulse width that does not equal (is greater than or less than) the specified time limit (<math>\pm 5\%</math>).</li> </ul>
<b>Polarity</b>	Sets the polarity of the pulse to detect (positive pulse only, negative pulse only, or a positive or negative pulse).
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.
<b>Upper Threshold</b>	Sets the upper threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Lower Threshold</b>	Sets the lower threshold amplitude level through which the signal must pass to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Logic Qualification</b>	Set to On to enable logic qualification to further refine the trigger condition by setting the required logic conditions on the source signals to generate a trigger event.
<b>Define Inputs</b>	Opens the <b>Logic Qualification - Define Inputs</b> configuration menu. Use this menu to set the logic state, threshold levels, and logic operation of the input signals. See <a href="#">Logic Qualification - Define Inputs configuration menu</a> on page 267. Available when Logic Qualification = On.

### Mode & Holdoff panel (Runt Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

**Other trigger types.**

- [\*Bus Trigger Menu\*](#)
- [\*Edge Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Logic Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Pulse Width Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Rise Fall Time Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Sequence Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Setup and Hold Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Timeout Trigger menu\*](#)
- [\*Window Trigger menu\*](#)

**Sequence Trigger configuration menu**

Use Sequence triggers to trigger on a second (B) event after a first (A) event occurs. You can specify to trigger on the first occurrence of event B (with or without a time delay), or trigger after a specified number of B events occur.

To open the Sequence trigger configuration menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Sequence**.

**Settings panel (Sequence Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>A Trigger Event</b>	<p>Tap to open the <b>A Trigger Event</b> menu to select the first (A) event trigger condition. See <a href="#">A Trigger Event configuration menu</a> on page 261.</p> <p>If the A event does not occur, no trigger event is generated.</p> <p>The <b>Sequence</b> trigger type is not available in the A Trigger Event menu.</p>
<b>B Trigger Event</b>	<p>Tap to open the <b>B Trigger Event</b> menu to select the second (B) event trigger condition. See <a href="#">B Trigger Event configuration menu</a> on page 261.</p> <p>If the A event occurs but the B event does not occur, no trigger event is generated.</p> <p>The <b>Sequence</b> trigger type is not available in the B Trigger Event menu.</p>
<b>After the A Trigger Event is found: Trigger on the 1st B event</b>	<p>Sets the oscilloscope to trigger on the first occurrence of the B event trigger conditions.</p>
<b>After a Delay of:</b>	<p>Sets a time delay condition for the Trigger on 1st B event condition. The oscilloscope waits the specified time period after the A event before detecting and triggering on the B event condition.</p> <p>Available when After the A Trigger Event is found = Trigger on the 1st B event.</p>
<b>After the A Trigger Event is found: Trigger on the Nth B event</b>	<p>Sets the B trigger event to wait for a specified number of trigger events before generating a trigger.</p>
<b>Where N is:</b>	<p>Sets the number of B trigger events that must occur before triggering the oscilloscope.</p> <p>Available when After the A Trigger Event is found = Trigger on the Nth B event.</p>

### Mode & Holdoff panel (Sequence Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	Holdoff is not compatible with Sequence triggering.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

#### Other trigger types.

- [Bus Trigger Menu](#)
- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Logic Trigger menu](#)
- [Pulse Width Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Setup and Hold Trigger menu](#)
- [Timeout Trigger menu](#)
- [Window Trigger menu](#)

## A Trigger Event configuration menu

Use this menu to set the trigger conditions for the A trigger event of a Sequence trigger.

To open the A Trigger Event menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Sequence**.
3. Tap the **A Trigger Event** button.

**A Trigger Event menu (Sequence Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Type</b>	Select the A event trigger type.
<b>Other fields and controls</b>	<p>The fields and controls shown depend on the selected Trigger Type. Use the following links to access setting information on a specific trigger.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <a href="#">Bus Trigger Menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Edge Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Logic Trigger</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Pulse Width Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Rise/Fall Time Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Runt Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Sequence Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Setup &amp; Hold Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Timeout Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Window Trigger menu</a></li> </ul>
<b>NOTE.</b> The Sequence Trigger type is not available in the A Trigger Event menu.	

## B Trigger Event configuration menu

Use this menu to set the trigger conditions for the B trigger event of a Sequence trigger.

To open the B-Trigger Event configuration menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Sequence**.
3. Tap the **B Trigger Event** button.

**B Trigger Event menu (Sequence Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Type</b>	Select the B event trigger type.
<b>Other fields and controls</b>	The fields and controls shown depend on the selected Trigger Type. Use the following links to access setting information on a specific trigger. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <a href="#">Bus Trigger Menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Edge Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Logic Trigger</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Pulse Width Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Rise/Fall Time Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Runt Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Sequence Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Setup &amp; Hold Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Timeout Trigger menu</a></li> <li>■ <a href="#">Window Trigger menu</a></li> </ul>
<b>NOTE.</b> The Sequence Trigger type is not available in the A Trigger Event menu.	

**Setup and Hold Trigger configuration menu**

Use the Setup & Hold trigger to trigger on a waveform when a data signal changes state inside of a specified setup and hold time, relative to a clock edge.

To open the Setup & Hold trigger configuration menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Setup & Hold**.

**Settings panel (Setup & Hold Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Clock Source</b>	Sets the signal to use as the clock. The clock source can be an analog, digital, math, or reference waveform.
<b>Clock Level</b>	Sets the threshold level that the clock signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition. The clock threshold value is independent of the input signal threshold(s).
<b>Clock Edge</b>	Sets the polarity of the clock edge (rising or falling) for evaluating the other menu conditions. The Logic menu also lets you set the clock edge to either edge.
<b>Data Sources: Define Inputs</b>	Opens the Setup & Hold Trigger - Define Inputs menu. Use this menu to select the input signals and their thresholds. See <a href="#">Setup &amp; Hold Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu</a> on page 264.
<b>Setup Time</b>	Sets the length of time that data signal should be stable and not change before a clock edge occurs.
<b>Hold Time</b>	Sets the length of time that data signal should be stable and not change after a clock edge occurs.

**Mode & Holdoff panel (Setup & Hold Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

### Other trigger types.

- [Bus Trigger Menu](#)
- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Logic Trigger menu](#)
- [Pulse Width Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Sequence Trigger menu](#)
- [Timeout Trigger menu](#)
- [Window Trigger menu](#)

### Setup & Hold Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu

Use this menu to set the input signals and their threshold levels for the Setup & Hold trigger.

To open the Setup & Hold Trigger - Define Inputs dialog:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** Badge.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Setup & Hold**.
3. Tap the **Data Sources Define Inputs** button.

### Setup & Hold Trigger - Define Inputs configuration menu fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Chx (analog channels) or Dx (digital channels)</b>	<p>Use to select the signal sources to test for the setup and hold condition. Tap to select for each input source.</p> <p>If a channel is a digital channel, tap the + symbol to open the list of digital inputs (D0-D7) from which to select individual digital signals.</p> <p>Use the Threshold field to set the signal level that must be exceeded for that signal to be true.</p>
<b>Set All</b>	Sets all signal sources to be included or not included.

### Timeout Trigger configuration menu

Use the Timeout Trigger to trigger on a waveform when an expected signal does not transition within a specified period of time, such as when a signal gets stuck either high or low.

To open the Timeout trigger menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Timeout**.

**Settings panel (Timeout Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Trigger When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Stays High:</b> The signal stays above the specified threshold level longer than the specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Stays Low:</b> The signal stays below the specified threshold level longer than the specified time.</li> <li>■ <b>Either:</b> The signal stays above or below the specified threshold level longer than the specified time.</li> </ul>
<b>Threshold</b>	Sets the amplitude level that the signal must pass through to be considered a valid transition.
<b>Set to 50%</b>	Sets the threshold at 50% of the measured signal transition range. 50% is calculated as (Top + Bottom)/2.
<b>Time Limit</b>	Sets the time period condition to be met.
<b>Logic Qualification</b>	When set to On, enables logic qualification to further refine the trigger condition by setting the required logic conditions on the source signals to generate a trigger event.
<b>Define Inputs</b>	Opens the <b>Logic Qualification - Define Inputs</b> configuration menu. Use this menu to set the logic state, threshold levels, and logic operation of the input signals. See <a href="#">Logic Qualification - Define Inputs configuration menu</a> on page 267.  Available when Logic Qualification = On.

**Mode & Holdoff panel (Timeout Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

### Other trigger types.

- [Bus Trigger menu](#)
- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Logic Trigger menu](#)
- [Pulse Width Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Sequence Trigger menu](#)
- [Setup and Hold Trigger menu](#)
- [Window Trigger menu](#)

### Logic Qualification - Define Inputs configuration menu

Use this menu to set the logic state, and threshold levels to use for the trigger.

This menu is available when the trigger type is set to Pulse Width, Timeout, Runt, Window or Rise / Fall Time.

To open the Logic Qualification - Define Inputs menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Pulse Width, Timeout, Runt, Window or Rise / Fall Time**.
3. Tap Logic Qualification to On.
4. Tap the **Define Inputs** button.

### Logic Qualification - Define Inputs (Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.

Field or control	Description
<b>Chx (analog channels) or Dx (digital channels)</b>	<p>Use to select the signal source logic condition on which to perform the logic trigger (High, Low, Don't Care). Tap to select for each input source.</p> <p>If a channel is a digital channel, tap the + symbol to open the list of digital inputs (D0-D7) from which to select logic conditions for the individual digital signals.</p> <p>Use the Threshold field to set the signal level that must be exceeded for that signal to be true (logical 1).</p>
<b>Set All</b>	Sets all signal sources to detect a logic <b>High</b> , <b>Low</b> , or <b>Don't Care</b> condition.
<b>Define Logic</b>	<p>Sets the logic condition that must occur with all inputs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>AND</b>: All conditions are true.</li> <li>■ <b>OR</b>: Any condition is true.</li> <li>■ <b>NAND</b>: One or more conditions are true.</li> <li>■ <b>NOR</b>: No conditions are true.</li> </ul>

## Window Trigger configuration menu

Use the Window Trigger to trigger when a signal rises above an upper threshold level or falls below a lower threshold level (the 'window'), with or without a time limit constraint.

To open the Window trigger menu:

1. Double-tap the **Trigger** badge on the Settings bar.
2. Set the **Trigger Type** to **Window**.

**Settings panel (Window Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Source</b>	Lists the source channel or waveform to use to trigger or search. Types that require multiple inputs will replace this control with a different source definition control.
<b>Trigger When</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Enters Window:</b> The signal outside a window enters the window defined by the upper and lower threshold settings.</li> <li>■ <b>Exits Window:</b> The signal exits the window defined by the upper and lower threshold settings.</li> <li>■ <b>Inside &gt; Limit:</b> The signal remains inside the window longer than the specified time limit.</li> <li>■ <b>Outside &gt; Limit:</b> The signal remains outside the window longer than the specified time limit.</li> </ul>
<b>Upper Threshold</b>	Sets the amplitude threshold value for the upper edge of the window.
<b>Lower Threshold</b>	Sets the amplitude threshold value for the lower edge of the window.
<b>Time Limit</b>	<p>Sets the time period condition to be met.</p> <p>Available when Trigger When = Inside &gt; Limit or Outside &gt; Limit.</p>
<b>Threshold Crossing</b> (Trigger When = Outside > Limit)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Upper:</b> A signal remains above the upper threshold level for longer than the specified time limit before crossing the upper threshold level to a lower level.</li> <li>■ <b>Lower:</b> A signal remains below the lower threshold level for longer than the specified time limit before crossing the lower threshold level to a higher level.</li> <li>■ <b>Either:</b> A signal remains outside (above or below) the two threshold levels for longer than the specified time limit before crossing either threshold level.</li> <li>■ <b>None:</b> A signal remains outside the two specified threshold levels for longer than a specified time limit.</li> </ul>
<b>Threshold Crossing</b> (Trigger When = Inside > Limit)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Upper:</b> A signal remains between two thresholds for longer than the specified time limit before crossing through the upper threshold.</li> <li>■ <b>Lower:</b> A signal remains between two thresholds for longer than the specified time limit before crossing through the lower threshold.</li> <li>■ <b>Either:</b> A signal remains between two thresholds for longer than the specified time limit before crossing through either the upper or lower threshold.</li> <li>■ <b>None:</b> A signal remains between two threshold levels for longer than a specified time limit.</li> </ul>
<b>Logic Qualification</b>	When set to On, enables logic qualification to further refine the trigger condition by setting the required logic conditions on the source signals to generate a trigger event.
<b>Define Inputs</b>	<p>Opens the <b>Logic Qualification - Define Inputs</b> configuration menu. Use this menu to set the logic state, threshold levels, and logic operation of the input signals. See <a href="#">Logic Qualification - Define Inputs configuration menu</a> on page 267.</p> <p>Available when Logic Qualification = On.</p>

**Mode & Holdoff panel (Window Trigger configuration menu) fields and controls.**

Field or control	Description
<b>Trigger Mode</b>	<p>The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence or presence of a trigger event:</p> <p><b>Auto</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire and display a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts when the acquisition is started, and the pretrigger information is obtained. If a trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.</p> <p>When forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, Auto mode does not synchronize the waveform on the display. The waveform will appear to jump across the screen.</p> <p>If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.</p> <p><b>Normal</b> trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the last waveform record acquired remains on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.</p>
<b>Force Trigger</b>	Forces a trigger event regardless of whether the waveform meets any trigger conditions.
<b>Holdoff</b>	<p>Trigger holdoff sets the amount of time the oscilloscope waits after a trigger event before detecting and triggering on the next trigger event.</p> <p><b>Random</b> sets the instrument to wait for a random amount of time before recognizing another trigger event. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.</p> <p><b>Time</b> sets the instrument to wait the specified time before recognizing another trigger event. Use this option when the signal that you want to trigger on has several possible trigger points or is a burst signal.</p>
<b>Holdoff Time</b>	Tap the <b>Holdoff Time</b> field and use the multipurpose knob to adjust the holdoff time value. Or double-tap the field and use the virtual keypad to enter a time holdoff period.
<b>Trigger Frequency Counter</b>	<p>Turn <b>On</b> to display the trigger event frequency in the <b>Trigger</b> badge.</p> <p>The trigger frequency can help you troubleshoot signal problems where the frequency of the trigger event may be related to a clock, switching power supply, or other recurrent frequency that occurs on your DUT.</p> <p>Only available if you have installed the DVM option, which is available when you register your instrument with Tektronix.</p>

### Other trigger types.

- [Bus Trigger Menu](#)
- [Edge Trigger menu](#)
- [Logic Trigger menu](#)
- [Pulse Width Trigger menu](#)
- [Rise Fall Time Trigger menu](#)
- [Runt Trigger menu](#)
- [Sequence Trigger menu](#)
- [Setup and Hold Trigger menu](#)
- [Timeout Trigger menu](#)

## Virtual Keyboard

Use the onscreen virtual keyboard to enter textual information such as a file path, file name, label text, or on-screen note.

To access the virtual keyboard, double-tap in a menu or dialog text input box. Enter your text and tap **Enter** to close the keyboard and add your text to the menu or dialog field.

Tap **ESC**, **Cancel**, or anywhere outside the keyboard, to dismiss it without adding text to the input box.

Single-tap in the keyboard text field to position the insertion cursor at that location. Double-tap to select individual words. Triple-tap to select all text in the field.

Touch and drag the title bar to move the keyboard on the screen.

## Virtual Keypad

Use the virtual Keypad to enter numeric values and units for settings.

To open the virtual keypad, double-tap inside a field that requires numeric values.

### Virtual Keypad fields and controls

Field or control	Description
<b>Clear</b>	Clears all values from the input entry field.
<b>Exp</b>	Lets you enter exponential notation entries.
<b>Max</b>	Enters the maximum value allowed for this setting.
<b>Min</b>	Enters the minimum value allowed for this setting.
<b>Bksp ←</b>	Deletes characters to the left of the insert text marker position.
<b>Enter</b>	Closes the number pad and assigns the entered value to the field.
<b>±</b>	Tap the button to set a numeric value to a positive (default) or negative value.
Unit buttons	Use to set the units of the entered value.

## Waveform View configuration menu

Use this menu to configure the Waveform View to set display mode, waveform interpolation method, persistence, and other parameters.

To open the Waveform View menu, double-tap anywhere in the Waveform View screen.

### Waveform View menu fields and controls

Fields or controls	Description
<b>Display Mode</b>	<p>Sets how waveforms are shown on the screen.</p> <p><b>Overlay</b> mode displays all waveforms on the screen, overlaid on each other. This is the traditional way that oscilloscopes displayed waveforms, and lets you overlay waveforms to do direct comparisons of waveform shape. The grid vertical position and scale values change for each selected waveform.</p> <p><b>Stacked</b> mode draws each waveform in an individual section, or slice, of the screen, stacked one on top of the other. This lets you view each waveform uncluttered by overlaying waveforms. Each waveform slice displays its own vertical scale units. A trigger level indicator in a slice indicates that that waveform is the trigger source.</p>
<b>Interpolation</b>	<p>Selects the method used to display record points between sampled points.</p> <p><b>Sin(x)/x</b> computes record points along a curve between the actual acquired samples. This form of interpolation is useful when acquiring rounded waveforms such as sine waves. It is good for general-purpose uses but may introduce overshoot or undershoot in signals with fast rise times. This interpolation is also useful for looking at high-frequency signals, especially where the frequency components are just below the Nyquist frequency.</p> <p><b>Linear</b> computes record points between actual acquired samples using a straight-line fit. This interpolation is useful for measuring waveforms with fast rise times, such as pulse trains.</p>
<b>Persistence</b>	<p>Sets the length of time data points are displayed on screen before being erased.</p> <p><b>Off</b> sets the record points to appear for the current acquisition only.</p> <p><b>Infinite</b> continuously accumulates record points on the waveform until you change one of the acquisition display settings or clear the acquisition memory. Use infinite persistence for displaying record points that may occur outside the normal acquisition envelope.</p> <p><b>Variable</b> lets you specify a time length to retain data points on screen. Each record point decays independently according to the time interval.</p> <p><b>Auto</b> sets the <b>Waveform Intensity</b> field to control the persistence time.</p>
<b>Variable Persistence Time</b> (Persistence = Variable)	Sets the length of time data points remain displayed. Tap the field and use the A knob to adjust, or double-tap and use the keypad to set a time.
<b>Waveform Style</b>	<p>Sets how waveforms are drawn on the screen.</p> <p><b>Vectors</b> draws waveforms with lines between record points.</p> <p><b>Dots</b> draws waveform record points as dots on the screen.</p>
<b>Waveform Intensity</b>	Sets the brightness of the waveform. Tap the field and use the A knob to set the waveform intensity.

Fields or controls	Description
<b>Graticule Style</b>	Sets the type of graticule to display.  <b>Grid</b> shows a traditional grid on the instrument display. This is the default grid mode.  <b>Time</b> displays vertical graticules for just the horizontal (time) scale units.  <b>Full</b> displays the same style graticule lines for both horizontal and vertical scale units  <b>None</b> turns off the graticule, including the vertical scale readouts.
<b>Graticule Intensity</b>	Sets the brightness of the graticule. Tap the field and use the A knob to set the graticule intensity.



# Waveform acquisition concepts

## Acquisition concepts

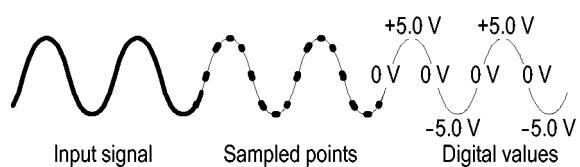
The Acquisition system sets which data points are used to acquire waveforms.

### Acquisition hardware

Before a signal is displayed, it must pass through the input channel where it is scaled and digitized. Each channel has a dedicated input amplifier and digitizer. Each channel produces a stream of digital data from which the instrument extracts waveform records.

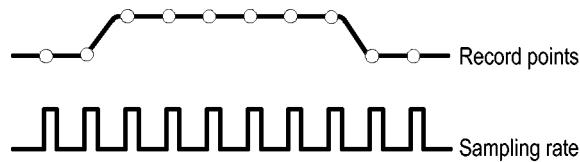
### Sampling process

Acquisition is the process of sampling an analog signal, converting it into digital data, and assembling it into a waveform record, which is then stored in acquisition memory.



### Real-Time sampling

In real-time sampling, the instrument digitizes all of the points it acquires using one trigger event. Use real-time sampling to capture single-shot or transient events.



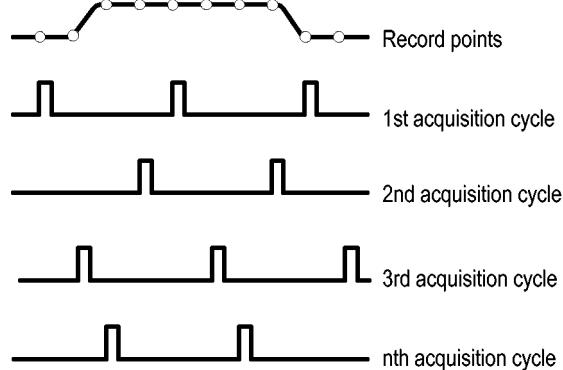
### Interpolated Real-Time sampling

In interpolated real-time sampling, the instrument digitizes all of the points it acquires using one trigger event. If the instrument cannot acquire enough samples for a complete waveform at the maximum real-time sample rate, it interpolates. Use interpolated real-time sampling to capture single-shot or transient events.

## Equivalent-Time sampling

The instrument uses equivalent-time sampling to extend its sample rate beyond its real-time maximum sampling rate. Equivalent-time sampling is only used if Equivalent Time is selected and the time base is set to a sampling rate that is too fast to create a waveform record using real-time sampling.

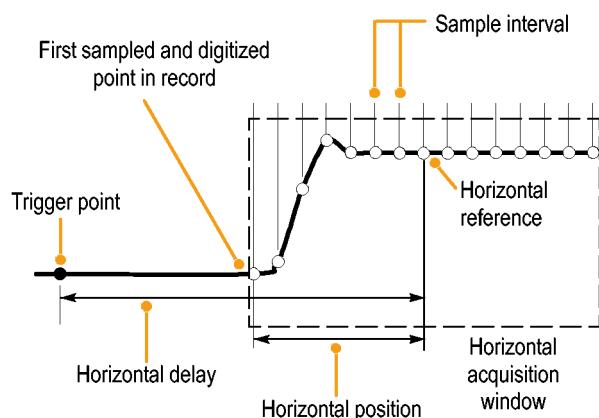
The instrument makes multiple acquisitions of a repetitive waveform to obtain the sample density required for one complete waveform record. Thus, equivalent time sampling should only be used with repetitive signals.



## Waveform record

The instrument builds the waveform record through use of the following parameters:

- Sample interval: The time between sample points.
- Record length: The number of samples required to fill a waveform record.
- Trigger point: The zero time reference in a waveform record.
- Horizontal position: When horizontal delay is off, the horizontal position is a percentage of the waveform record between 0 and 99.9 percent. The trigger point and the horizontal reference are at the same time in the waveform record. For example, if the horizontal position is 50 percent, then the trigger point is in the middle of the waveform record. When horizontal delay is on, the time from the trigger point to the horizontal reference is the horizontal delay.



## Interpolation

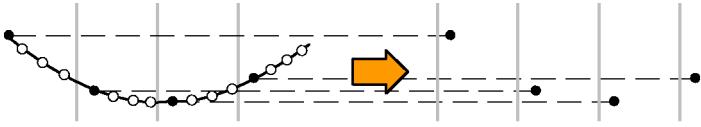
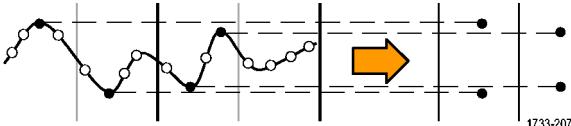
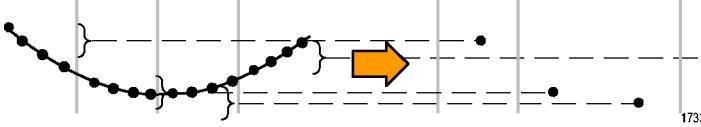
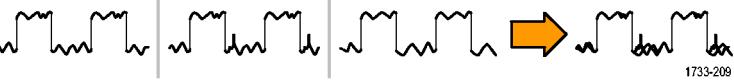
Your instrument can interpolate between the samples it acquires when it does not have all of the actual samples it needs to fill the waveform record. Linear interpolation computes record points between actual acquired samples by using a straight line fit.

$\text{Sin}(x)/x$  interpolation computes record points using a curve fit between the actual values acquired.  $\text{Sin}(x)/x$  interpolation is the default interpolation mode because it requires fewer actual sample points than linear interpolation to accurately represent the waveform.

## Acquisition modes

Acquisition is the process of sampling an analog signal, converting it into digital data, and assembling it into a waveform record, which is then stored in acquisition memory. The acquisition mode determines how the waveform record points are calculated from the sampled waveform data.

### How the acquisition modes work

Acquisition mode	
<b>Sample mode</b> retains the first sampled point from each acquisition interval. Sample is the default mode. The instrument does no post processing of the acquired samples in this mode.	 1733-210
<b>Peak Detect</b> mode retains the highest and lowest values of all the samples in two consecutive acquisition intervals. This mode only works with real-time, noninterpolated sampling and is useful for catching high frequency glitches.	 1733-207
<b>High Res</b> mode applies unique FIR filtering based on the current sample rate. This FIR filter maintains maximum bandwidth possible for that sample rate while rejecting aliasing. The filter removes noise from the oscilloscope amplifiers and ADC above the usable bandwidth for the selected sample rate. Implementation of the filter in hardware, ahead of the trigger and storage, reduces trigger jitter and enables Fast Acq while in High Res mode.	 1733-208
<b>Envelope</b> mode finds the highest and lowest record points over many acquisitions. Envelope uses Peak Detect for each individual acquisition.	 1733-209
<b>Average</b> mode calculates the average value for each record point over many acquisitions. Average uses Sample mode for each individual acquisition. Use Average mode to reduce random noise.	 1733-211
<b>FastAcq™</b> mode is helpful in finding elusive signal anomalies. Fast acquisition mode reduces the dead time between waveform acquisitions, enabling the capture and display of transient events such as glitches and runt pulses. Fast acquisition mode can also display waveform phenomena at an intensity that reflects their rate of occurrence.	

## Waveform sample interpolation

When the sample density falls to less than one sample per display column, the instrument must calculate intermediate points to display a waveform. This process is called interpolation.

There are three options for interpolation:

- Sin(x)/x interpolation. Computes record points using a curve fit between the actual values acquired. It assumes that all the interpolated points fall along that curve.
- Linear interpolation. Computes record points between actual acquired samples by using a straight line fit. It assumes that all the interpolated points fall in their appropriate point in time on that straight line.
- Auto interpolation. Select the best interpolation method.

## Coupling

All instruments and probes specify a maximum signal level. Do not exceed the limit, even momentarily, as the input channel or probe may be damaged. Use external attenuators if necessary to prevent exceeding the limits.

Coupling determines whether an input signal is directly connected to the input channel (DC coupling), connected through a DC blocking capacitor (AC coupling), or not connected at all (GND coupling).

The input resistance of each input channel can be 1 MΩ or 50 Ω. To properly terminate signals when using coaxial cables, or to support active probes with different termination requirements, select the termination in the Channel menu Vertical Settings panel.

All probes expect a specific coupling and input termination. Both coupling and input termination are displayed on the screen. If the instrument determines the coupling and termination required by the probe, either implicitly because of the TekProbe/TekVPI interface or through performing a probe compensation, the instrument sets the required coupling and input termination.

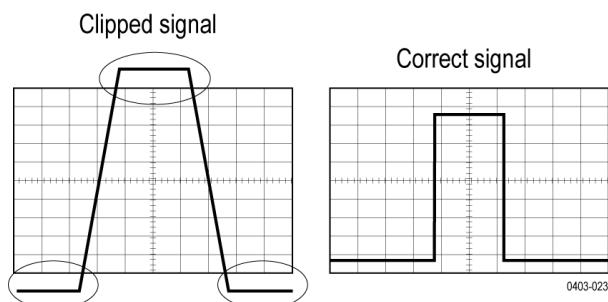
Consider the following when you use 50 Ω termination with any channel:

- The instrument does not accurately display frequencies under 200 kHz if AC coupling is selected.
- The instrument reduces the maximum volts per division setting for the channel, since input amplitudes appropriate for the higher settings would overload the 50 Ω input.

## Scaling and positioning

The scaling and positioning controls determine the portion of the input signal received by the acquisition system. Set vertical scaling, positioning, and DC offsets to display the features of interest on your waveform and to avoid clipping.

Each waveform Slice or Graticule contains ten major divisions. This represents the maximum digitizing range of the instrument for any given vertical scale. Vertical waveform data that is outside (above and/or below) of the waveform Slice or Graticule is clipped; that is, the data values exceed the digitizing capability of the ADC at the current settings. This causes inaccuracies in amplitude-related measurements. For more information see [Vertical acquisition considerations](#) on page 279.



Set the horizontal scale, position, and resolution (record length) to include the acquired waveform record waveform attributes of interest with good sampling density on the waveform. These settings define the horizontal acquisition window, described in [Horizontal acquisition considerations](#) on page 280.

**NOTE.** The terms *vertical acquisition window* and *horizontal acquisition window* refer to the vertical and horizontal range of the segment of the input signal that the acquisition system acquires. The terms do not refer to any display windows on screen.

## Vertical acquisition considerations

You can set the vertical scale, position, and offset of each channel independently of other channels. Vertical scale and offset specify the vertical parameters of the waveform display for each channel. The oscilloscope only acquires signals that fall within these parameters.

The offset control subtracts a constant DC level from the input signal before the vertical scale factor is applied, and the vertical position control adds a constant number of divisions of signal after the scale factor is applied to the resulting difference.

The vertical scale and position controls have the following affects on the waveform display and the displayed waveform:

The vertical volts per division you set determines the vertical size of the waveform display, allowing you to scale it to contain all of a waveform amplitude or only part.

**NOTE.** Amplitude-related automatic measurements (for example, peak-to-peak and RMS) will be accurate for vertical windows if the waveform is not clipped (that is, the waveforms are acquired). But if signal amplitude were to extend outside the vertical acquisition window, the data acquired is clipped. Clipped data causes inaccurate results if used in amplitude-related automatic measurements. Clipping also causes inaccurate amplitude values in waveforms that are stored or exported for use in other programs.

If the scale of a math waveform is changed so that the math waveform is clipped, it will affect the amplitude measurements on that math waveform as follows:

- The vertical position adjusts the display of the graticule relative to the waveform display (position is a display control). That is all position does; it does not determine what data is acquired as do vertical scale and offset.
- As you vary vertical offset, the middle voltage level moves relative to zero. This moves the waveform display up or down relative to the acquired waveform. With input signals that are smaller than the window, it appears the waveform moves in the waveform view. Actually, the offset moves the middle of the waveform display up and down on the input signal. Offset moves the waveform display to control the portion of the waveform amplitude the display captures.
- Applying a negative offset moves the vertical range down relative to the DC level of the input signal. Likewise, applying a positive offset moves the vertical range up.

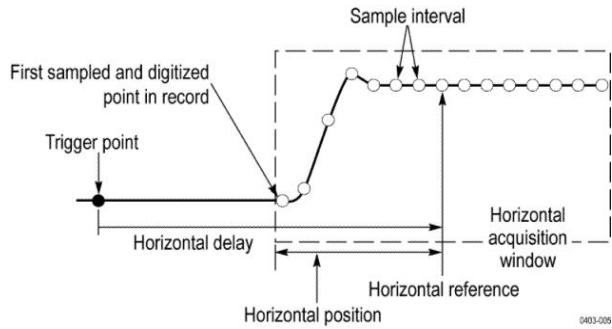
## Horizontal acquisition considerations

The instrument lets you define the horizontal waveform display parameters that determine which segment of an incoming signal becomes the waveform record, following acquisition.

These common parameters specify a horizontal scale and position that is applied to all channels simultaneously.

These parameters are shown in the next figure (horizontal window with delay on):

- The trigger position determines where the trigger event will be located in the waveform record. To see more pretrigger data move your trigger position to the right on the graticule.
- The horizontal position determines the number of pretrigger and posttrigger samples. Samples before the trigger point are pretrigger samples and those after the trigger point are posttrigger samples. When Delay is off, the horizontal position is the same as the trigger position.
- The horizontal delay determines the time from the trigger point to the Horizontal Reference.
- The horizontal scale determines the horizontal size of the display relative to any waveform, allowing you to scale it to contain a waveform edge, a cycle, or several cycles.



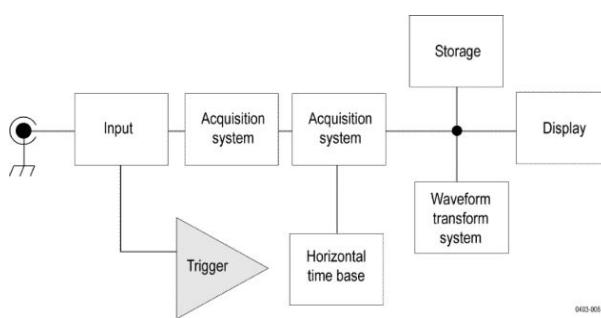
# Trigger concepts

## Triggering concepts

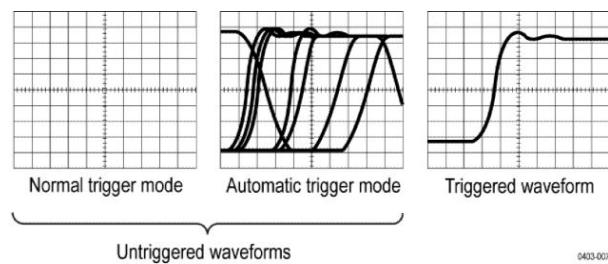
### Overview

User selected trigger conditions are used to capture waveforms for measurement and analysis.

The next figure shows how triggers fit into the overall instrument operation.



Triggers help you capture meaningful waveforms to display on screen. This instrument has simple edge triggers as well as a variety of advanced triggers.



### The trigger event

The trigger event establishes the time-zero point in the waveform record. All waveform record data are located in time with respect to that point. The instrument continuously acquires and retains enough sample points to fill the pretrigger portion of the waveform record (that part of the waveform that is displayed before, or to the left of, the triggering event on screen).

When a trigger event occurs, the instrument starts acquiring samples to build the posttrigger portion of the waveform record (displayed after, or to the right of, the trigger event). Once a trigger is recognized, the instrument will not accept another trigger until the acquisition is complete and the holdoff time has expired.

## Trigger sources

The trigger source provides the signal that triggers acquisition. Use a trigger source that is synchronized with the signal that you are acquiring and displaying.

You can derive your trigger from the following sources:

- **Input channels.** Analog input channels are the most commonly used trigger sources. You can select any of the input channels. The channel that you select as a trigger source will function whether it is displayed or not.
- **Digital channels.** These sources are available if you have a digital probe connected to a FlexChannel. You can select any combination of digital channels.
- **Bus.** This source is used to trigger a parallel bus or a serial bus. You can include any combination of analog, math, or digital channels to build a parallel bus, or use any channel as a component in a serial bus.

## Trigger types

The available trigger types include:

**Edge.** This is the simplest and most commonly used trigger type, used with both analog and digital signals. An edge trigger event occurs when the trigger source passes through a specified voltage level in the specified direction (rising or falling signal voltage).

**Pulse Width.** Trigger on pulses that are inside or outside a specified time range. Can trigger on positive or negative pulses.

**Timeout.** Trigger when no edge transition is detected within a specified time.

**Runt.** Use Runt trigger to trigger on a pulse amplitude that crosses one threshold but fails to cross a second threshold before recrossing the first. Can detect positive or negative runts, or only those wider than a specified width. These pulses can also be qualified by the logical state of other channels.

**Window.** Use the Window trigger to trigger when the input signal rises above an upper threshold level or falls below a lower threshold level. Trigger the instrument as the signal is entering or leaving the threshold window. Qualify the trigger event in terms of time by using the Trigger When Wider option, or by the logical state of other channels using the Trigger When Logic option.

**Logic.** These are special-purpose triggers that are primarily used with digital logic signals. Logic triggers are available on the main and B event triggers.

**Setup & Hold.** Trigger when a logic input changes state inside the setup and hold times relative to the clock. This type triggers on a setup and hold violation.

**Rise/Fall Time.** Trigger on pulse edges that traverse between two thresholds at faster or slower rates than the specified time. The pulse edges can be positive or negative.

**Sequence.** Use the A Trigger Event with the B Trigger Event to capture complex data.

**Bus.** This trigger is used with both analog and digital signals to set up parallel buses or serial buses. A bus trigger event occurs when the instrument detects a bus pattern that you specify for a parallel bus, or a bus cycle you select for a serial bus. A bus is defined in a bus menu.

- **Parallel.** Use to trigger on Parallel bus signals.
- **I<sup>2</sup>C.** Use to trigger on Inter-IC signals: start, stop, repeated start, missing acknowledge, address, data, and address and data.
- **SPI.** Use to trigger on Serial Peripheral Interface signals.
- **RS-232.** Use to trigger on RS-232 signals.

- CAN. Use to trigger on CAN Bus signals.
- LIN. Use to trigger on LIN bus signals.
- FlexRay. Use to trigger on FlexRay bus signals.
- USB. Use to trigger on USB bus signals.
- Ethernet. Use to trigger on Ethernet bus signals.
- Audio. Use to trigger on Audio bus signals.

## Trigger modes

The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence of a trigger event:

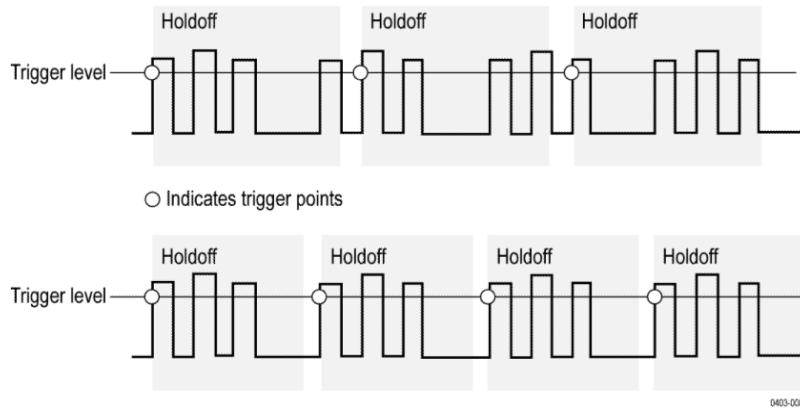
- **Normal** trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the instrument does not acquire a waveform, and the last waveform record acquired remains "frozen" on the display. If no last waveform exists, no waveform is displayed.
- **Auto** trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts after a trigger event occurs. If another trigger event is not detected before the time out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.

Auto mode, when forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, does not synchronize the waveform on the display. In other words, successive acquisitions are not triggered at the same point on the waveform; therefore, the waveform will appear to roll across the screen. If valid triggers occur, the display will become stable.

## Trigger holdoff

Trigger holdoff can help stabilize triggering. When the instrument recognizes a trigger event, it disables the trigger system until acquisition is complete. In addition, the trigger system remains disabled during the holdoff period that follows each acquisition. Adjust holdoff to obtain stable triggering when the instrument is triggering on undesired trigger events.

A digital pulse train is a good example of a complex waveform. Each pulse looks like any other, so many possible trigger points exist. Not all of these will result in the same display. The holdoff period allows the instrument to trigger on the correct edge, resulting in a stable display.



At the longer holdoff time for the top waveform, unstable triggering occurs. With a shorter holdoff set for the bottom waveform, triggers all occur on the first pulse in the burst to remedy the unstable trigger.

The Holdoff setting range is 0 s (minimum holdoff available) to 10 s (maximum holdoff available). For more information on how to set holdoff, see [Set Trigger Holdoff](#) on page 85. If you select Auto holdoff, the instrument selects a holdoff value for you. When Trigger Holdoff is set to Random, the instrument delays the trigger a random amount of time between triggers. This means that successive acquisitions are unrelated to the previous trigger signal.

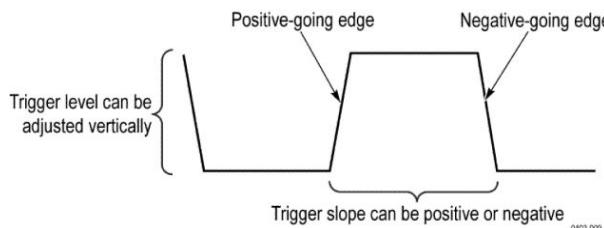
## Trigger coupling

Trigger coupling determines what part of the signal is passed to the trigger circuit. Edge triggering can use all available coupling types: DC, Low Frequency Rejection, High Frequency Rejection, and Noise Rejection. All of the advanced trigger types use DC coupling only.

- **DC.** This coupling passes all input signals to the trigger circuitry.
- **HF Reject.** This coupling attenuates signals above 50 kHz before passing the signal to the trigger circuitry.
- **LF Rej.** This coupling attenuates signals below 50 kHz before passing the signal to the trigger circuitry.
- **Noise Rej.** This coupling provides stable triggering by increasing the trigger hysteresis. Increased hysteresis reduces the trigger sensitivity to noise but may require greater signal amplitude.

## Trigger slope and level

The slope control determines whether the instrument finds the trigger point on the rising or the falling edge of a signal. The level control determines where on that edge the trigger point occurs. See the next figure.



## Trigger position in waveform record

Trigger position is an adjustable feature that defines where the trigger occurs on the waveform record. It lets you choose how much the instrument acquires before and after the trigger event. The part of the record that occurs before the trigger is the pretrigger portion. The part that occurs after the trigger is the posttrigger portion. A longer posttrigger period may be useful when you want to see the effects an event has on your system under test.

Pretrigger data can be valuable when troubleshooting. For example, if you are trying to find the cause of an unwanted glitch in your test circuit, you can trigger on the glitch and make the pretrigger period large enough to capture data before the glitch. By analyzing what happens before the glitch, you may uncover information that helps you find the source of the glitch.

## Trigger delay

Use the Trigger Delay to trigger the instrument a specified period of time after the A trigger. After the A trigger arms the trigger system, the instrument triggers on the next B trigger event that occurs after the time that you specify.

You can trigger with the A trigger system alone or you can combine the A trigger with the B (Delayed) trigger to trigger on sequential events. When using sequential triggering, the A trigger event arms the trigger system, and the B trigger event triggers the instrument when the B trigger conditions are met.

A and B triggers can (and typically do) have separate sources. The B trigger condition can be based on a time delay or a specified number of counted events.

## Advanced triggering

You can check the advanced trigger status in the settings bar. The readout indicates the trigger type and then shows sources, levels, or any other parameters that are important for the particular trigger type.

A Trigger	Delay	B Trigger
2 / 1.52 V	79.04 ns	6 / 0 V

### Bus triggering concepts

A bus trigger occurs when a supported instrument detects a bus pattern that you specify for a parallel bus, or a bus cycle you select for a serial bus.

You can set the instrument to trigger on a parallel bus when the instrument detects a match to the bus pattern, or when the instrument detects that the value on the bus is < or > the value of the bus pattern. The pattern can be in Binary or Hex format.

You can set the instrument to trigger on an SPI bus when the instrument detects an SS Active bus cycle or Data.

You can set the instrument to trigger on an I2C bus when the instrument detects a Start, Stop, Repeated Start, Missing Ack, Address, Data, or Addr + Data bus cycle or activity.

You can set the instrument to trigger on a USB bus when the instrument detects a Sync, Reset, Suspend, Resume, End of Packet, Token (Address) Packet, Data Packet, Handshake Packet, Special Packet, or Error bus cycle or activity.

You can set the instrument to trigger on an RS232 bus when the instrument detects a Start, End of Packet, Data, or Parity Error bus cycle or activity.

You can set the instrument to trigger on a CAN bus when the instrument detects a Start of Frame, Type of Frame, Identifier, Data, Id and Data, End of Frame, Missing Acq, or Bit Stuffing Error bus cycle or activity.

You can set the instrument to trigger on an LIN bus when the instrument detects a Sync, Identifier, Data, Identifier & Data, Wakeup Frame, Sleep Frame, or Error bus cycle or activity.

You can set the instrument to trigger on an FlexRay bus when the instrument detects a Start of Frame, Indicator Bits, Frame Id, Cycle Count, Header Fields, Data, Identifier & Data, End of Frame, or Error bus cycle or activity.

You can set the instrument to trigger on an Ethernet bus when the instrument detects a Start of Frame, MAC Address, MAC Length/Type, IP Header, TCP Header, Client Data, End of Packet, Idle, or FCS (CRC) Error bus cycle or activity.

You can set the instrument to trigger on an AUDIO bus when the instrument detects a Word Select, or Data bus cycle or activity.

For all the serial standard buses, you can also set the component threshold levels through the Bus Setup menu

## Pulse width trigger concepts

A pulse width trigger occurs when the instrument detects a pulse that is inside or outside some specified time range. The instrument can trigger on positive or negative width pulses. Pulse width triggers can also be qualified by the logical state of other channels.

## Timeout trigger

A timeout trigger occurs when the instrument does not detect an expected pulse transition within a user specified period of time, such as when a signal gets stuck either high or low. If the pulse transition occurs prior to a specified timeout time (the expected case), then no trigger results.

## Runt trigger

A runt trigger occurs when the instrument detects a short pulse that crosses one threshold but fails to cross a second threshold before recrossing the first.

- You can set the instrument to detect any positive or negative runt pulse, or only those wider than a specified minimum width.
- Runt pulses can also be qualified by the logical state of other channels.

## Window trigger

Use the Window trigger to trigger the instrument when the input signal rises above an upper threshold level or falls below a lower threshold level.

After setting these levels, you can specify whether you want to trigger the instrument as the signal is entering or leaving the threshold window. You can further qualify the trigger event in terms of time, or by the logical state of other channels.

## Logic trigger concepts

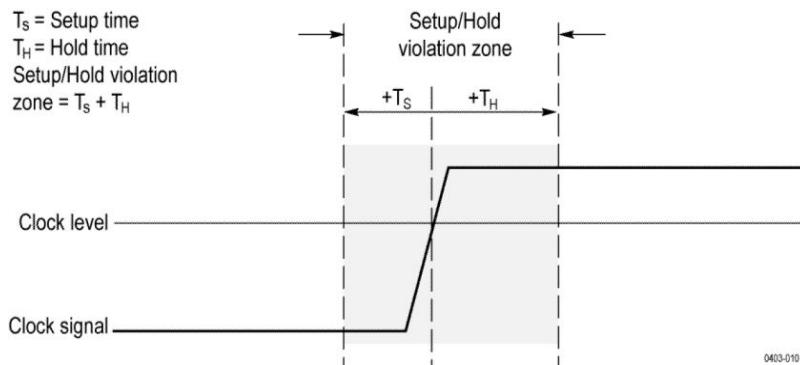
For various trigger types, touch Logic Qualification to toggle logic qualification On to trigger the instrument when the logic patterns are true. You can set each bit to be active High, Low, or Don't Care. You can also set the logic thresholds and define the logic (AND, OR, NOR, or NAND).

## Setup and Hold trigger concepts

A setup/hold trigger occurs when a data signal changes state inside of the user specified setup and hold times relative to the clock. When you use setup/hold triggering, you define:

- The channel containing the logic input (the data source) and the channel containing the clock (the clock source)
- The direction of the clock edge to use
- The clocking level and data threshold that the instrument uses to determine if a clock or data transition has occurred
- The setup and hold times that together define a time range relative to the clock

Data that changes state within the setup/hold violation zone triggers the instrument. The next figure shows how the setup and hold times that you choose position the violation zone relative to the clock.



Setup/hold triggering uses the setup/hold violation zone to detect when data is unstable too near the time it is clocked. Each time trigger holdoff ends, the instrument monitors the data and clock sources. When a clock edge occurs, the instrument checks the data stream it is processing (from the data source) for transitions occurring within the setup/hold violation zone. If any occur, the instrument triggers with the trigger point located at the clock edge.

The setup/hold violation zone spans the clocking edge as shown above. The instrument detects and triggers on data that does not become stable long enough before the clock (setup time violation) or that does not stay stable long enough after the clock (hold time violation).

### Rise/Fall time trigger concepts

Rise/Fall time triggering is based on the slope (change in voltage/change in time) of a pulse edge.

Use the Rise/Fall trigger to trigger the instrument on pulse edges that traverse between two thresholds at faster or slower rates than the specified time. You can set up the instrument to trigger on positive or negative edges. The trigger can be logic qualified.

### Sequential (A B) trigger concepts

In applications that involve two or more signals, you may be able to use sequential triggering to capture more complex events. Sequential triggering uses the A (Main) trigger to arm the trigger system, and then uses the B (Delayed) trigger to trigger the instrument if a specific condition is met.

You can choose one of two trigger conditions:

- Trigger after a Delay. After the A trigger arms the trigger system, the instrument triggers on the next B-trigger event that occurs after the trigger delay time. You can set the trigger delay time with the keypad or a multipurpose knob.
- Trigger on the Nth event. After the A trigger arms the trigger system, the instrument triggers on the Nth B event. You can set the number of B events with the keypad or a multipurpose knob.

---

**NOTE.** The traditional delayed trigger mode called "Runs After" is controlled by the Horizontal Delay feature. You can use horizontal delay to delay acquisition from any trigger event, whether from the A trigger alone or from a sequential trigger that uses both the A and B triggers.

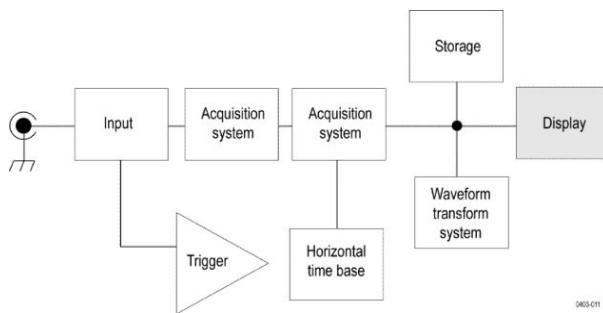
---



# Waveform display concepts

## Waveform display overview

This instrument includes a flexible, customizable display that lets you control how waveforms appear. The figure shows how the display features fit into the overall instrument operation.



The display shows analog, digital, math, reference and bus waveforms. The waveforms include channel markers, individual waveform graticule readings, and trigger source and level indicators. You can set the display to stack each waveform vertically in separate graticules, called 'slices' (the default mode), or overlay all the waveforms on the screen (traditional waveform view).

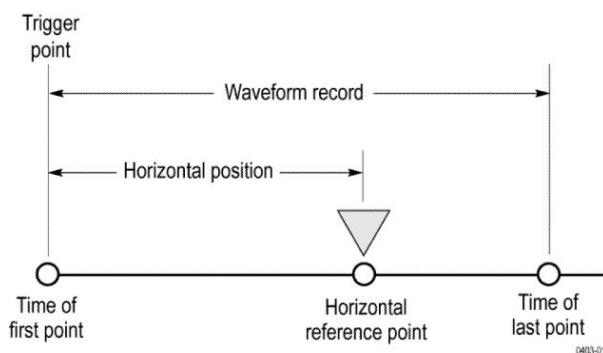
You can also add histogram, spectral, eye, and measurement results views (plots) for individual measurements. These plot views are contained within their own view window and can be moved within the overall view area.

## Waveform preview mode

The waveform preview attempts to show what the next acquisition will look like when the acquisition is delayed due to slow triggers or long acquisition duration, or when the acquisitions have stopped. Waveform preview recalculates math waveforms, but does not represent changes in trigger levels, trigger modes, or different acquisition modes.

## Horizontal position and the horizontal reference point

The time value you set for horizontal position is measured from the trigger point to the horizontal reference point. This is not the same as the time value from the trigger point to the start of the waveform record, unless you set the horizontal reference to 0%. See the next figure.





# Measurement concepts

## Measurement variables

By knowing how the instrument makes calculations, you may better understand how to use your instrument and how to interpret your results. The instrument uses a variety of variables in its calculations. These include:

### Definition of Base and Top

**Base** is the value used as the 0% level in measurements such as fall time and rise time.

**Top** is the value used as the 100% level in measurements such as fall time and rise time. For example, if you set the 10% to 90% rise time, then the instrument calculates 10% and 90% as percentages of Top and Base, with Top representing 100%.

The exact value of Base and Top depends on which Base Top Method you select in the Reference Levels panel of a Measurement configuration menu. It also depends on if you set the reference level to be Global (applies to all measurements set as Global in the Reference Levels panel), or Local (just applies to the measurement that is set to Local).

### Base, Top calculation methods

The Base Top calculation method is set in the Reference Levels panel of a Measurement configuration menu.

**Auto** is the default method, and automatically determines the best Base Top method to use. Most commonly sets the Base Top method to Histogram Mode.

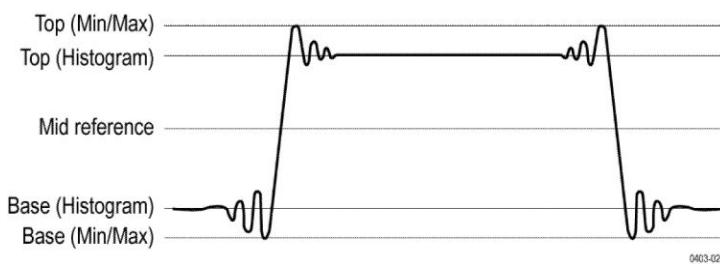
**MinMax** defines the 0% and the 100% waveform levels as the lowest value and the highest value samples of the waveform record. This setting is best for examining waveforms that have no large, flat portions at a common value, such as sine waves and triangle waves - almost any waveform except for pulses.

The MinMax method calculates the Top and Base values as follows:

Top = Max

and

Base = Min



**Histogram Mean** uses histogram analysis to calculate the mean or average value using all values above and below the waveform midpoint. Top is set to the mean high value, and Base is set to the mean low value. This setting is best for examining eye patterns and optical signals.

**Histogram Mode** uses histogram analysis to select the most common values either above or below the midpoint. Since this statistical approach ignores short-term aberrations (overshoot, ringing, and so on), Mode is the best setting for examining pulses.

The oscilloscope calculates the histogram-based *Top* and *Base* values as follows:

1. It makes a histogram of the record with one bin for each digitizing level.
2. It splits the histogram into two sections at the halfway point between *Min* and *Max* (also called *Mid*).
3. The level with the most points in the upper histogram is the *Top* value, and the level with the most points in the lower histogram is the *Base* value.

If *Mid* gives the largest peak value within the histogram, the oscilloscope returns the *Mid* value for both *Top* and *Base* (this is probably a very low amplitude waveform).

If more than one histogram level (bin) has the maximum value, the oscilloscope chooses the bin farthest from *Mid*.

This algorithm does not work well for two-level waveforms with greater than about 100% overshoot.

**Histogram Eye Center** uses histogram analysis of the amplitudes in the center of each bit (unit interval) while ignoring the waveform during bit transitions. The histogram sets the *Top* at the nominal high level and *Base* at the nominal low level. This is similar to the Histogram Mode, except it is less influenced by the shape of the waveform during transitions between bits.

### HighRef, MidRef, LowRef

You set the various reference levels, through the Reference Levels tab of the Measure menu. They include:

**High** is the waveform high reference level (also HighRef). Used in all measurements. Typically set to 90%. You can set it from 0% to 100% or to a voltage level.

**Mid** is the waveform middle reference level (also MidRef). Mid reference levels are used in all measurements that need to find edges. Typically set to 50%. You can set it from 0% to 100% or to a voltage level.

**Low** is the waveform low reference level (also LowRef). Used in all measurements. Typically set to 10%. You can set it from 0% to 100% or to a voltage level.

High, mid and low reference levels can be set uniquely for each measurement source. Reference levels can also be set differently for rising edge detection and falling edge detection.

### Other variables

The instrument also measures several values itself that it uses to help calculate measurements.

**Record Length** is the number of data points in the time base. You set it with the Horizontal menu Record Length item.

**Start** is the location of the start of the measurement zone (X-value). It is 0.0 samples unless you are making a gated measurement. When you use cursor gated measurements, it is the location of the left vertical cursor.

**End** is the location of the end of the measurement zone (X-value). It is (*RecordLength* – 1.0) samples unless you are making a gated measurement. When you use cursor gated measurements, it is the location of the right vertical cursor.

**Hysteresis** is the hysteresis band of the waveform amplitude.

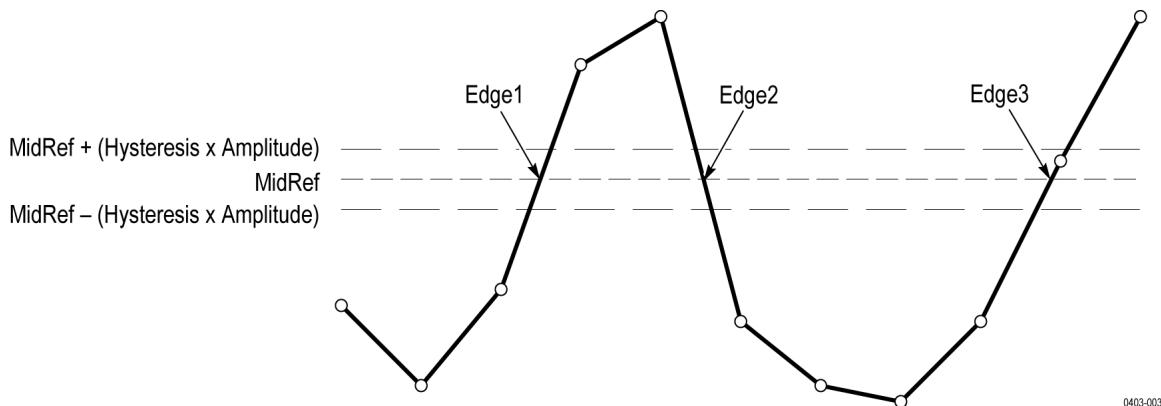
For example, once a crossing has been measured in a negative direction, the waveform data must fall below the hysteresis value of the amplitude from the *Mid* reference point before the measurement system is armed and ready for a positive crossing. Similarly, after a positive *Mid* reference crossing, waveform data must go above the hysteresis value of the amplitude before a negative crossing can be measured. Hysteresis is useful when you are measuring noisy signals, because it allows the oscilloscope to ignore minor fluctuations in the signal.

## Edge calculations

**Edge1, Edge2, and Edge3** refer to the first, second, and third *Mid* reference edge times, respectively.

An edge can be detected when the waveform is either rising or falling past Midref. The direction of the edges alternates, that is, if Edge1 is rising, Edge2 will be falling.

A rising edge has positive polarity. A falling edge has negative polarity.



The instrument calculates these values as follows:

1. Find the first *Mid* reference edge in the waveform record or the gated region. This is *Edge1*.
2. Continuing from *Edge1*, find the next *Mid* reference edge in the waveform record (or the gated region) of the opposite direction of *Edge1*. This is *Edge2*.
3. Continuing from *Edge2*, find the next *Mid* reference edge in the waveform record (or the gated region) of the same direction as *Edge1*. This is *Edge3*.

Cycle-cycle measurements are made on each cycle of the waveform. In the diagram above a cycle starts at *Edge1* and ends at *Edge3*.

**TPOS** is the location of the sample just before the trigger point (the time reference zero sample). In other terms, it contains the domain reference location. This location is where time = 0.

**TSOFF** is the offset between *TPOS* and the actual trigger point. In other words, it is the trigger sample offset. Values range between 0.0 and 1.0 samples. This value is determined by the instrument when it receives a trigger. The actual zero reference (trigger) location in the measurement record is at (*TPOS* + *TSOFF*).

## Missing or out-of-range samples

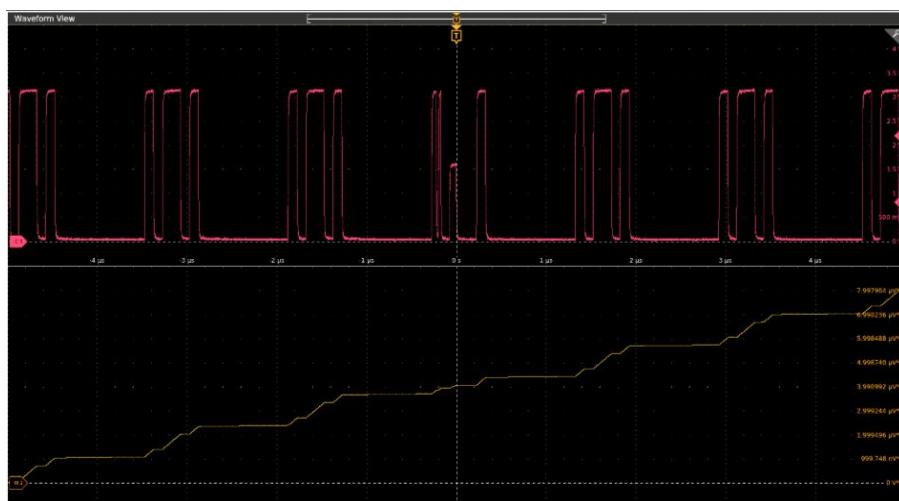
If some samples in the waveform are missing or off-scale, the measurements will interpolate between known samples to make an appropriate guess as to the sample value. Missing samples at the ends of the measurement record will be assumed to have the value of the nearest known sample. The interpolation method can be changed in User Preferences.

When samples are out of range, the measurement will give a warning to that effect (for example, CLIPPING) if the measurement could change by extending the measurement range slightly. The algorithms assume the samples recover from an overdrive condition instantaneously.

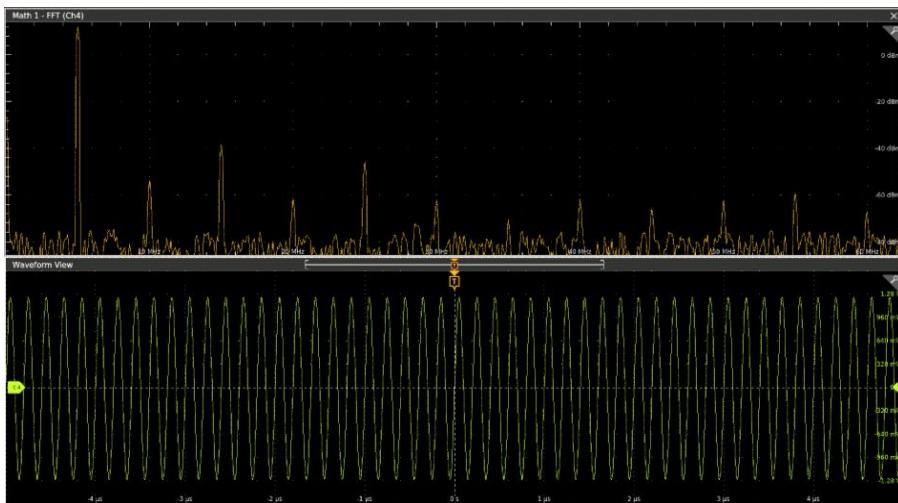
For example, if the *Mid* reference level is set directly, then *Mid* would not change even if samples were out of range. However, if *Mid* was chosen using the % choice from the **Set Levels in %** selection of the Measure menu Reference Levels tab, then *Mid* could give a CLIPPING warning.

## Math waveforms

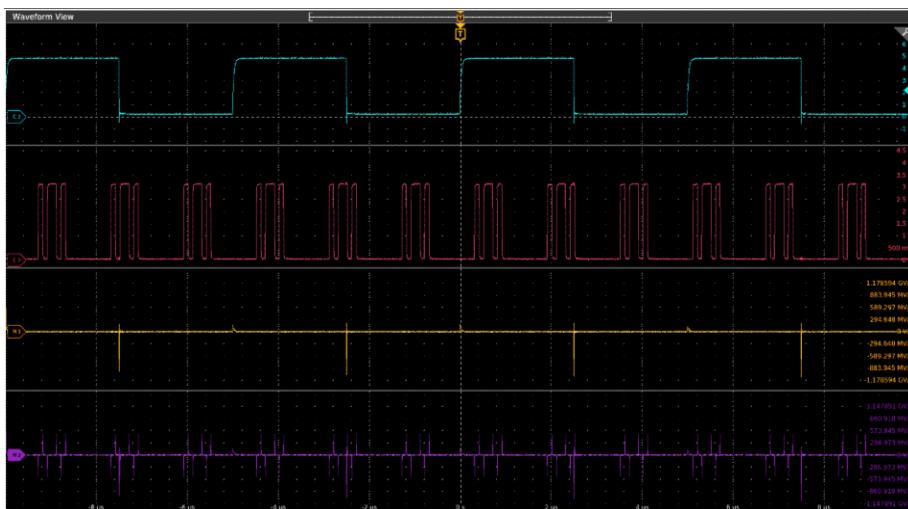
Once you have acquired waveforms or taken measurements on waveforms, the instrument can mathematically combine them to create a waveform that supports your data-analysis task. For example, you might have a waveform clouded by background noise. You can obtain a cleaner waveform by subtracting the background noise from your original waveform. Or, you can integrate a single waveform into an integral math waveform as shown below.



With spectral analysis you can analyze waveforms in the frequency domain. See the next figure.



This instrument supports mathematical combination and functional transformations of waveforms it acquires. The next figure shows this concept:



You create math waveforms to support the analysis of your channel and reference waveforms. By combining and transforming source waveforms and other data into math waveforms, you can derive the data view that your application requires. Create math waveforms that result from:

- Mathematical operations on one or several waveforms: add, subtract, multiply, and divide.
- Functional transformations of waveforms, such as integration, differentiation, and so on.
- Spectral analysis of waveforms, such as testing impulse response.

Measurement scalars can be used in math expressions. For example, you can measure the average of a waveform (using the measurement capabilities of the instrument) and subtract it from the original waveform to define a new math waveform. For example: Ch1 - mean(amplitude(Ch1)).

## Math waveform elements

You can create Math waveforms from the following:

- Channel waveforms
- Reference waveforms
- Measurement scalars (automated measurements) that measure channel, reference, or math waveforms, or histograms.
- Other math waveforms
- Variables
- Filters

### Dependencies

In general, math waveforms that include sources as operands are affected by updates to those sources:

- Shifts in amplitude or DC level of input sources that cause the source to clip also clip the waveform data supplied to the math waveform.
- Changes to the vertical offset setting for a channel source that clips its data also clips the waveform data supplied to the math waveform.
- Changes to the acquisition mode globally affects all input channel sources, modifying any math waveforms using them. For example, with the acquisition mode set to Envelope, a Ch1 + Ch2 math waveform will receive enveloped channel 1 and channel 2 data, and will also be an envelope waveform.
- Clearing the data in a waveform source causes a baseline (ground) to be delivered to any math waveform that includes that source until the source receives new data.

## Math waveform sources

You can create Math waveforms from the following:

- Channel waveforms
- Reference waveforms
- Measurement scalars (automated measurements) that measure channel, reference, or math waveforms, or histograms.
- Other math waveforms
- Variables

### Dependencies

In general, math waveforms that include sources as operands are affected by updates to those sources:

- Shifts in amplitude or DC level of input sources that cause the source to clip also clip the waveform data supplied to the math waveform.
- Changes to the vertical offset setting for a channel source that clips its data also clips the waveform data supplied to the math waveform.
- Changes to the acquisition mode globally affects all input channel sources, modifying any math waveforms using them. For example, with the acquisition mode set to Envelope, a Ch1 + Ch2 math waveform will receive enveloped channel 1 and channel 2 data, and will also be an envelope waveform.
- Clearing the data in a waveform source causes a baseline (ground) to be delivered to any math waveform that includes that source until the source receives new data.

## Guidelines for working with math waveforms

Use the following guidelines when working with math waveforms:

- Keep math waveforms simple. If the math expression becomes too complex, try separating the expression into more than one math waveform and then combining the waveforms (for example, Math1 = Math2 + Math4).
- Math calculations are not available on digital channels.
- Math waveforms cannot be turned on without a math expression.
- To avoid syntax errors in a math expression, verify the use of operators, parentheses, operands, and the spelling of functions.
- If one or more reference waveforms are used in a math waveform, the record length is equal to the smallest of all the source waveforms (reference, math, or channel waveforms). The math is calculated using the first point from each source, followed by the next point, and so forth. This is true even if the sources have different times between points in the record.

## Math waveform editor syntax

You can build math waveforms using the predefined expressions or the equation editor. To help you create valid math waveforms, the following tools will block most illegal entries by disabling any window element that would create an invalid entry in the math waveform expression.

Predefined expressions are accessible using the FFT or Basic Math Types..

The following syntax describes the valid math expressions you can use with the Equation Editor for the Advanced Math Type:

A math expression is composed of settings, functions, scalars and sources.

Settings have the syntax [settingName=settingValue] and are generally applied to measurements. The setting applies to everything to the right of the closing square brackets.

Example: [CoefFileName="highpass\_0.25bw.flt"]HighPass(Ch1)

CoefFileName is the setting and is used as the high pass filter on channel 1.

Example: [CoefFileName="highpass\_0.25bw.flt"] HighPass(Ch1) + [CoefFileName="lowpass\_0.05bw.flt"] LowPass(Ch2)

The high pass filter file is applied to channel 1 and lowpass\_0.05bw.flt is applied to channel 2.

Functions, except for basic and logic functions, have the syntax function(source).

In the previous examples the functions are HighPass and LowPass.

Basic and logic functions have the syntax

source1 function source2.

Examples: Ch1 \* Ch2

Ch1 AND Ch2

Ch1 >= Ch2

Logic functions, ==|<|>|=|<=|>=|AND|OR|NAND|NOR|XOR|EQV result in a waveform consisting of binary 0 and 1 values.

Scalars can be integers, floating point values, PI or meas<x>.

Sources can be Ch<x>, Ref<x>, Math<x>

## Math waveform differentiation

The math capabilities of the instrument include waveform differentiation. This allows you to display a derivative math waveform that indicates the instantaneous rate of change of the waveform acquired.

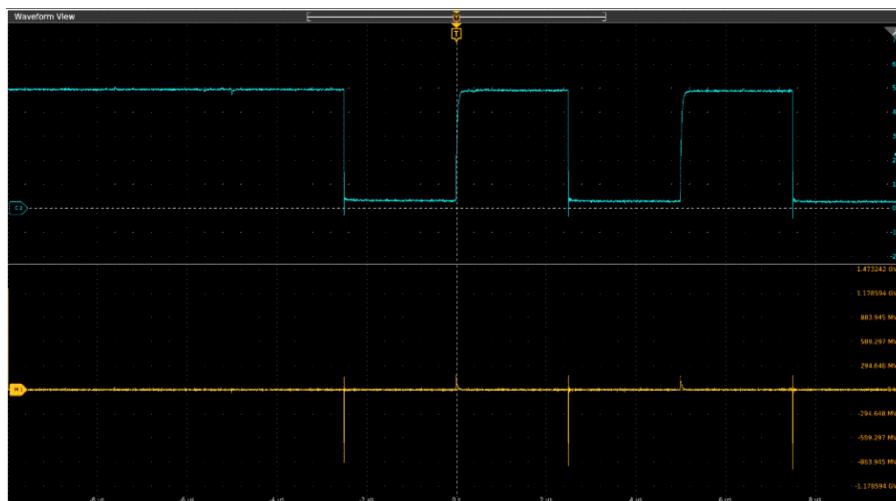
Derivative waveforms are used in the measurement of slew rate of amplifiers and in educational applications. You can create a derivative math waveform and then use it as a source for another derivative waveform. The result is the second derivative of the waveform that was first differentiated.

The math waveform, derived from the sampled waveform, is computed based on the following equation:

$$Y_n = (X(n+1) - X_n) * 1/T$$

Where: **X** is the source waveform, **Y** is the derivative math waveform, and **T** is the time between samples.

Since the resultant math waveform is a derivative waveform (see the next figure), its vertical scale is in volts/second (its horizontal scale is in seconds). The source signal is differentiated over its entire record length; therefore, the math waveform record length equals that of the source waveform.



## Math waveform offset, position, and scale

The settings that you make for offset, scale, and position affect the math waveform you obtain. Here are some tips for obtaining a good display:

- Scale and position the source waveform so that it is contained on the screen. (Off-screen waveforms may be clipped, resulting in errors in the derivative waveform).
- Use vertical position and vertical offset to position your source waveform. The vertical position and offset will not affect your derivative waveform unless you position the source waveform off screen so that it is clipped.

## Waveform integration

The math capabilities of the instrument include waveform integration. This allows you to display an integral math waveform that is an integrated version of the acquired waveform.

Use integral waveforms in the following applications:

- Measuring power and energy, such as in switching power supplies.
- Characterizing mechanical transducers, as when integrating the output of an accelerometer to obtain velocity.

The integral math waveform, derived from the sampled waveform, is computed based on the following equation:

$$y(n) = \text{scale} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x(i) + x(i-1)}{2} T$$

Where: **x(i)** is the source waveform, **y(n)** is a point in the integral math waveform, **scale** is the output scale factor, and **T** is the time between samples.

Since the resultant math waveform is an integral waveform, its vertical scale is in volt-seconds (its horizontal scale is in seconds). The source signal is integrated over its entire record length; therefore, the math waveform record length equals that of the source waveform.

### Offset and position

When creating integrated math waveforms from live channel waveforms, consider the following:

- You should scale and position the source waveform so that it is contained on screen. (Off screen waveforms may be clipped, which will result in errors in the integral waveform.)
- You can use vertical position and vertical offset to position your source waveform. The vertical position and vertical offset will not affect your integral waveform unless you position the source waveform off screen so that it is clipped.

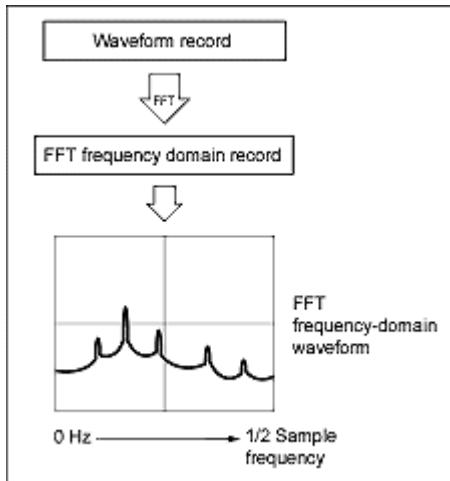
### DC offset

The source waveforms that you connect to the instrument often have a DC offset component. The instrument integrates this offset along with the time-varying portions of your waveform. Even a few divisions of offset in the source waveform may be enough to ensure that the integral waveform saturates (clips), especially with long record lengths.

## FFT process

The FFT process mathematically converts the standard time-domain signal (repetitive or single-shot acquisition) into its frequency components.

The FFT function processes the waveform record and displays the FFT frequency domain record, which contains the input signal frequency components from DC (0 Hz) to  $\frac{1}{2}$  the sample rate (also called the Nyquist frequency).



### Nyquist frequency

The highest frequency that any digital oscilloscope can measure without errors is one-half of the sample rate. This frequency is called the Nyquist frequency.

The FFT waveform displays the input signal frequency components from DC (0 Hz) to the Nyquist frequency.

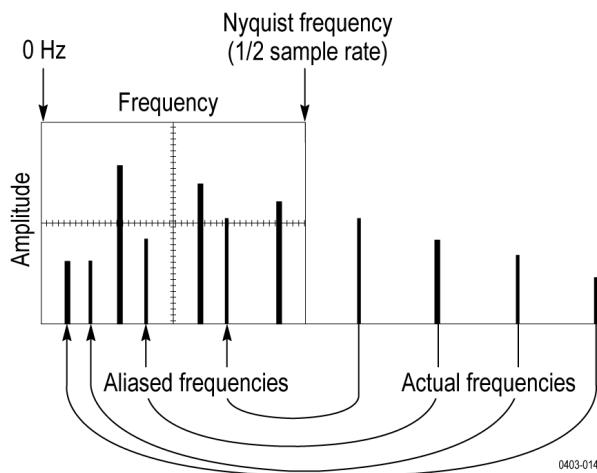
## FFT and aliasing

Aliasing occurs when the input frequency of a signal is greater than one half of the sampling frequency (the sample rate).

Set the sample rate high enough so that the signals in the spectrum appear at their correct frequency as opposed to a lower aliased frequency value. Also, complex signal shapes that have many harmonics in them, such as a triangle or square wave, can appear to be OK in the time domain when in fact many of the harmonics in that signal are aliased.

One way to check for aliasing is to increase the sample rate and observe whether any of the harmonics unwrap to different frequency locations.

Another way to recognize aliasing is to realize that higher order harmonics usually have decreasing magnitudes compared to lower order harmonics. Thus, if you see a series of increasing harmonic magnitude values as frequency increases then you can suspect that they may be aliased. In the spectral math waveform, the actual higher frequency components are under sampled, and therefore they appear as lower frequency aliases that "fold back" around the Nyquist point. (See the next figure.) You may test by increasing the sample rate and observing if aliases unwrap to different frequency positions.



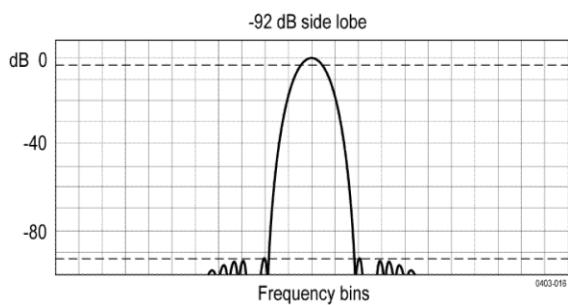
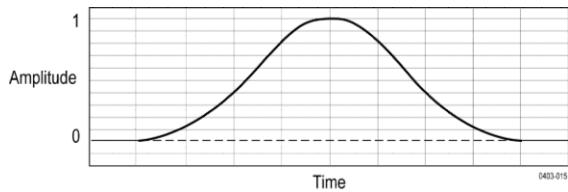
If you have a variable-frequency signal source, another way to observe aliasing is to adjust the frequency slowly while watching the spectral display. If some of the harmonics are aliased, you will see the harmonics decreasing in frequency when they should be increasing or vice versa.

## Blackman-Harris FFT window concepts

FFT windows have various resolution bandwidths and scallop losses (see the figure below). Choose the one that best allows you to view the signal characteristics you are interested in.

The Blackman-Harris window has a low amount of energy leakage compared to the other windows. Its best use is for single frequency signals to look for higher order harmonics.

### Blackman-Harris window

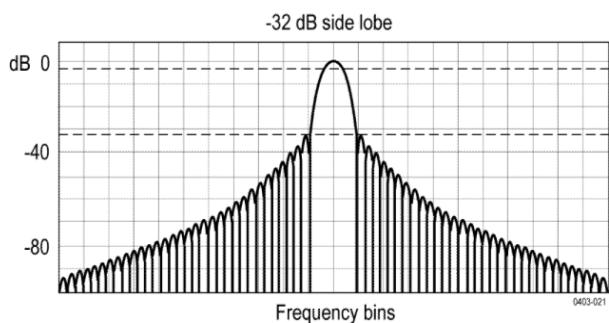
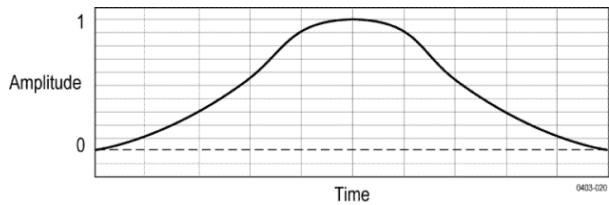


## Hanning FFT window

FFT windows have various resolution bandwidths and scallop losses (see the figure below). Choose the one that best allows you to view the signal characteristics you are interested in.

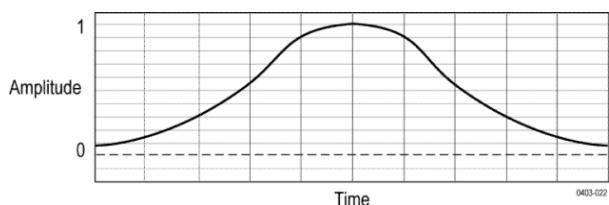
The Hanning window has the narrowest resolution bandwidth, but higher side lobes. Hanning has slightly poorer frequency resolution than Hamming. Hanning is best for measuring sine, periodic, and narrow-band random noise, and transients or bursts where the signal levels before and after the event are significantly different.

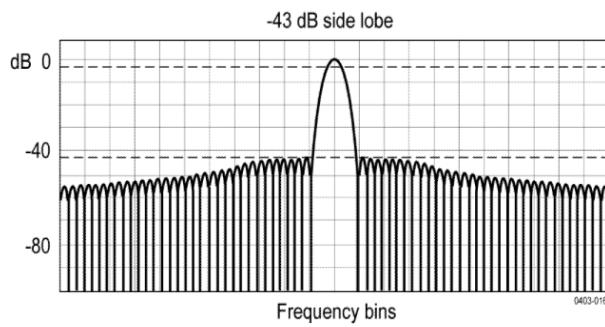
### Hanning window



## Hamming window

This window is unique in that the time domain shape does not taper all the way to zero at the ends. This makes it a good choice if you wanted to process the real and imaginary parts of the spectrum off line and inverse transform it back to the time domain. Because the data does not taper to zero, you can remove the effect of the window function from the result.





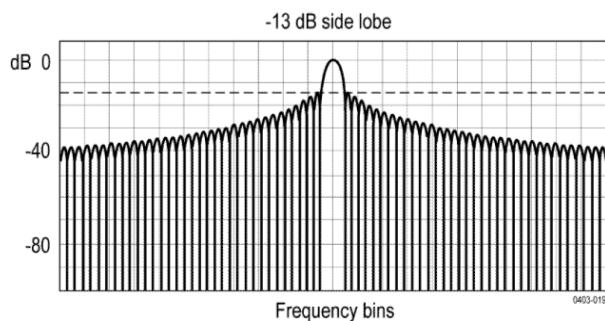
## Rectangular window

This window is equal to unity (see the next figure). This means the data samples in the gate are not modified before input to the spectral analyzer. Rectangular windows are best for measuring transients or bursts where the signal levels before and after the event are nearly equal.

---

**NOTE.** This window has the narrowest resolution bandwidth of any of the windows, but it also has the most spectral leakage and the highest side lobes.

---





# Measurement algorithms

## Amplitude measurement algorithms

### AC RMS measurement algorithm

AC RMS is the true Root Mean Square of the data points about the Mean ( $\mu$ ). This measurement can be made across the entire record or on each cycle in the record.

### Area measurement algorithm

Area is the arithmetic area for one waveform. The area measured above ground is positive. The area measured below ground is negative. Remember that one waveform is not necessarily equal to one cycle. For cyclical data you may prefer to use the cycle area rather than the arithmetic area.

$$\text{Area} = \int_{\text{Start}}^{\text{End}} \text{Waveform}(t) dt$$

0020-025

Details of the integration algorithm are given later. [Integration algorithm](#) on page 305

### Amplitude measurement algorithm

Amplitude is the difference between the Top value and the Base value.

Amplitude = Top - Base

### Base measurement algorithm

Base is calculated using the selected Base Top method. Base is the most common data value below the midpoint of the waveform, when the default Base Top method Histogram Mode is selected. This measurement can be made across the entire record or on each cycle in the record.

### Integration algorithm

The integration algorithm used by the instrument is as follows:

$$\int_A^B W(t) dt \text{ is approximated by } \int_A^B \hat{W}(t) dt \text{ where:}$$

0020-025

$W(t)$  is the sampled waveform

$\hat{W}(t)$  is the continuous function obtained by interpolation of  $W(t)$

A and B are numbers between 0.0 and  $RecordLength - 1.0$

If A and B are integers, then:

$$\int_A^B \hat{W}(t)dt = s \times \sum_{i=A}^{B-1} \frac{W(i) + W(i+1)}{2}$$

0020-025

where  $s$  is the sample interval.

Similarly,

$$\int_A^B (W(t))^2 dt \text{ is approximated by } \int_A^B (\hat{W}(t))^2 dt \text{ where:}$$

0020-027

$W(t)$  is the sampled waveform

$\hat{W}(t)$  is the continuous function obtained by interpolation of  $W(t)$

$A$  and  $B$  are numbers between 0.0 and  $RecordLength - 1.0$

If  $A$  and  $B$  are integers, then:

$$\int_A^B (\hat{W}(t))^2 dt = s \times \sum_{i=A}^{B-1} \frac{(W(i))^2 + W(i) \times W(i+1) + (W(i+1))^2}{3}$$

0020-028

where  $s$  is the sample interval.

### Maximum measurement algorithm

Maximum is the maximum data point. Typically the most positive peak voltage.

### Mean measurement algorithm

Mean is the arithmetic mean of the data points. Remember that one waveform is not necessarily equal to one cycle. For cyclical data you may prefer to use the cycle mean rather than the arithmetic mean.

$$Mean = \frac{\int_{Start}^{End} Waveform(t)dt}{(End - Start) \times SampleInterval}$$

0020-017

Details of the integration algorithm are given in [Integration algorithm](#) on page 305

## Minimum measurement algorithm

Minimum is the minimum data point. Typically the most negative peak voltage.

## Negative Overshoot measurement algorithm

Negative Overshoot is the difference between Minimum and Base, divided by the amplitude. It is the percent that the waveform goes below base.

$$\text{Negative Overshoot} = \frac{\text{Base} - \text{Min}}{\text{Amplitude}} \times 100 \%$$

Note that overshoot values should never be negative (unless *Top* or *Base* are set out-of-range).

## Positive Overshoot measurement algorithm

Positive Overshoot is the difference between Maximum and Top, divided by the amplitude. It is the percent that the waveform goes above top.

$$\text{Positive Overshoot} = \frac{\text{Max} - \text{Top}}{\text{Amplitude}} \times 100 \%$$

Note that this value should never be negative.

## Peak-To-Peak measurement algorithm

Peak to peak is the difference between Maximum and Minimum.

$$\text{PeaktoPeak} = \text{Max} - \text{Min}$$

## RMS measurement algorithm

RMS is the true root mean square of the data points.

$$\text{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{(\text{data1}^2 + \text{data2}^2 \dots)}{(\text{end} - \text{start})}}$$

## Top measurement algorithm

Top is calculated using the selected Base Top method. Top is the most common data value above the midpoint of the waveform, when the default Base Top method Histogram Mode is selected. This measurement can be made across the entire record or on each cycle in the record.

## Timing measurement algorithms

### Burst Width measurement algorithm

Burst Width is the duration of a series of adjacent crossings of the mid reference level. The duration of a burst. Bursts are separated by a user-defined idle time.

### Data Rate measurement algorithm

Data Rate is the reciprocal of Unit Interval. This measurement is made on each bit in the record.

### Delay measurement algorithm

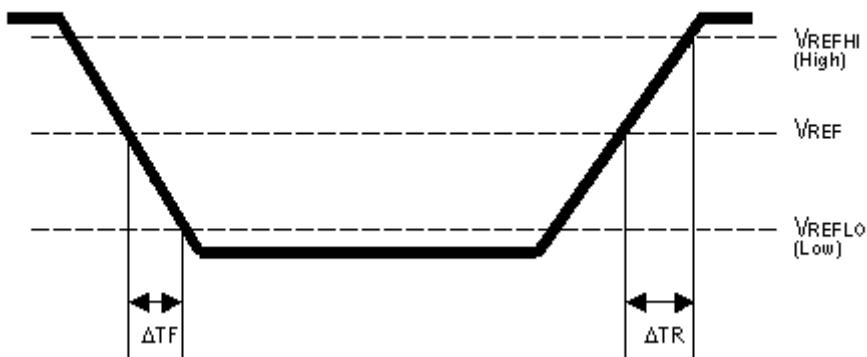
Delay is the time between a mid reference level edge on one source to a mid reference level edge on a second source. The direction of each edge can be configured by the user.

### Falling slew rate

Falling Slew Rate is the rate of change in value as an edge transitions from the high or mid reference level to the mid or low reference level. The levels are configurable.

In the diagram below, the Falling Slew Rate from mid ref to low ref is calculated using the following equation:

$$\text{Falling Slew Rate} = (V_{\text{REF}} - V_{\text{REFLO}})/\Delta T$$

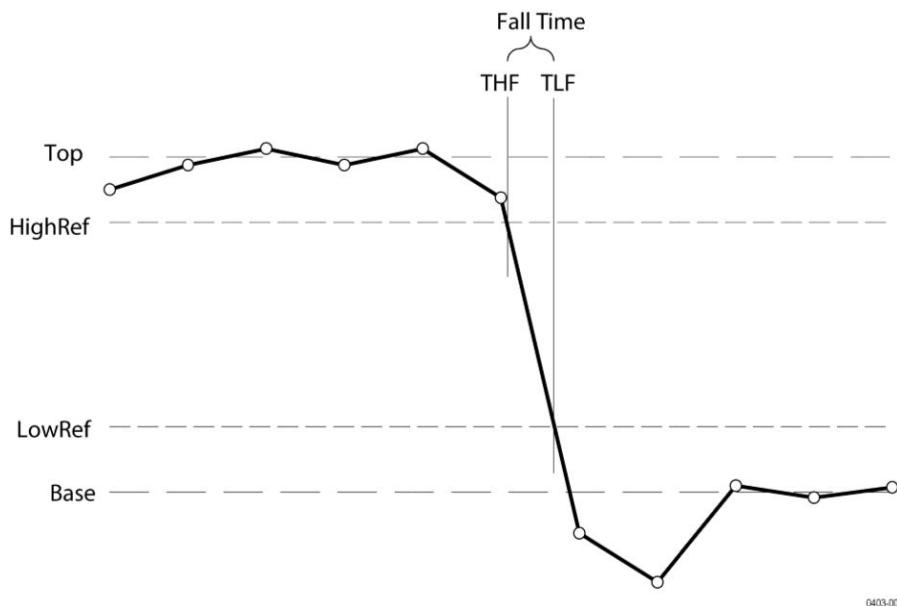


### Fall Time measurement algorithm

Fall Time is the time required for an edge to fall from the high reference level to the low reference level. By default the measurement is from reference level 90% amplitude to 10% amplitude.

The following figure shows a falling edge with the two edges necessary to calculate a Fall measurement. The figure shows the default high reference level which is 90% of Top and the default low reference level which is 10% of Base.

1. Searching from *Start* to *End*, find the first sample in the measurement zone greater than *HighRef*.
2. From this sample, continue the search to find the first (negative) crossing of edge of *HighRef*. The time of this edge is *THF*. (Use interpolation if necessary.)



**Figure 1: Fall Time**

3. From *THF*, continue the search, looking for a crossing of *LowRef*. Update *THF* if subsequent *HighRef* crossings are found. When a *LowRef* crossing is found, it becomes *TLF*. (Use interpolation if necessary.)
4.  $FallTime = TLF - THF$

### Frequency measurement algorithm

Frequency is the reciprocal of the period. Frequency is typically measured in Hertz (Hz) where 1 Hz = 1 cycle per second.

$$Frequency = 1 / Period$$

### High Time measurement algorithm

High Time is the amount of time that a waveform cycle is above the High reference voltage level.

The application calculates the measurement using the following equation:

$$T_{\text{High}}^{\text{High}} = T_{\text{x}}^{\text{Hi-}} - T_{\text{x}}^{\text{Hi+}}$$

Where:

$T_{\text{High}}$  is the high time.

$T_{\text{Hi-}}$  is the High reference crossing on the falling edge.

$T_{\text{Hi+}}$  is the High reference crossing on the rising edge.

### Hold Time measurement algorithm

Hold Time is the time between the mid reference level crossing of the clock source (Source1) and the next mid reference level crossing of the data source (Source2). The crossings (edges) may be configured to be rising, falling or either.

The application calculates this measurement using the following equation:

$$T_n^{Hold} = T_n^{2nd} - T_i^{Main}$$

Where:

$T_{Hold}$  is the hold time.

$T_{Main}$  is the source 1 (clock) Mid reference edge time in the configured direction.

$T_{2nd}$  is the source 2 (data) Mid2 reference edge time in the configured direction.

### Low Time measurement algorithm

Low Time is the amount of time that a waveform cycle is below the Low reference voltage level.

The application calculates this measurement using the following equation:

$$T_n^{Low} = T_n^{Lo+} - T_n^{Lo-}$$

Where:

$T_{Low}$  is the low time.

$T_{Lo+}$  is the Low reference crossing on the rising edge.

$T_{Lo-}$  is the Low reference crossing on the falling edge.

### N-Periods Duration measurement algorithm

Duration N-Periods is the time required to complete N cycles.

The source can be configured to be treated as either a clock or data waveform. Given a voltage waveform, the N-Period is calculated as follows:

**If the Signal Type is Clock.** The N-Period measurement calculates the elapsed time for N consecutive crossings of the mid reference voltage level in the direction specified.

The application calculates this measurement using the following equation:

$$NP_n^{Clock} = T_{n+N}^{Clock} - T_n^{Clock}$$

Where:

$NP_{Clock}$  is the accumulated period for N clock cycles.

$TClock$  is the VRefMid crossing time for the configured edge direction.

**If the Signal Type is Data.** The N-Period measurement calculates the elapsed time for N consecutive unit intervals.

The application calculates this measurement using the following equation:

$$NP_n^{Data} = T_{n+N}^{Data} - T_n^{Data}$$

Where:

$NPData$  is the duration for N unit intervals.

$TData$  is the VRefMid crossing time in either direction.

If  $T_{n+N}^{Data}$  does not exist for a given n, no measurement is recorded for that position.

### Negative Duty Cycle measurement algorithm

Negative Duty Cycle is the ratio of the negative pulse width to the signal period expressed as a percentage.

$NegativeWidth$  is defined in *Negative Pulse Width*, below.

If  $Period = 0$  or undefined then return an error.

$$NegativeDutyCycle = \frac{NegativeWidth}{Period} \times 100\%$$

### Negative Pulse Width measurement algorithm

Negative Pulse Width is the time (or distance) the signal remains below the mid reference level. It is the distance from a falling edge to the next rising edge.

### Period measurement algorithm

Negative Pulse Width is the time (or distance) the signal remains below the mid reference level. It is the distance from a falling edge to the next rising edge. Period is measured in horizontal units, typically seconds.

$$Period = Edge3 - Edge1$$

### Phase measurement algorithm

Phase is the ratio of the Skew between two sources to the Period of the first source. It is the amount of phase shift between edges of the two waveforms. The phase shift is expressed in degrees of the Source1 waveform cycle, where 360 degrees is one complete cycle (Period) of Source1. For best results, Source1 and Source2 should be of the same frequency or one waveform should be a harmonic of the other.

Phase is determined in the following manner for each cycle of the record:

1. The first two adjacent edges of the configured 'from' edge type are found in Source1.
2. The period of Source1 is calculated (see *Period* above). If the "from" edge is set to either, the half-period of Source1 is calculated.
3. The first edge in Source2 in the configured 'to' edge direction is found.
4. The Skew from the first Source1 edge to the next Source2 edge is calculated.

$(\text{Skew}/\text{Period}) * 360$

5. When "from" edge is either, the calculation is  $(\text{Skew}/\text{half-Period}) * 180$ .

### Positive Duty Cycle measurement algorithm

Positive Duty Cycle is the ratio of the positive pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage.

*PositiveWidth* is defined in *Positive Pulse Width*, following.

$$\text{PositiveDutyCycle} = \frac{\text{PositiveWidth}}{\text{Period}} \times 100\% \quad \text{000421}$$

### Positive Pulse Width measurement algorithm

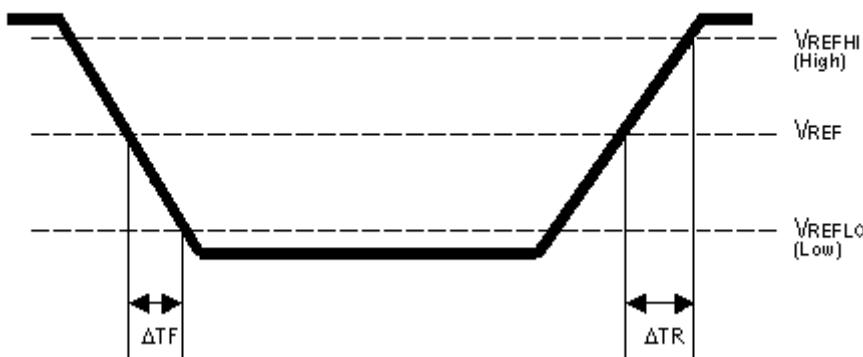
Positive Pulse Width is the time the signal remains above the mid reference level. It is the distance from a rising edge to the next falling edge.

### Rising Slew Rate measurement algorithm

Rising Slew Rate is the rate of change in value as an edge transitions from the low or mid reference level to the mid or high reference level. The levels are configurable.

In the diagram below, the Rising Slew Rate from mid ref to high ref is calculated using the following equation:

$$(V_{\text{REFHI}} - V_{\text{REF}})/\Delta T_{\text{R}}$$

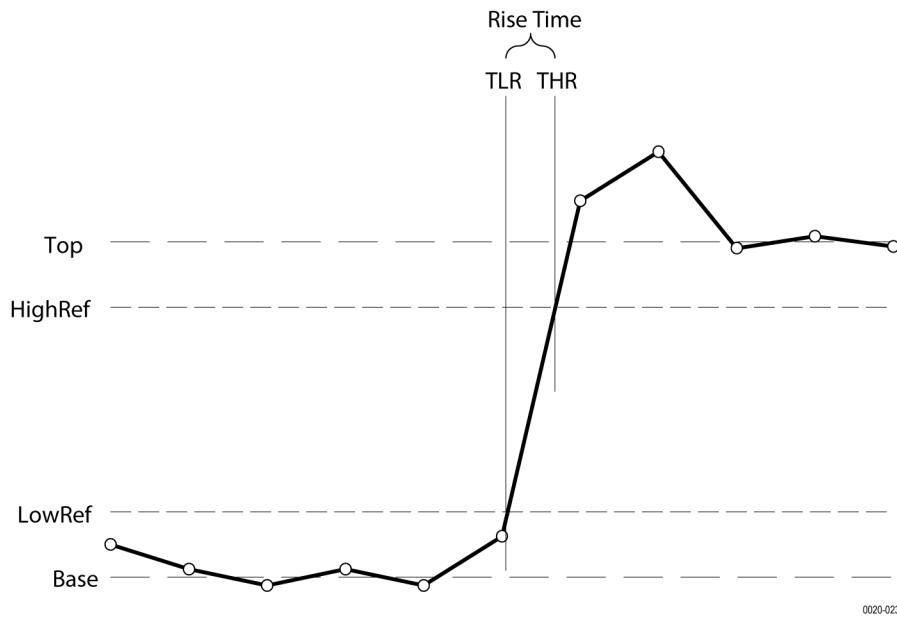


### Rise Time measurement algorithm

Rise Time is the time required for an edge to rise from the low reference level to the high reference level. By default the measurement is from reference level 10% amplitude to 90% amplitude.

The following figure shows a rising edge with the two crossings necessary to calculate a Rise Time measurement.

1. Searching from *Start* to *End*, find the first sample in the measurement zone less than *LowRef*.
2. From this sample, continue the search to find the first (positive) crossing of *LowRef*. The time of this crossing is the low rise time or *TLR*. (Use linear or sin interpolation if necessary.)
3. From *TLR*, continue the search, looking for a crossing of *HighRef*. Update *TLR* if subsequent *LowRef* crossings are found. If a *HighRef* crossing is found, it becomes the high rise time or *THR*. (Use linear or sin interpolation if necessary.)
4.  $\text{RiseTime} = \text{THR} - \text{TLR}$



## Setup

Setup Time is the time between the mid reference level crossing of the clock source (Source1) and the closest previous mid reference level crossing of the data source (Source2). The crossings (edges) may be configured to be rising, falling or either.

The application calculates this measurement using the following equation:

$$T_n^{Setup} = T_i^{Main} - T_n^{2nd}$$

Where:

$T_{Setup}$  is the setup time.

$T_{Main}$  is the Main input (clock) Mid reference crossing time in the specified direction.

$T_{2nd}$  is the 2nd input (data) Mid2 reference crossing time in the specified direction.

## Skew

Skew is the time between the mid reference level crossing on Source1 to the mid reference level crossing on Source2. The direction of the edge crossing is configurable.

The application calculates this measurement using the following equation:

$$T_n^{Skew} = T_n^{Main} - T_n^{2nd}$$

Where:

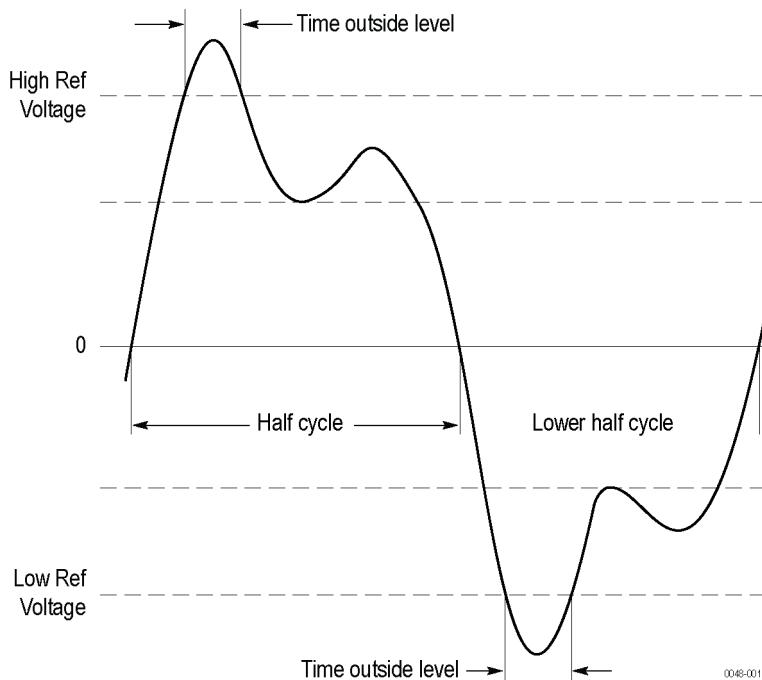
$T_{Skew}$  is the timing skew.

$T_{Main}$  is the Main input Mid reference crossing time in the configured direction.

$T_{2nd}$  is the 2nd input Mid2 reference crossing time in the configured direction.

### Time Outside Level measurement algorithm

Time Outside Level is the time the signal remains above the high reference level and/or below the low reference level.



### Unit Interval measurement algorithm

Unit Interval is the time difference between two successive bits. This measurement is made on each bit in the record. The bits are calculated using clock recovery method constant mean.

## Jitter measurement algorithms

### AC Common Mode

AC Common Mode (Pk-Pk) is the peak-to-peak amplitude of the common mode of the sources. Voltage sources are typically filtered to include only the frequency components above the cutoff frequency (30 kHz). The filter can be disabled in the measurement configuration. The measurement can be configured to take one or two sources, and the cutoff frequency may be enabled or disabled. The application calculates this measurement using the following equation:

$$\text{Peak-to-Peak}(\text{High Pass Filter}((\text{Source1} + \text{Source2})/2))$$

## Bit Amplitude measurement algorithm

Bit Amplitude is the difference between the levels of the "1" and "0" bits surrounding each transition, measured over a specified range at the center of the recovered unit interval. This measurement is made on each transition bit (Mean) or across the entire record (Mode).

## Bit High measurement algorithm

Bit High is the amplitude of a "1" bit. The amplitude is measured over a user-specified portion at the center of the recovered unit interval. This measurement is made on each high bit in the record (Mean) or across the entire record (Mode).

## Bit Low measurement algorithm

Bit Low is the amplitude of a "0" bit. The amplitude is measured over a user-specified portion at the center of the recovered unit interval. This measurement is made on each low bit in the record (Mean) or across the entire record (Mode).

## DC Common Mode measurement algorithm

DC Common Mode is the arithmetic mean of the common mode of two sources. This measurement is made across the entire record.

## Differential Crossover measurement algorithm

Differential Crossover is the voltage level of a differential signal pair at the crossover point(s). This measurement is made at each crossover point in the record.

## SSC Freq Dev measurement algorithm

SSC Freq Dev is the spread spectrum clock frequency deviation from the nominal frequency in ppm (parts per million).

Clock recovery is used on the measurement. The method is constant clock mean.

## SSC Modulation Rate measurement algorithm

SSC Modulating Rate is the modulating frequency of a spread spectrum clock. It is the rate that the clock frequency changes.

Clock recovery is used on the measurement. The method is constant clock mean.

## TIE

TIE (Time Interval Error) is the difference in time between an edge in the source waveform and the corresponding edge in a reference clock. The reference clock is usually determined by a clock recovery process performed on the source waveform. For Explicit-Clock clock recovery, the process is performed on an explicitly identified source.

If the Signal Type is Clock. The application calculates Clock TIE measurement using the following equation:

$$TIE_{\text{Clock}}^{\text{Clock}} = T_{\text{Clock}}^{\text{Clock}} - T'_{\text{Clock}}^{\text{Clock}}$$

Where:

$TIE_{\text{Clock}}$  is the clock time interval error.

$T_{\text{Clock}}$  is the Mid reference crossing time for the specified clock edge.

$T'_{\text{Clock}}$  is the corresponding edge time for the specified reference clock.

If the Signal Type is Data. The application calculates Data TIE measurement using the following equation:

$$TIE_k^{Data} = T_k^{Data} - T'_k^{Data}$$

Where:

$TIE^{Data}$  is the data time interval error.

$T^{Data}$  is the Mid reference crossing time in either direction.

$T'^{Data}$  is the corresponding edge time for the specified reference clock.

The subscript k is used to indicate that there is one measurement per actual edge.

### T/nT Ratio measurement algorithm

T/nT Ratio is the ratio in dB of the midpoint level of the 1st bit after each transition to the midpoints of the 2nd and subsequent non-transition bit levels prior to the next transition. This measurement is made for each non-transition bit in the record.

### DCD

Duty Cycle Distortion (DCD) is the peak-to-peak amplitude for that portion of the deterministic jitter directly correlated with signal polarity, that is the difference between the mean positive edge displacement versus that on negative edges. A single DCD value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

### DDJ

Data-Dependent Jitter (DDJ) is the peak-to-peak amplitude for that portion of the deterministic jitter directly correlated with the data pattern in the waveform. A single DDJ value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

### DJ

Deterministic Jitter (DJ) is the peak-to-peak amplitude for all timing errors that follow deterministic behavior. A single DJ value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

### Dual Dirac deterministic jitter

Dual Dirac Deterministic Jitter (DJ- $\delta\delta$ ) the peak-to-peak magnitude for all timing errors exhibiting deterministic behavior, calculated based on a simplifying assumption that the histogram of all deterministic jitter can be modeled as a pair of equal magnitude dirac functions (impulses). A single DJ- $\delta\delta$  value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

## F/2 measurement algorithm

F/2 is the peak-to-peak amplitude of the periodic jitter occurring at a rate of Fb (data rate) divided by 2. This measurement is made across the entire record.

## F/4 measurement algorithm

F/4 is the peak-to-peak amplitude of the periodic jitter occurring at a rate of Fb (data rate) divided by 4. This measurement is made across the entire record.

## F/8 measurement algorithm

F/8 is the peak-to-peak amplitude of the periodic jitter occurring at a rate of Fb (data rate) divided by 8. This measurement is made across the entire record.

## J2

J2 is Total Jitter at a Bit Error Rate (BER) value of 2.5E-3. This statistical value predicts a peak-to-peak jitter that will only be exceeded with a probability equal to the BER.

## J9

J9 is Total Jitter at a Bit Error Rate (BER) value of 2.5E-10. This statistical value predicts a peak-to-peak jitter that will only be exceeded with a probability equal to the BER.

## Jitter Summary measurement

The Jitter Summary measurement is a predefined set of jitter measurements displayed in a single badge. The measurements include TIE, TJ@BER, Eye Width@BER, RJ-66, DJ-66, PJ, DDJ, and DCD. This measurement also adds Eye Diagram, TIE Histogram, Tie Spectrum, and Bathtub plots to the screen.

## NPJ

Non-Periodic Jitter (NPJ) is the dual-dirac magnitude of that portion of Bounded Uncorrelated Jitter (BUJ) that is not periodic. Since it is not periodic and is not correlated with the data pattern, NPJ is frequently difficult to distinguish from (Gaussian) RJ.

This component of jitter is not analyzed by default, but you can enable it by switching the jitter analysis mode to Spectral + BUJ. Since it typically requires high populations to distinguish, you may need to acquire multiple waveforms before jitter results are available when Spectral + BUJ mode is enabled.

## Phase noise

The Phase Noise measurement performs a jitter measurement, converts the result into the frequency domain, and reports the rms jitter integrated between two specific frequencies selected by the user.

The phase noise measurement is defined only for clock signals. If the source waveform appears to be a data signal, a warning message will be produced but the measurement will proceed.

A Phase Noise measurement is required in order to enable the Phase Noise plot.

## PJ

Periodic Jitter (PJ) is the peak-to-peak amplitude for that portion of the deterministic jitter which is periodic, but for which the period is not correlated with any data pattern in the waveform. A single PJ value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

## RJ

Random Jitter (RJ) is the rms magnitude of all timing errors not exhibiting deterministic behavior. A single RJ value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

### RJ 66 measurement algorithm

RJDIRAC (dual-dirac random jitter) is random jitter based on a simplifying assumption that the histogram of all deterministic jitter can be modeled as a pair of equal-magnitude Dirac functions. This measurement is made across the entire record.

## SRJ

Sub-Rate Jitter is periodic jitter at a rate that integrally divides the data rate. For example, if the data rate is F bits/second, sub-rate jitter components could occur at F/2 or F/4. It typically occurs when a serial data stream is formed by multiplexing (interleaving) an integral number of lower-rate bit streams together, although there can be other causes. Sub-rate jitter is a sub-component of PJ.

The SRJ measurement is the peak-to-peak amplitude for the sum of all F/N jitter components that are tracked by DPOJET. Since different F/N components are correlated with each other, the peak-to-peak SRJ depends on relative phases and is not simply the sum of the individual F/N components.

The SRJ measurement always tracks and accounts for N = 2, 4 and 8 regardless of whether the corresponding F/N measurements have been selected.

## TJ@BER

Total Jitter at a specified Bit Error Rate (BER). This extrapolated value predicts a peak-to-peak jitter that will only be exceeded with a probability equal to the BER. It is generally not equal to the total jitter actually observed in any given acquisition. A single TJ@BER value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

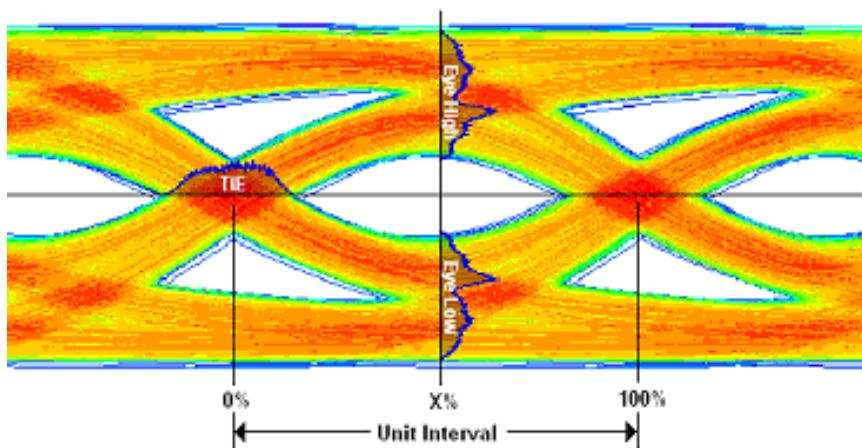
# Eye measurement algorithms

### Eye Height measurement algorithm

Eye Height is the minimum vertical eye opening at the mid of the unit interval. This measurement is made across the entire record.

### Eye high

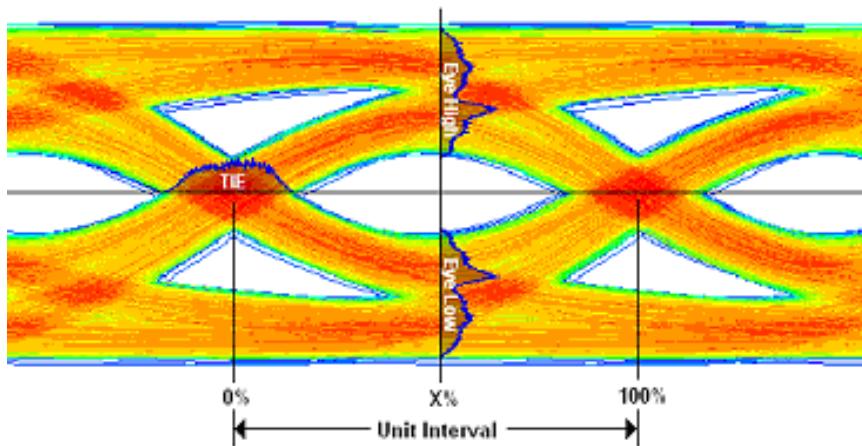
Eye High calculates the voltage at a selected horizontal position across the unit interval, for all High bits in the waveform. You specify the offset at which the measurement takes place from 0% to 100% of the unit interval. Configure the measurement to include all bits, only transition bits, or only non-transition bits. (Note that some of the waveform can be omitted from the measurement due to initialization of clock recovery or filtering.) A histogram of the Eye High measurement corresponds to a vertical slice through the upper half of a three-dimensional eye diagram.



**NOTE.** This illustration shows how the measurement is made, and does not represent how the oscilloscope actually displays an eye diagram or histograms on an eye diagram plot.

### Eye low

Eye Low calculates the voltage at the selected horizontal position across the unit interval, for all Low bits in the waveform. A histogram of the Eye Low measurement corresponds to a vertical slice through the lower half of a three-dimensional eye diagram.



**NOTE.** This illustration shows how the measurement is made, and does not represent how the oscilloscope actually displays an eye diagram or histograms on an eye diagram plot.

## **Eye Width measurement algorithm**

Eye Width is the minimum horizontal eye opening at the user-specified reference level. This measurement is made across the entire record.

## **Height@BER**

Height@BER is the Eye Height at a specified Bit Error Rate (BER). This extrapolated value predicts a vertical eye opening that will be violated with a probability equal to the BER. It is generally not equal to the eye height actually observed in any given acquisition. A single Height@BER value, in the given interval, is determined for each acquisition by means of Q-scale extrapolation.

## **Q-factor**

Quality Factor is the ratio of eye size to noise.

The final measurement value would be computed according to the equation below:

$$\text{Q-factor} = [\text{mean}(\text{EyeHigh}) - \text{mean}(\text{EyeLow})] / [\text{stddev}(\text{EyeHigh}) + \text{stddev}(\text{EyeLow})]$$

Where:

Eye High: the sample values of positive UI at x%.

Eye Low: the sample values of negative UI at x%.

For more details refer Eye Height

## **Width@BER**

Width@BER is the Eye Width at a specified Bit Error Rate (BER). This extrapolated value predicts a horizontal eye opening that will be violated with a probability equal to the BER. It is generally not equal to the eye width actually observed in any given acquisition. A single Width@BER value is determined for each acquisition, by means of RJ-DJ separation analysis.

# Index

250K ohm termination, 201  
5-AFG, SUP5-AFG option, 5

## A

A B Sequence trigger, 258  
A event trigger menu, 261  
A knob, 19  
about the instrument, 204  
AC common mode, 314  
AC line voltage, 282  
AC RMS, 106  
accessories. standard, 3  
Accessory pouch, 3  
Acquired waveform, 278  
acquiring a signal, 49  
Acquisition  
    input channels and digitizers, 275  
    sampling, 275  
Acquisition concepts, 275  
Acquisition controls, 19  
Acquisition menu  
    Clear, 103  
    Run/Stop, 103  
    Save on Trigger, 103  
    Single/Seq, 103  
acquisition menu, open, 53  
acquisition mode, 103  
acquisition modes, 277  
Active probes, 4, 278  
add a channel to the display, 54  
add a measurement badge, 61  
add a measurement plot, 65  
add a new bus, 163, 164  
add a note to the screen, 74  
add a plot, 115  
add a search badge, 68  
add filter (math waveform), 213  
Add Filter dialog, 214  
Add New  
    Bus waveform button, 28  
    Math waveform button, 28

Ref waveform button, 28  
add results table menu, 115, 116  
add statistic readouts to measurements, 145  
add variable (math waveform), 213  
Add Variable dialog, 215  
add waveform to screen, 54  
advanced jitter analysis option, 7  
advanced math waveform, 211  
advanced triggering, 83  
AFG option, 28  
AFG Out (rear panel), 26  
AFG Settings, 162, 163  
AFG Sync out, 197  
aliasing, 300  
Aliasing  
    recognizing, 300  
amplitude measurements  
    AC RMS, 106  
    Amplitude, 106  
    Area, 106  
    Base, 106  
    Maximum, 106  
    Mean, 106  
    Minimum, 106  
    Negative Overshoot, 106  
    Peak-To-Peak, 106  
    Positive Overshoot, 106  
    RMS, 106  
    Top, 106  
Amplitude Measurements panel, 106  
analog channels, 157  
annotations, 195  
Arbitrary function generator (option 5-AFG, SUP5-AFG), 5  
arbitrary/function generator, 162, 163  
Area, 106  
Audio bus trigger settings, 232  
audio serial bus menu, 164, 166  
auto-dim screen, 195  
automatic probe compensation (TPP0500, TPP1000), 43  
Autoset, 49  
Autoset button, 19  
AUX Out, 197

AUX Out (rear panel), 26

Average

    acquisition mode, 103

avoid pinching when rotate handle, 13

## B

B knob, 19

B trigger event menu, 261

backlight, 195

badge types, 31–36

badges, 31–36

Bandwidth options, 6

Base, 106

Bathtub Plot menu, 222

Blackman-Harris FFT window, 218

Blackman-Harris window

    defined, 301

browse save as location menu, 191

Burst Width, 108

Bus badge, 163, 164

Bus button, 19

Bus Decode Results table, 116

Bus Decode Table menu, 118

bus inputs, parallel, 175

bus menu, parallel, 173

bus search, 120

bus setup, 78

bus setup menus, 163, 164

Bus trigger

    defined, 285

bus waveforms, 59

Butterworth filter, 156

## C

cable lock, 26

calculate reference levels, 195

Calibration certificate, 3

CAN bus trigger settings, 232

capturing screen shots, 188

change display settings, 70

change measurement settings, 63

changing channel handle font, color, size, 216

changing note font, color, size, 216

changing waveform handle font, color, size, 216

channel badge, 31–36

channel badge menu, 157

Channel buttons (front panel), 19

channel settings menu, 157

Channel Settings menu

    Other drawer, 159

Clear, 54

clear acquired waveform data, 103

Clear button, 19

Clipping, 278

clipping message, 31–36

Clock Edge, 150

clock format (12/24 hr), how to set, 41

Clock Offset, 150

Clock Recovery panel, 150

Clock Recovery- Advanced Settings, 154

common touchscreen UI tasks, 39

compensate passive probes, 45

compensate probes, 159

compensate TPP0500, TPP1000 probes, 43

configuration menus, 36

configure a measurement, 63

connect a monitor, 48

connect digital signals, 77

connect lock cable, 16

connect to a network, 45

connecting probes, 17

Constant Clock, 150

contact Tektronix, 1, 2

Control windows

    vertical acquisition, 279

copy files, 193

correct handle rotate, 13

Coupling, 278

Creating

    create math waveforms, 294

Current probes, 4

Cursor measurements, 298

cursor settings, 181

cursors

    H Bar, 181

    linked, 181

    split, 181

V Bar, 181  
 V&H Bar, 181  
 waveform, 181  
 Cursors button, 19  
 Cursors button (touchscreen), 27  
 cursors menu, 71  
 customizing measurements, 93

## D

Damping, 150  
 Data Rate, 108  
 date, 183  
 Date/Time badge, turn display on, off, 41  
 DC offset, 299  
 DCD, 316  
 DDJ, 316  
 Default setup, 72  
 Default Setup button, 19  
 define inputs (Setup and Hold trigger), 264  
 Define Inputs menu (Logic search), 135  
 define inputs, Logic trigger, 250  
 define parallel bus inputs, 175  
 definition, 286  
 Delay, 108  
 delay measurement, 308  
 delay trigger, 285  
 delete a measurement badge, 64  
 delete files, 193  
 Demo, 203  
 deskew channels, 160  
 deskew probes, 46, 47  
 Deskew pulse generator accessory, 3  
 diagnostics, 201  
 digital acquisition, 77  
 digital channel configuration, 183, 184  
 digital voltmeter, 184  
 display a channel, 54  
 display cursors, 71  
 display mode, 87  
 display parameters, 87  
 Display Port video output (rear panel), 26  
 display settings, 195  
 Displayed waveform, 278

DJ, 316  
 domain name, 197  
 draw-a-box button, 89  
 Draw-a-Box button, 27  
 Draw-a-Box button (Zoom), 38  
 Dual Dirac Deterministic Jitter, 316  
 dual-dirac random jitter, 318  
 Duration N-Periods, 108  
 DVI video output (rear panel), 26  
 DVM, 184  
 DVM option, 28

## E

e\* Scope HTTP Port, 197  
 e\*Scope, 46  
 Edge search menu, 133  
 Edge trigger menu, 245  
 edit menu, 185  
 eject USB devices, 193  
 electrostatic damage, preventing, 48  
 elements  
     math waveforms, 296  
 Envelope, 103  
 Environment requirements, 14  
 equation editor, 213  
 erase memory, 202, 203  
 erase nonvolatile memory, 202  
 ESD, preventing, 48  
 Ethernet bus trigger settings, 232  
 Ethernet port (rear panel), 26  
 Ethernet serial bus menu, 168  
 Ethernet, connect to, 45  
 expansion point, waveform, 28  
 Explicit Clock, 150  
 external monitor, 48  
 eye diagram plot menu, 217  
 Eye high, 318  
 Eye low, 319

## F

F/2 measurement, 317  
 F/4 measurement, 317

- F/8 measurement, 317  
factory calibration, 202  
factory settings, 72  
Fall slew rate, 308  
Fall Time, 108  
Falling Slew Rate, 108  
Fast Acq button, 19  
Fast acquisitions, 73  
FastAcq, 209  
FastFrames, 297  
FFT  
  process, 300  
FFT aliasing, 300  
FFT math waveforms, 68  
FFT windows, 218  
file menu, 185  
file utilities menu, 193  
filter  
  high pass, 95  
  low pass, 95  
  measurement, 95  
filter for math expression, 214  
Filter/Limit Results panel, 156  
firmware, how to update, 42  
FlexChannel connectors (front panel), 19  
FlexRay bus trigger settings, 232  
FlexRay serial bus menu, 169  
font color, 216  
Force button, 19  
Frequency, 108  
front cover, 13  
Front cover, 3  
front panel  
  Acquisition, 19  
  Autoset button, 19  
  Bus button (front panel), 19  
  Channel buttons (front panel), 19  
  Clear button, 19  
  Cursors button, 19  
  Default Setup, 19  
  description, 19  
  Fast Acq button, 19  
  FlexChannel connectors, 19  
Force button, 19  
High Res button, 19  
Horizontal, 19  
Level knob, 19  
Math button (front panel), 19  
Miscellaneous, 19  
Mode button, 19  
multipurpose knobs, 19  
Navigate buttons (front panel), 19  
Position knob, 19  
Position knob (horizontal), 19  
probe compensation connectors, 19  
Ref button (front panel), 19  
Run/Stop button, 19  
Scale knob, 19  
Scale knob (horizontal), 19  
Single/Seq button, 19  
Slope button, 19  
Touch Off button, 19  
Trigger, 19  
USB ports, 19  
Vertical, 19  
Zoom button (front panel), 19  
Zoom/Pan knobs (horizontal), 19  
functional test, 41

## G

- getting help, 1, 2  
GPIB address, 197  
GPIB talk/listen address, 45  
graticule intensity, 70  
graticule intensity, setting, 272  
graticule style, 70, 88  
graticule style, setting, 272

## H

- H Bar cursors, 181  
Hamming FFT window, 218  
Hamming window  
  defined, 302  
handle rotate, 13  
handles, analog and digital, 28  
Hanning FFT window, 218

Hanning window  
    defined, 302

Hard transit case, 3

harmonics, 300

Height@BER, 320

help menu, 185

Help system, 40

Hi Res  
    acquisition mode, 103

high pass filter, 95, 156

High Res button, 19

High Time, 108

histogram plot, 67

Histogram plot menu, 220

Hold Time, 108

holdoff, trigger, 85

Horizontal acquisition  
    delay, 280  
    position, 280, 289  
    reference point, 289  
    window, 278

Horizontal controls, 19

horizontal measurement units, 195

horizontal menu, open, 51

horizontal mode, 209

horizontal scale, 209

horizontal settings, 209

host name, 197

how to  
    connect probes, 17  
    add a measurement, 61  
    add a measurement plot, 65  
    add a measurement results table to the screen, 116  
    add a note to screen, 74  
    Add bus waveform, 59  
    add label to a measurement, 147  
    Add math waveform, 59  
    Add reference waveform, 59  
    add waveform to screen, 54  
    change display settings, 70  
    change graticule intensity, 70  
    change graticule style, 70  
    change measurement settings, 63  
    change persistence, 70  
    change waveform intensity, 70  
    change waveform interpolation, 70  
    check power-on self tests results, 16  
    compensate TPP0500, TPP1000 probes, 43  
    configure a results table, 116  
    connect probes, 17  
    connect to network, 45  
    connect to PC using USB cable, 45  
    delete a measurement, 64  
    delete columns in a results table, 116  
    delete individual measurements from a results table, 116  
    display cursors, 71  
    download, install firmware, 42  
    enable daylight saving time mode, 183  
    load a reference waveform, 101  
    load a Session file., 102  
    move columns in a results table, 116  
    open acquisition menu, 53  
    open horizontal menu, 51  
    quickly display waveform (Autoset), 49  
    recall a reference waveform, 101  
    recall a Session file., 102  
    recall an instrument setup, 101  
    remote access the oscilloscope (from Web), 46  
    run signal path compensation (SPC), 42  
    save a plot image to a file, 226  
    save a report to a file, 99  
    save a screen image, 97  
    save a session, 100  
    save a waveform file, 98  
    save instrument settings, 98  
    save plot data to a file, 227  
    set acquisition parameters, 53  
    set clock format (12/24 hr), 41  
    set Date/Time badge on, off, 41  
    set GPIB talk/listen address, 45  
    set horizontal parameters, 51  
    set pulse width trigger, 84  
    set time zone, 41, 183  
    set trigger holdoff, 85  
    set trigger parameters, 51  
    update firmware, 42

use Autoset, 49  
use mouse with the UI, 39  
How to  
  change display mode (stacked, Overlay), 70

## I

I/O, 197  
I2C bus trigger settings, 232  
I2C serial bus menu, 171  
I2S, 164  
idata, plot, 227  
image, plot, 226  
inactive channel buttons, 28  
Input  
  resistance, 278  
  termination, 278  
Input channel  
  trigger sources, 282  
input signal level requirements, 15  
install license, 204  
install option license  
  how to, 16, 17, 39, 41–43, 45, 46, 49, 51, 53, 54, 59, 61, 63–65, 70, 71, 74, 84, 85, 97–102, 116, 118, 147, 183, 205, 207, 226, 227  
installed options, 204  
installed probes, 204  
instrument settings  
  saving, 98  
instrument setup  
  recalling, 101  
intensity, graticule, 70  
intensity, waveform, 70  
interpolation, 87, 278  
Interpolation, 276  
Interpolation mode, setting, 272  
inverted screen color mode, 195  
IP address, 197

## J

jitter analysis, advanced (option 5-DJA, SUP5-DJA), 7  
jitter measurements  
  Phase Noise, 110, 111  
  TIE, 110, 111  
jitter separation model, 195

Jitter summary, 317  
JTF BW, 150

## K

key features, xiii  
keyboard, 271  
keyboard, installing, 47  
keypad, 271  
knob A, 19  
knob B, 19

## L

label, measurement, 147  
LAN, 197  
LAN port (rear panel), 26  
LAN reset, 197  
LAN Reset, 200  
LAN status, 197  
LAN, connect to, 45  
Left Justified (LJ) audio bus, 164  
Level, 284  
Level knob, 19  
license file (option install), 207  
license file (option), 10  
license key uninstall, 205  
limits  
  measurement, 96  
LIN bus trigger settings, 232  
LIN serial bus menu, 172  
linked cursors, 181  
load  
  waveform, 101  
load option license file, 207  
loading  
  files, 186  
  reference waveforms, 186  
  session files, 186  
  setup files, 186  
lock to bench or rack, 16  
Logic search menu, 134  
Logic Search- Define Inputs menu, 135  
logic trigger, 247  
Logic trigger input settings, 250

Loop BW, 150  
 low pas filter, 95  
 low pass filter, 156  
 Low time, 310  
 Low Time, 108  
 LXI, 46

## M

MAC address, 197  
 marking waveform events, 68  
 Math button, 19  
 math editor, 297  
 Math equation, 294  
 math syntax, 297  
 math waveform, 213  
 Math waveform
 

- differentiation, 298
- elements, 296
- guidelines, 297
- interactions, 294
- offset, 298
- position, 298
- scale, 298
- sources, 296

 math waveform menu, 211  
 math waveforms
 

- FFT, 68

 Maximum, 106  
 Maximum signal level, 278  
 Mean, 106  
 Measure button, 27  
 measurement
 

- adding a label, 93
- customizing, 93
- plots, 65
- reference levels, 94

 Measurement algorithm
 

- base, 305
- bit amplitude, 315
- bit high, 315
- bit low, 315
- DC common mode, 315
- differential lcrossover, 315

Measurement algorithms
 

- amplitude, 305
- burst width, 308
- Edge1, 293
- Edge1Polarity, 293
- Edge2, 293
- Edge3, 293
- end, 292
- EndCycle, 293
- frequency, 309
- HighRef, 292
- histogram method, 292
- hysteresis, 292
- integration algorithm, 305
- LowRef, 292
- maximum, 306
- mean, 306
- MidRef, 292
- min-max method, 291–293
- minimum, 307
- missing samples, 294
- N-Periods, 310
- negative duty cycle, 311
- negative overshoot, 307
- negative pulse width, 311
- out of range samples, 294
- peak to peak, 307
- period, 311
- phase, 311
- positive duty cycle, 312
- positive overshoot, 307
- positive width, 312
- record length, 292
- rise time, 312
- RMS, 307
- start, 292
- top, base, 291–293
- TPOS, 293
- TSOFF, 293
- variables, 291–293, 308
- waveform record length, 293

 measurement annotations, 195  
 measurement badge, 31–36

- measurement badge, delete, 64  
Measurement configuration menu, 145  
measurement filters, 95  
measurement gates  
  setting, 95  
measurement interpolation mode, 195  
measurement label, 147  
measurement limits, 96  
Measurement Name panel, 146  
Measurement Results table, 116  
Measurement Results table menu, 116  
measurement units, horizontal, 195  
measurements  
  AC RMS, 106  
  Amplitude, 106  
  Base, 106  
  Burst Width, 108  
  Data Rate, 108  
  Delay, 108  
  Duration N-Periods, 108  
  Fall Time, 108  
  Falling Slew Rate, 108  
  Frequency, 108  
  High Time, 108  
  Hold Time, 108  
  Low Time, 108  
  Maximum, 106  
  Mean, 106  
  Minimum, 106  
  Negative Duty Cycle, 108  
  Negative Overshoot, 106  
  Negative Pulse Width, 108  
  Peak-To-Peak, 106  
  Period, 108  
  Phase, 108  
  Phase Noise, 110, 111  
  Positive Duty Cycle, 108  
  Positive Overshoot, 106  
  Positive Pulse Width, 108  
  Rise Time, 108  
  Rising Slew Rate, 108  
  RMS, 106  
  Setup Time, 108  
  Skew, 108  
  TIE, 110, 111  
  Time Outside Level, 108  
  Top, 106  
  Unit Interval, 108  
memory erase, 203  
menu  
  Reference waveform, 228  
Menu bar, 27  
menu panels, 36  
menus, 36  
Mini keyboard, 3  
Minimum, 106  
Miscellaneous controls, 19  
Mode button (front panel), 19  
monitor, connecting, 48  
Mouse, 3  
mouse touchscreen UI equivalents, 39  
mouse, installing, 47  
move cursors, 71  
multipurpose knobs, 19
- ## N
- Navigate buttons (horizontal), 19  
navigation buttons, badges, 31–36  
Negative Duty Cycle, 108  
Negative Overshoot, 106  
Negative Pulse Width, 108  
network address, 197  
network, connect to, 45  
nonvolatile memory erase, 203  
Normal screen color mode, 195  
note, 74  
Note button, 27  
notes, 216  
NPJ measurement, 317  
numeric keypad, 271  
Nyquist point, 300
- ## O
- Offset  
  math offset and position, 299  
on screen keyboard, 271

open acquisition menu, 53  
 open horizontal menu, 51  
 opening files, 186  
 operating  
     altitude range, 14  
     humidity range, 14  
     temperature range, 14  
 operating power requirements, 14  
 option details, 204  
 option license, 204  
 option license file, load, 207  
 option license, uninstall, 11, 205  
 options  
     install an option, 10  
     option license file, 10  
 Options  
     5-DJA, SUP5-DJA (advanced jitter analysis), 7  
     advanced jitter analysis (option 5-DJA, SUP5-DJA), 7  
 Options, bandwidth, 6  
 Other drawer  
     Channel Settings menu, 159  
 overlay display mode, 87  
 overlay mode (waveforms), 70  
 Overlay mode, setting, 272

## P

packing list, 3  
 pallete (Fast Acq), 73  
 Pan, 38  
 panels, menu, 36  
 parallel bus  
     trigger, 86  
 parallel bus inputs, 175  
 parallel bus menu, 173  
 parallel bus search, 120  
 parallel bus trigger settings, 232  
 paste files, 193  
 Peak Detect  
     acquisition mode, 103  
 Peak-To-Peak, 106  
 Period, 108  
 persistence, 88  
 persistence, waveform, 70  
 Phase, 108

Phase noise, 110, 111, 317  
 pinching and handle rotate, 13  
 PJ, 318  
 PLL clock recovery, 150  
 PLL model, 150  
 plot  
     spectrum, 67  
     time trend, 67  
     XY, 68  
     XYZ, 68  
 Plot  
     histogram, 67  
 plot a measurement, 65  
 Plot button, 27  
 plot data file, 227  
 plot image file, 226  
 plot menu  
     Histogram, 220  
 plot menu, Trend, 224  
 plot view configuration menus, 216  
 Plot XY menu, 225  
 plot XYZ menu, 225  
 plots, adding, 115  
 Position, 298  
 Position control, 278  
 Position knob, 19  
 Position knob (horizontal), 19  
 Positive Duty Cycle, 108  
 Positive Overshoot, 106  
 Positive Pulse Width, 108  
 Power cord, 3  
 power cord connector (rear panel), 26  
 power cord options, 8  
 power cord wrap, 15  
 power requirements, 14  
 power standby mode, 15  
 power-on self tests, 201  
 power-on test results, 16  
 powering on or off, 15  
 preventing ESD, 48  
 probe  
     unsupported, 158  
 probe compensation, 159  
 probe compensation (TPP0500, TPP1000), 43

probe compensation connectors, 19  
probe inputs, 19  
probe setup  
  analog, 158  
probes  
  connecting, 17  
probes, connecting, 17  
product description, xiii  
projector, connecting, 48  
proper handle rotate, 13  
Pulse Width search menu, 135  
pulse width trigger, 84, 250  
Pulse width trigger, 286

## Q

Q-factor, 320

## R

rack mount kit information, 18  
Rackmount kit accessory, 3  
rear panel  
  AFG Out, 26  
  AUX Out, 26  
  cable lock, 26  
  Display Port video output, 26  
  DVI video output, 26  
  Ethernet port (RJ-45), 26  
  LAN port (RJ-45), 26  
  power cord, 26  
  security cable lock, 26  
  USB Device port, 26  
  USB Host ports, 26  
  VGA video output, 26  
  video outputs, 26  
rear panel connections, 26  
recall  
  instrument setup, 101  
  waveform, 101  
recall reference file menu, 229  
recalling, 97  
record length, 209  
Record length, 280  
Record length memory options, 8

record view, waveform, 28  
Rectangular FFT window, 218  
Rectangular window  
  defined, 303  
redo last action, 195  
Ref button, 19  
Ref In, 26  
Ref In (rear panel), 26  
reference clock out, 197  
reference levels  
  measurement, 94  
Reference waveform menu, 228  
reference waveforms, 59  
remote access (e\*Scope), 46  
remote access (Web-based), 46  
remove AC power from instrument, 15  
rename files, 193  
reports  
  saving, 99  
requirements  
  altitude, 14  
  environment, 14  
  humidity, 14  
  power, 14  
  signal inputs, 15  
  temperature, 14  
Results bar, 27  
results table (bus), 118  
Results Table button, 27  
results tables, 116  
return license, 204  
right click settings, 195  
Right Justified (RJ) audio bus, 164  
Rise Time, 108  
Rise/Fall Time search menu, 137  
rise/fall time trigger, 253, 287  
Rising Slew Rate, 108  
Rj, 318  
RJ 66, 318  
RJDIRAC, 318  
RM5 rack mount, 18  
RMS, 106  
RS232 bus trigger settings, 232  
RS232 serial bus menu, 175

- run signal path compensation, 42  
Run/Stop  
    Acquisition menu, 103  
Run/Stop button, 19  
Runt search menu, 139  
Runt trigger, 286
- ## S
- Sample  
    acquisition mode, 103  
sample interpolation, 278  
sample rate, 209  
Sampling process  
    defined, 275  
save  
    instrument settings, 98  
    reports, 99  
    screen image, 97  
    sessions, 100  
    waveform file, 98  
save a plot image to a file, 226  
Save As dialog, 119, 188  
save bus decode results table to file, 119  
save files on trigger event, 104  
save measurement results table to file  
    how to, 16, 17, 39, 41–43, 45, 46, 49, 51, 53, 54, 59, 61, 63–65, 70, 71, 74, 84, 85, 97–102, 116, 118, 147, 183, 205, 207, 226, 227  
Save menu action, 188  
Save on trigger  
    acquisition mode, 103  
save plot data to a file, 227  
saving, 97  
scale buttons, badge, 31–36  
Scale controls  
    math, 298  
    positioning, 278  
Scale knob, 19  
Scale knob (horizontal), 19  
screen capture, 97  
screen captures, saving, 188  
screen color mode, 195  
screen dim, 195  
screen image  
    saving, 97  
screen keyboard, 271  
search, 120  
search badge, 31–36  
Search button, 27  
search menu  
    Edge, 133  
    Pulse Width, 135  
    Rise/Fall Time, 137  
Runt, 139  
Setup and Hold, 140  
Timeout, 141  
    Window, 143  
Search menu  
    Logic, 134  
search serial bus, 120  
searching for events, 68  
security, 202  
security cable lock, 26  
self tests, 201  
Sequence trigger menu, 258  
sequence trigger- A event, 261  
sequence trigger- B event, 261  
sequential acquisition mode, 103  
sequential triggering, 85  
Sequential triggering, 287  
serial bus  
    triggering, 86  
serial bus configuration, 163, 164  
serial bus search settings, 120  
serial bus trigger settings, 232  
serial bus, audio, 164, 166  
serial bus, Ethernet, 168  
serial bus, FlexRay, 169  
serial bus, I2C, 171  
serial bus, LIN, 172  
serial bus, RS232, 175  
serial bus, trigger options, 9  
service name, 197  
service options, 10  
Session file  
    how to load, 102  
    how to recall, 102  
sessions

- saving, 100
- set**
- clock format (12/24 hr), 41
  - Date/Time badge display on, off, 41
  - GPIB talk/listen address, 45
  - time zone, 41
- set measurement gates, 95
- set trigger logic qualification inputs, 267
- setting up a bus, 163, 164
- Settings bar, 27
- settings, Edge trigger, 245
- setup
- parallel bus, 80
- Setup, 313
- Setup and Hold Search - Define Inputs menu, 141
- Setup and Hold search menu, 140
- Setup and hold trigger, 286
- Setup Time, 108
- shared reference levels, 195
- shipped probes, 13
- show a measurement, 61
- signal input levels, 15
- signal path compensation, 202
- single acquisition mode, 103
- single sequence, 54
- Single Sequence/Stop After
- Acquisition menu, 103
- Single/Seq
- Acquisition menu, 103
- Single/Seq button, 19
- Skew, 108, 313
- Slope
- trigger, 284
- Slope button (front panel), 19
- Sources
- math waveforms, 296
- SPC, 202
- SPC (signal path compensation), 42
- spectral FastAcq setting, 209
- spectrum plot, 67
- Spectrum Plot menu, 223
- SPI bus trigger settings, 232
- SPI serial bus, 177
- split cursors, 181
- SSC FREQ DEV, 315
- stacked display mode, 87
- stacked mode (waveforms), 70
- Stacked mode, setting, 272
- standard accessories, 3, 13
- stop acquisitions, 103
- storage pouch, 13
- subnet mask, 197
- Support, 1, 2
- syntax
- math editor, 297
- system information, 204

## T

- TDM audio bus, 164
- Technical support, 1, 2
- TekSecure, 202
- TekSecure memory erase, 203
- Tektronix Technical Support, 1, 2
- TekVPI, 17
- TekVPI input connectors, 19
- TekVPI probes, 4
- Termination, 278
- text, 216
- TIE, 110, 111, 315
- time, 183
- Time outside level, 314
- Time Outside Level, 108
- time trend plot, 67
- time zone, 183
- time zone, how to set, 41
- Timebase Reference Source
- Acquisition menu, 103
- Timeout search menu, 141
- timeout trigger, 264
- Timeout trigger, 286
- timing measurements
- Burst Width, 108
  - Data Rate, 108
  - Delay, 108
  - Duration N-Periods, 108
  - Fall Time, 108
  - Falling Slew Rate, 108

- Frequency, 108  
 High Time, 108  
 Hold Time, 108  
 Low Time, 108  
 Negative Duty Cycle, 108  
 Negative Pulse Width, 108  
 Period, 108  
 Phase, 108  
 Positive Duty Cycle, 108  
 Positive Pulse Width, 108  
 Rise Time, 108  
 Rising Slew Rate, 108  
 Setup Time, 108  
 Skew, 108  
 Time Outside Level, 108  
 Unit Interval, 108  
**TJ@BER**, 318  
**Top**, 106  
**Touch Off button**, 19  
**touch screen tutorial**, 204  
**touchscreen UI tasks**, 39  
**TPP0500B**, 3  
**TPP1000**, 3  
**Transit case**, hard plastic, 3  
**Trash Can icon**, 27  
**Trend Plot menu**, 224  
**trigger**  
 level indicators, 28  
 logic, 247  
 parallel bus, 86  
 position indicator, 28  
 pulse width, 250  
 rise/fall time, 253  
 serial bus, 86  
 timeout, 264  
 window, 268  
**Trigger**  
 considerations, 280  
 logic qualification conditions, 286  
 modes, 283  
 slope and level, 284  
 sources, 282  
**Trigger controls**, 19  
**trigger delay**, 285  
**trigger event file save**, 104  
**trigger holdoff**, 85  
**trigger menu**, 51  
**Trigger menus**, 231  
**trigger out**, 197  
**trigger the oscilloscope**, 51  
**trigger types**, 282  
**Triggering**  
 advanced, 285  
 modes, 283  
 sources, 282  
**triggering concepts**, 83, 84, 281  
**turn instrument on or off**, 15
- U**
- undo last action**, 195  
**uninstall an option license**, 205  
**uninstall option license**  
 how to, 16, 17, 39, 41–43, 45, 46, 49, 51, 53, 54, 59, 61, 63–65, 70, 71, 74, 84, 85, 97–102, 116, 118, 147, 183, 205, 207, 226, 227  
**Unit Interval**, 108  
**unmount USB devices**, 193  
**unsupported probe**, 158  
**USB**, 197  
**USB bus trigger settings**, 232  
**USB cable**, connect to PC, 45  
**USB Device port (rear panel)**, 26  
**USB Host ports (rear panel)**, 26  
**USB ports (front panel)**, 19  
**USB serial bus menu**, 179  
**use cursors**, 71  
**user button**, 188  
**User button**, 19  
**user interface tutorial**, 204  
**user preferences**  
 display settings, 195  
**using mouse with the touchscreen**, 39  
**utility menu**, 185
- V**
- V Bar cursors**, 181

V&H Bar cursors, 181  
variables (math equation editor), 215  
Vertical acquisition, 279  
Vertical acquisition window, 278  
Vertical controls, 19  
Vertical offset, 279  
vertical settings, 157  
VGA video output (rear panel), 26  
video outputs (rear panel), 26  
virtual keyboard, 271  
virtual keypad, 271  
voltmeter, 184  
Volts per division  
    maximum, 278  
waveform memory options, 8  
waveform persistence, 88  
waveform persistence, setting, 272  
waveform preview, 289  
waveform style, setting, 272  
waveform vectors style, setting, 272  
Waveform View, 27  
Waveform View settings, 272  
Waveforms  
    math, 297  
waveforms, saving, 188  
Width@BER, 320  
Window search menu, 143  
window trigger, 268, 286

## W

Wave Inspector, 90  
waveform  
    expansion point, 28  
    intensity, 70  
    persistence, 70  
    recalling, 101  
    record view, 28  
waveform badge, 31–36  
waveform cursors, 181  
Waveform differentiation, 298  
waveform dots style, setting, 272  
waveform editor, 297  
waveform file  
    saving, 98  
Waveform integration, 299  
waveform intensity, setting, 272  
waveform interpolation, 87

## X

XY plot, 68  
XY plot menu, 225  
XYZ plot, 68  
XYZ plot menu, 225

## Z

zoom, 89, 90  
Zoom, 209  
Zoom box, 38  
Zoom button (front panel), 19  
zoom icon, 28  
zoom mode, 89  
Zoom overview, 38  
Zoom title bar, 38  
Zoom/Pan knobs (horizontal), 19